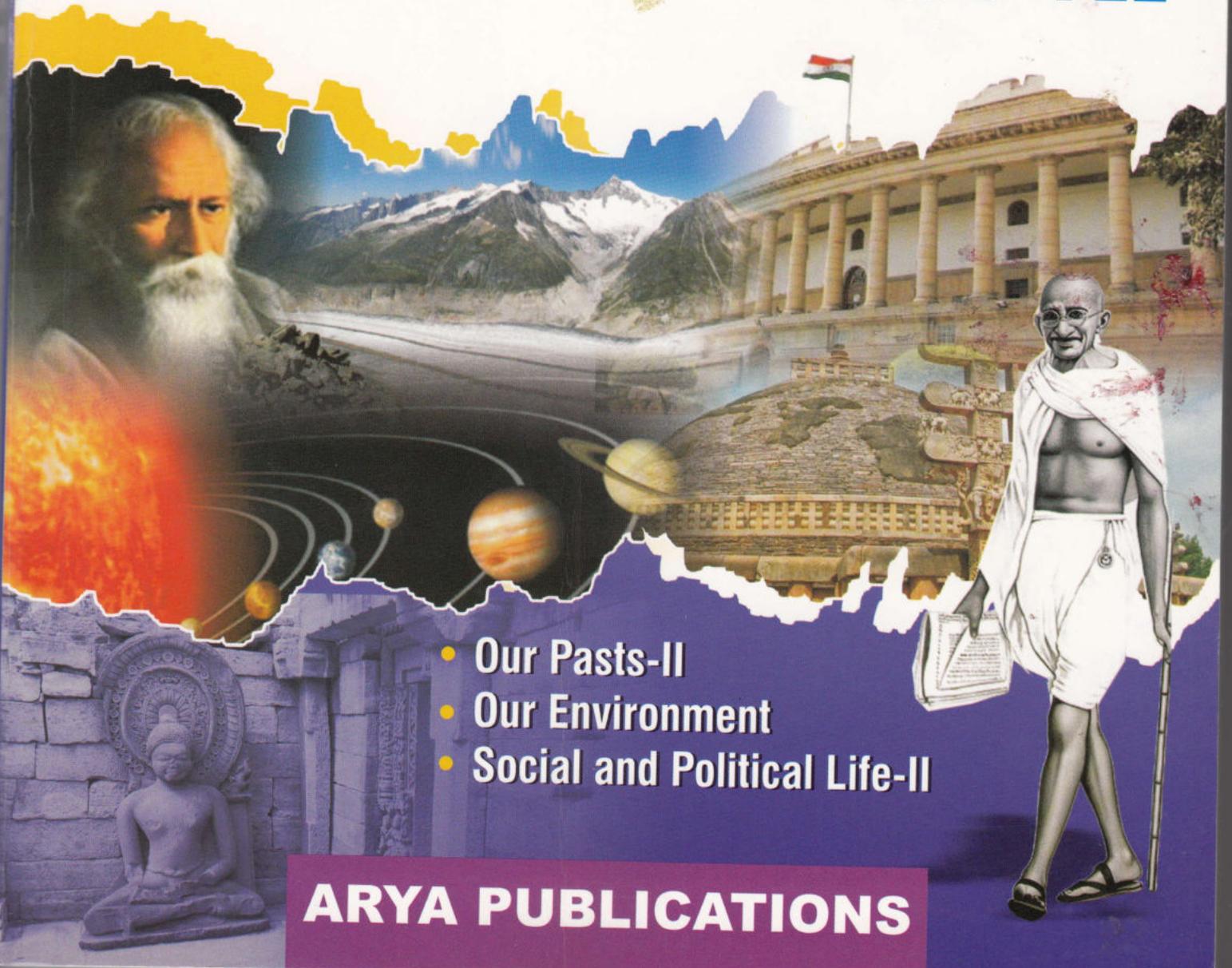


APC

# PERFECT SOCIAL SCIENCE

CLASS VII



- Our Pasts-II
- Our Environment
- Social and Political Life-II

ARYA PUBLICATIONS

# CONTENTS



## Our Pasts – II

Chapters	Topics	Page No.
1.	Where, When and How?	H-3
2.	New Kings and Kingdoms (AD 700 – AD 1200)	H-12
3.	Kingdoms of the South (AD 700 – AD 1200)	H-22
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 1-3)</i>	H-30
4.	The Delhi Sultanate (AD 1206 – AD 1526)	H-31
5.	The Creation of an Empire	H-44
6.	The Architecture: Forts and Sacred Places	H-59
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 4-6)</i>	H-69
	<i>Test Paper (Based on Chapters 1-6)</i>	H-70
7.	Towns, Traders and Craftsmen	H-72
8.	Social Change: Mobile and Settled Communities	H-80
9.	Popular Beliefs and Religion	H-89
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 7-9)</i>	H-100
10.	Flowering of Regional Cultures	H-101
11.	New Political Formations in Eighteenth Century	H-111
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 10-11)</i>	H-120
	<i>Test Paper (Based on Chapters 7-11)</i>	H-121

## Our Environment

Chapters	Topics	Page No.
1.	Environment in Its Totality	G-3
2.	Inside our Earth	G-13
3.	Our Changing Earth	G-21
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 1-3)</i>	G-31
4.	Air	G-32
5.	Water	G-43

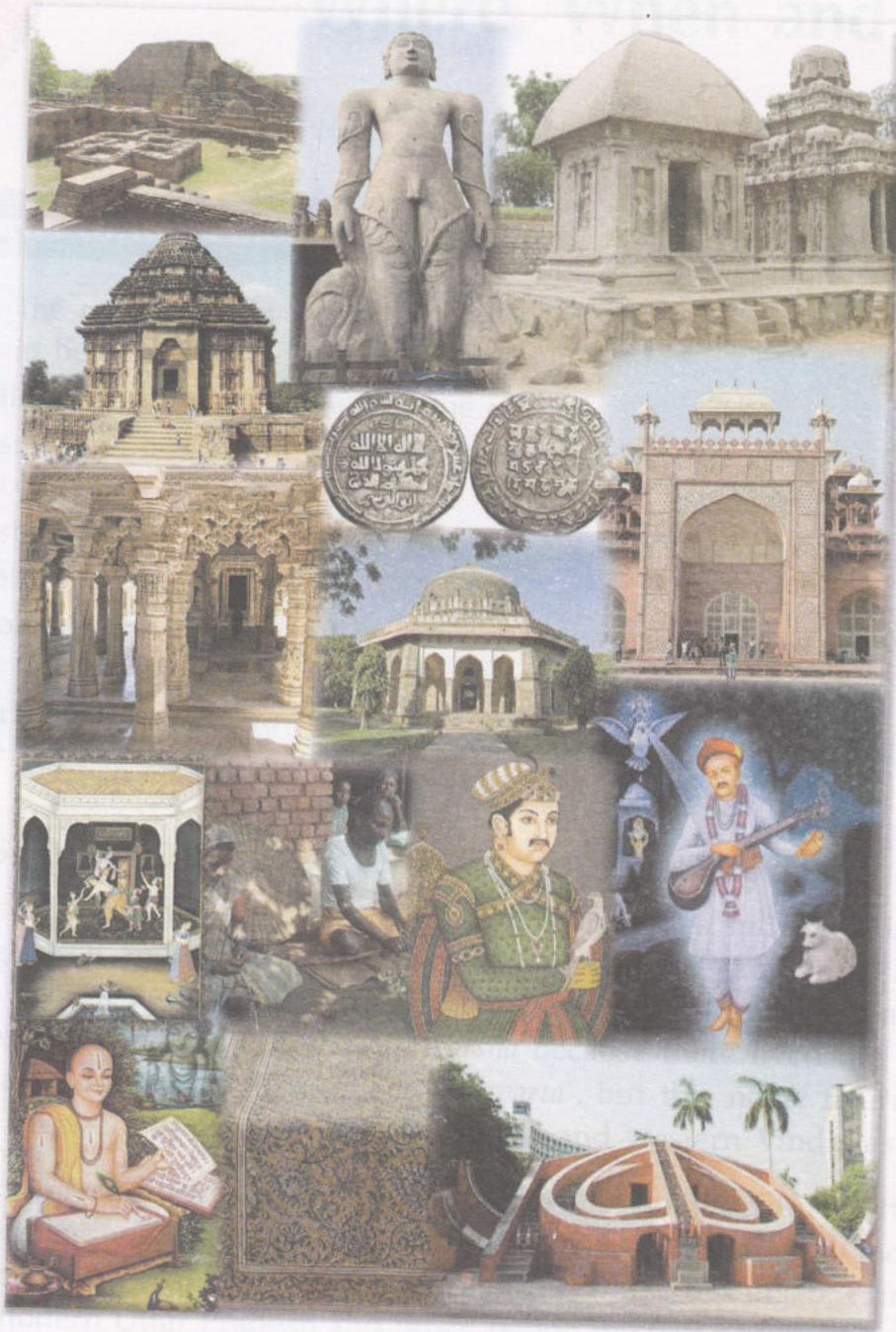
6.	Natural Vegetation and Wildlife	G-54
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 4-6)</i>	G-66
	<i>Test Paper (Based on Chapters 4-6)</i>	G-67
7.	Human Environment — Settlement, Transport and Communication	G-69
8.	Human Environment Interactions—The Tropical and The Subtropical Regions	G-84
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 7-8)</i>	G-93
9.	Life in the Temperate Grasslands	G-94
10.	Life in the Deserts	G-102
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 9-10)</i>	G-109
	<i>Test Paper (Based on Chapters 7-10)</i>	G-110

### Social and Political Life-II

<b>Chapters</b>	<b>Topics</b>	<b>Page No.</b>
1.	Democracy and the Need for it	C-3
2.	Institutional Representation of Democracy	C-13
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 1-2)</i>	C-23
3.	The State Government	C-25
4.	Media and Democracy	C-37
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 3-4)</i>	C-47
	<i>Test Paper (Based on Chapters 1-4)</i>	G-48
5.	Unpacking Gender	C-50
6.	Markets Around Us	C-58
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapters 5-6)</i>	C-66
7.	The Journey of a Shirt: From the Farmer's Field to your wardrobe	C-67
8.	Struggle for Equality	C-74
	<i>Project Work (Based on Chapter 8)</i>	C-82
	<i>Test Paper (Based on Chapters 5-8)</i>	C-83

#### Appendix

Interesting Facts	A1-A8
<i>Practice Paper-I</i>	A9-A12
<i>Practice Paper-II</i>	A13-A16



## Our Pasts-II

# 1

## Where, When and How?

### New Words to Remember

**Medieval:** The period between AD 700 and AD 1750 in the Indian history. It is a period in between the ancient and the modern periods.

**Numismatics:** Study of coins issued by the rulers.

**Chronicles:** Written account of important or historical events in the order in which they occurred.

**Jati:** A caste or sub-caste

**Manuscript:** A handwritten book

**Royal autobiography:** An account of a ruler's life and achievements written by the ruler.

**Biographer:** A person who writes an account of someone's life.

### TERMS USED TO DESCRIBE INDIAN SUBCONTINENT

The Indian subcontinent is a large region which includes India, Pakistan, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and Myanmar. In ancient period it was known as *Bharatvarsha*. According to Vishnu Purana, "The country lying to the north of the ocean and south of Himadri or Himalayas is called *Bharatvarsha* because there lived the descendents of King Bharata." India was also called '*Aryavarta*', but this name referred to north India, *i.e.* the areas lying between the Himalayas and western Vindhya.

The Greeks referred to India as '*Indos*'. In the thirteenth century, **Minhaj-i-Siraj** in a chronicle mentioned the conquest of Hindustan by Muhammad Ghori. He used the word '**Hindustan**' to mean only the areas of the whole of Punjab, Haryana, Delhi and parts of modern Uttar Pradesh and Bihar. Babur, the first Mughal Emperor (1526-1530), used the term '*Hindustan*' to mean whole of the Indian subcontinent. In his autobiography (*Baburnama*) he recorded his observations of events, people, flora and fauna of most of the Indian subcontinent. Article 1 of the Indian Constitution named the territories of the States and the Union territories as **India**, that is *Bharat*.



Indian Subcontinent

Thus, the same term has meant different things at different periods of time. Let us take one more term 'foreigner'. Today, the word 'foreigner' means a person who belongs to a country that is not his own. But in medieval times, a foreigner (or a *pardesi*) was a person who came into a town or village community from outside. In other words, a foreigner was someone unfamiliar to people living in a particular area.

## MEDIEVAL PERIOD — THE TIME FRAME

The Medieval period is the period in between the ancient and modern periods. The eighth century saw many changes in social, economic, political and cultural life of

the people of India. There were also changes in the pattern of their thinking and behaviour. Thus, we take the eighth century as the one belonging to the medieval period. Changes did not take place suddenly at any particular period of time. Some changes appeared earlier at some places and some quite later. Many changes took place after the downfall of the Mughal empire and after the East India Company became the leading power in India in the middle of the eighteenth century. This is taken as the end of the medieval period in India. Thus, the medieval period lasted for about 1,000 years from eighth century to the eighteenth century or between AD 700 and AD 1750.

### **SOME FEATURES OF THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD**

1. The medieval period is divided into early medieval period and later medieval period. The early medieval period lasted from eighth century to the middle of the thirteenth century. The later medieval period extended from thirteenth century to the eighteenth century.
2. Foreign cultures (western and central Asian) began to influence India.
3. Many sources to reconstruct history – archaeological, epigraphic, numismatics and literary were available to us now.
4. The rulers of the Delhi Sultanate and the Mughal rulers came from outside and settled in India.

### **MAJOR HISTORICAL TRENDS**

1. **Old and New Religions:** The invaders like Greeks, who came to India in the ancient period, followed Indian religions—Hinduism or Buddhism. They adopted the Indian culture and dresses. But the Turks, Afghans and Mughals, who came to India during the medieval period, brought their own culture and religion (Islam) with them. Islam spread in India. Sikhism, a new religion, was born. Later, Christianity also spread in India. Many changes took place in Hinduism, but it remained the major religious system which the Indian society was based on.
2. **A Composite Culture:** As a result of constant interaction between old and new religions, a composite culture began to develop in India. It reflected itself in language, literature, painting, architecture and sculpture. It is still an important feature of our heritage.
3. **Stable Peace:** Some of the Delhi Sultanate rulers and the great Mughals were able to provide stable peace for many centuries.
4. **Sufism and the Bhakti Movement:** Two great religious movements—Sufism and Bhakti movement developed during this period. They helped in bringing about good understanding between Hinduism and Islam. Emphasis was placed on love, brotherhood, tolerance and unity of God.

5. **Social, Economic and Political Changes:** As in the earlier ages, our society was divided into many castes and sub-castes (*jatis*). Most of the *jatis* had their own rules regarding marriage and behaviour of their members. In the villages, the Panchayats still settled disputes and collected taxes. There was a general decline in the status of women. Polygamy, *purdah* system and *sati* were some of the customs which marked their low status. There are many stories about fearless Rajput warriors. In Sanskrit, the word *Rajan* means king and *putra* means son. The term Rajput included not only rulers but the members of a Hindu military caste claiming Kshatriya descent. The Marathas, Sikhs and Jats had also become politically strong during this period.

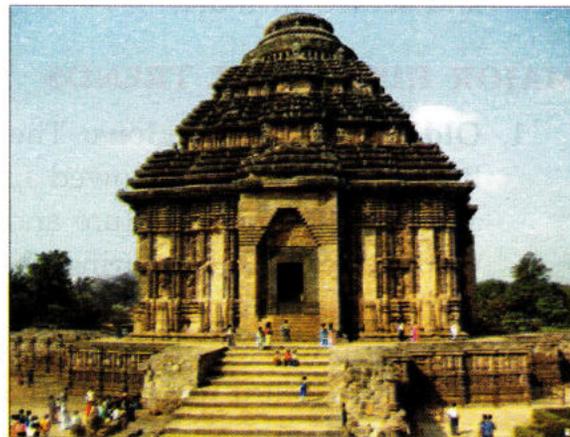
The princes and nobles lived in great luxury. They had fine palaces and wore costly dresses. Many of them kept slaves who were bought and sold as they liked. But where did the wealth of these rich classes come from? It came from the common people, the peasants, the artisans and the traders. The common people had to pay several kinds of taxes to the local lords. Potatoes, chillies, tea and a few other crops began to be grown in the Indian subcontinent during this period.

6. **Rise of the British Power:** Commercial interests drew the English, the French and the Dutch to India. It ultimately led to the establishment of British rule over India in the eighteenth century.

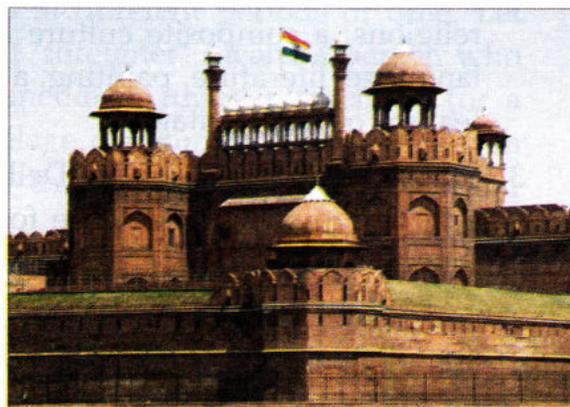
### SOURCES OF HISTORY FOR THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD

Many good sources are available to reconstruct the history of the medieval period. The sources can be divided into three main groups: (i) archaeological, (ii) epigraphic and numismatics, and (iii) literary.

**Archaeological Sources:** The objects excavated are few but protected monuments are many that provides sufficient knowledge regarding this period. These include temples like Brihadeshwara, Kandaria Mahadeva Temple, Lingaraja Temple, Sun Temple at Konark, etc.; mosques like Quwat-ul-Islam and Jama Masjid; forts like the Red Fort, the Agra Fort and the Chittor Fort; the tombs like the Humayun's Tomb, the Akbar's Tomb at Sikandra and the Taj Mahal; and palaces like those at Jodhpur, Jaisalmer and the minars like Qutab Minar in Delhi.



The Sun Temple at Konark



The Red Fort at Delhi

### Epigraphic and Numismatic Evidences:

Epigraphic sources pertain to inscriptions which were carved on stones and copper plates. The inscriptions are found on most monuments like temples, forts, palaces, etc. They provide valuable information about rulers, their policies, conquests, trade, a specific time when a particular event occurred, prosperity of the kingdom and much more. The inscriptions are more valuable than literary sources because they cannot be tampered with.



A typical lithic inscription of the Chola period

Numismatics is the study of coins. The rulers of this period issued both gold and silver coins. They are found all over India. They throw light on important political events, the economic prosperity of the kingdoms and the period they belonged to.

Some of the manuscripts of this period were decorated with miniature paintings. These paintings were in the form of illustrations. They throw light on the development of the art of painting during the medieval period.

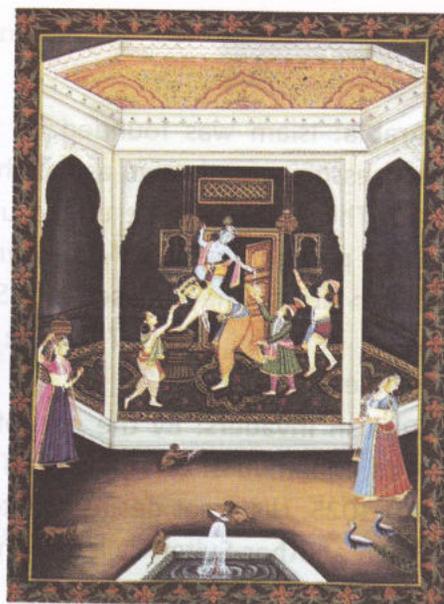


Coins of Firoz Shah Tughlaq

Gold coins of Akbar

**Literary Sources:** In the early medieval period (eighth to thirteenth century AD) paper was not in use in India. In this period, the material for writing included palm leaves, bark of birch tree and animal skins. In the later medieval period (thirteenth to eighteenth century AD) paper was the chief writing material.

Literary sources include royal auto-biographies, official records, chronicles, religious texts, works of historians and accounts of foreign travellers. The Brahmins and others continued to study the sacred books in Sanskrit, but most of the literary works were available in Arabic and Persian.



A miniature painting

- (a) **Royal Autobiographies:** Firoz Shah Tughlaq wrote his autobiography called *Futuh-at-i-Firozshahi*. Babur wrote his memories called *Tuzaq-i-Babri* in Turkish. It is an authentic source of information for this period.
- (b) **Official Records:** Amber Rajput chiefs preserved many documents including their correspondence with the Mughal rulers, royal proclamations and reports regarding the administration of their estates.
- (c) **Chronicles:** Ziyauddin Barani was a fourteenth century chronicler. He wrote a chronicle which begins with the accession of Balban and comes down to the early years of Firoz Shah Tughlaq. Abul Fazl wrote *Ain-i-Akbari* which gives a detailed account of the administrative system of the great Mughal Emperor Akbar.

Literary works like *Rajatarangini* by Kalhana and the epic *Prithviraj Raso* by Chandbardai are works of great historical importance. These works throw light on early medieval India.

- (d) **Accounts of Foreign Travellers:** India attracted the attention of many foreign travellers. Marco Polo of Venice visited India in the thirteenth century. He has left an interesting account of the southern Pandya kingdom. He also visited Warangal. His work speaks highly of the merchants of Gujarat.

Ibn Batuta was a native of Morocco and visited India during Muhammad-bin Tughlaq's reign. Nicolo Conti, an Italian traveller, who visited India in AD 1420, spoke highly of the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar.

Archives are places where old manuscripts, documents and records are stored.



Marco Polo

## Elsewhere

**Arabia:** Islam was founded by Prophet Mohammad early in the seventh century AD. His successors were known as Caliphs or *Khalifas*. Mohammad was succeeded by Abu Bekr in 632 AD. The Arabs became united under his leadership. Abu Bekr and his successors conquered large parts of western Asia – Syria, Jordan, Iraq, Turkey, Persia as well as Egypt and whole of North Africa. They crossed into Spain and then invaded southern France. The Arabs, however, were defeated in AD 732. The Islamic civilization was a prominent civilization during the medieval period.

**Turkish Invaders:** By the end of the tenth century AD, Turks had risen to power in Central Asia. Mahmud of Ghazni was a Turk who invaded India seventeen times between AD 1000 and AD 1025. His great desire was to loot India and carry as much wealth as possible to Ghazni. Then another Sultan called Muhammad Ghori of Ghazni attacked India. His first invasion was

directed against Multan in AD 1175. It were the Turks (and not the Arabs) who established the Muslim power in India.

**The Medieval Europe:** Emperor Charlemagne ruled from AD 771 to AD 814. He built up a vast empire which included the countries now known as France, Belgium and parts of Germany and Italy. The Arabs had already conquered Spain and terrorised southern France.

Religion dominated the life of the people during this period. At the head of the Roman Catholic Church stood the Pope. All other Bishops were regarded as the representatives of the Pope. The Church possessed much land and wealth.

In AD 1076, the Holy City of Jerusalem was conquered by the Turks. The Pope urged the rulers and people of Europe to rescue the Holy City. Thus, began the Crusades (Holy Wars) in AD 1096.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Medieval period in India extended from the eighth century to the middle of the eighteenth century.
- During the medieval period, the Turkish invaders brought their religion and culture with them.
- The sources of information of medieval period are many and varied. They include archaeological, epigraphic, numismatics and literary sources.
- The Islamic civilization was a prominent civilization during this period.
- The Turkish invaders established the Muslim power in India.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The Medieval period extended from
  - (a) eighth century to tenth century.
  - (b) eighth century to fourteenth century.
  - (c) eighth century to sixteenth century.
  - (d) eighth century to eighteenth century.
2. The Sun temple is at
  - (a) Sarnath.
  - (b) Delhi.
  - (c) Konark.
  - (d) Agra.
3. Archives are places where
  - (a) old manuscripts and documents are stored.
  - (b) objects of artistic interest are stored.
  - (c) Endangered species of plants and trees are stored.
  - (d) food grains are stored.

4. Abul Fazl wrote

(a) *Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi*.

(c) *Tarikh-i-Afagha*.

(b) *Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi*.

(d) *Ain-i-Akbari*.

**II. Write true or false.**

1. The Sikhs and the Marathas had become politically important during the medieval period.
2. Paper was the chief writing material in the early part of the medieval period.
3. The Turks established the Muslim power in India.
4. Ibn Batuta visited India during Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq's reign.
5. The famous traveller Marco Polo came to India from Venice (Italy).

**III. Match the columns.**

**Column A**

1. *Bharatvarsha*
2. Coins
3. Prithviraj Raso
4. Morocco
5. *Rajatarangini*

**Column B**

- (a) Ibn Batuta
- (b) Vishnu Purana
- (c) Kalhana
- (d) Numismatics
- (e) Chandbardai

**IV. Give short answers to the following questions.**

1. Who was termed as 'foreigner' during the medieval times?
2. In what sense was the term 'Hindustan' used by Minhaj-i-Siraj?
3. In what sense was the term 'Hindustan' used by Babur?
4. Name any three new crops grown in Indian subcontinent during the medieval period.
5. Name any two foreign travellers whose writings became an important source of information regarding the medieval period.

**V. Answer the following questions.**

1. Differentiate between archaeological and literary sources of information.
2. Write a short note on the chronicles of medieval India.
3. How are travelogues an important literary source of information?
4. The princes and nobles lived in great luxury in medieval times. Where did the wealth come from?

## VI. Projects and Activities

1. Collect photographs of any two monuments of the medieval period and paste them in your scrapbook. Mention any two features of each monument.
2. Plan a project on the archaeological sources of the history of India for the medieval period.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Foreign tourists visit our country. What should we not do so that they get a good impression of our country.

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

How did the increased use of paper for writing help literature to grow in medieval period?

# 2

## New Kings and Kingdoms (AD 700 – AD 1200)

### New Words to Remember

**Tripartite:** The struggle between Rashtrakutas, Pratiharas and Palas for control over Kanauj. The word 'Tripartite' means involving three parties.

**Secular:** Not connected with religious or spiritual matters.

**Clan:** A group of close-knit and interrelated families.

**Jauhar:** 'Mass sacrifice' undertaken by women to protect their honour.

**Feudatories:** Persons who hold land under the feudal system. The nobles got land from the king in exchange for military service.

### RISE OF SMALL KINGDOMS IN THE NORTHERN INDIA

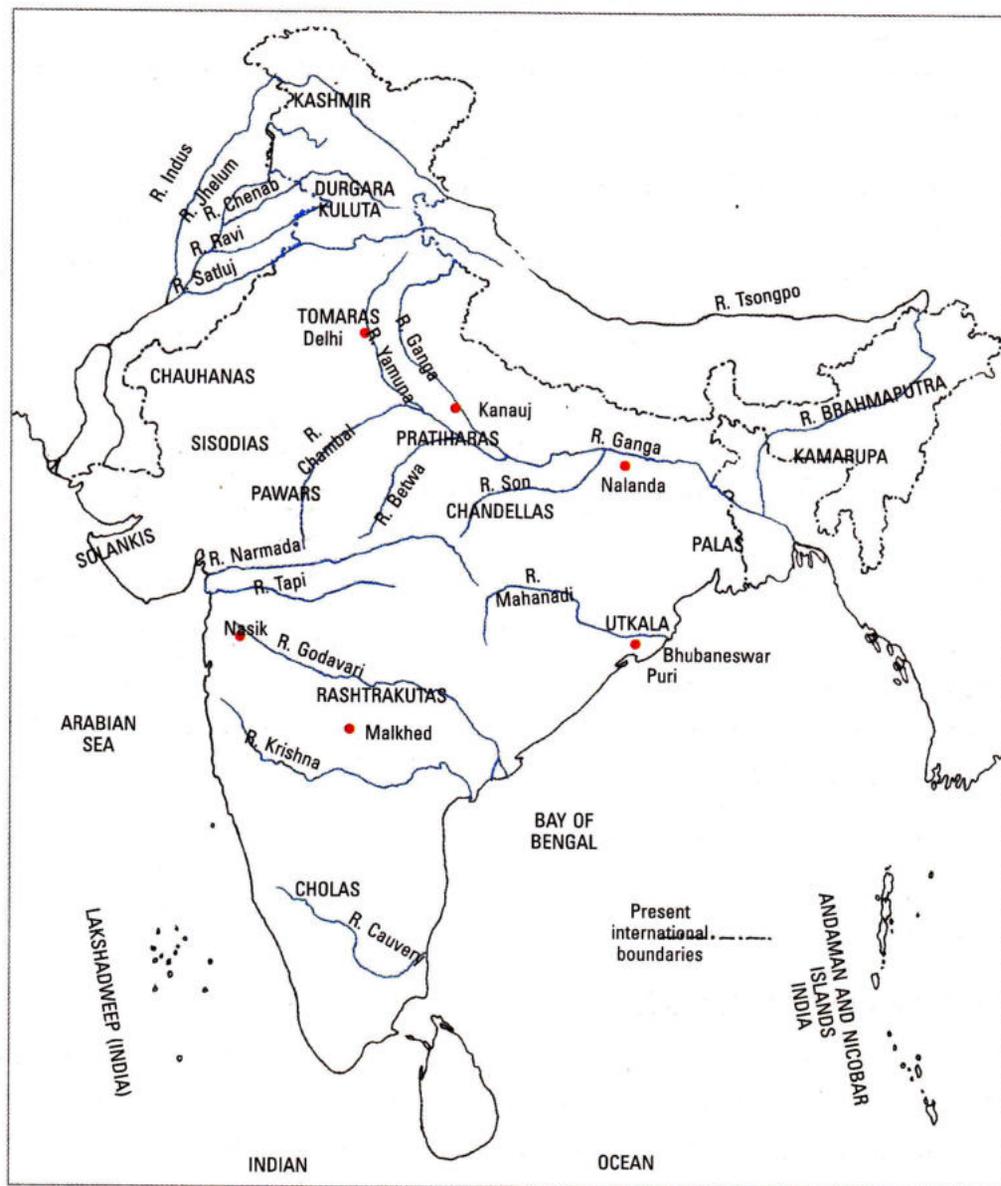
The history of India was marked by confusion and disorder after the death of Harshavardhan in AD 648. In the absence of a strong imperial power, India was divided into a number of small independent kingdoms. These kingdoms were governed by Rajput rulers. Some of these rulers had been feudatories of the existing kings. They used to fight for their overlord (the king) and supplied soldiers when the king went to war. Later, some of these feudal lords gained richness and strength. They became independent rulers.

The Rajputs were known for their bravery, honesty and courage. The Rajput kingdoms constantly fought with one another. Therefore, they failed to defend themselves against foreign invaders.

Among the famous Rajput powers during the ninth century were the **Palas** of Bengal, the **Pratiharas** of Gujarat and Rajasthan and the **Rashtrakutas** in the Deccan. They constantly fought with one another for the domination of northern India, particularly for the upper Gangetic valley which was rich and prosperous. We refer to this as the **Tripartite struggle**.

### THE TRIPARTITE STRUGGLE FOR KANAUJ

The Palas, the Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas made Kanauj the test of their political power. Its location on the banks of River Ganga in Uttar Pradesh meant that whoever controlled Kanauj would be the master of the Gangetic valley.



India at the close of the ninth century

The struggle for control over Kanauj came to be known as the Tripartite struggle, i.e. three-sided struggle. It lasted for more than a century from about AD 780 to AD 910.

To begin with, the Pratihara ruler Vatsaraja fought against Dharmapala of Bengal and occupied Kanauj. But soon the Rashtrakuta ruler Dhruva defeated Vatsaraja and occupied Kanauj. However, when Dhruva returned to Deccan, Dharmapala occupied Kanauj again. He recovered all his lost territories.

When Nagabhatta, the Pratihara ruler, tried to have control over the Gangetic valley, his efforts were nullified by the intervention of Rashtrakuta ruler Govinda III. Thus, Dharmapala and his successors continued to rule over Kanauj.

Around AD 836, a powerful Pratihara ruler Bhoja brought Kanauj under his control. His successors were weak. By tenth century AD, the Rashtrakutas gained control over Kanauj. They made Kanauj their capital.

**Effects of the Conflict:** The three kingdoms weakened as a result of continuous fight against one another. Later, the Rashtrakutas were subdued by the Chalukyas. The Palas were thrown out of power by the Senas. The Pratihara empire disintegrated into a number of small kingdoms.

## **RASHTRAKUTAS**

The Rashtrakutas in the Deccan were the feudatory chiefs of the Chalukyas of Karnataka. In AD 753, Dantidurga defeated the Chalukyas and founded the Rashtrakuta dynasty. He made himself the master of the Deccan. Their capital was Malkhed near Sholapur in Maharashtra.

Dantidurga's successor, Krishna I, consolidated the Rashtrakuta empire. He also built the Kailasa Temple at Ellora. Some of the important rulers of this dynasty were Dhruva, Amoghavarsha and Krishna III. After the death of Krishna III, the Rashtrakuta power declined.

**Religion:** The Rashtrakutas were patrons of Shaivism, Vaishnavism and Jainism. They were tolerant towards other religions. They allowed Muslim traders to build mosques and settle in India.

## **PALAS OF BENGAL AND BIHAR**

The Pala kingdom came into being in about AD 750. This dynasty was founded by Gopala. He was succeeded by Dharmapala (AD 780 – AD 815). He could control the city of Kanauj for some time. Devapala, the son and successor of Dharmapala annexed Assam and parts of Odisha.

The Palas were soon defeated by the rulers of the Sena dynasty. In AD 1204, Bakhtiyar Khalji planned the conquest of Bengal, then ruled by Lakshamana Sena. Bakhtiyar Khalji took possession of the capital town without any opposition. Later, he established himself at Lakhanauti (near Gaur). Lakshamana Sena took shelter in eastern Bengal where he continued to rule for some time.

**Patrons of Learning, Religion and Art:** The Palas were great promoters of religion, art and literature. They were responsible for the spread of Mahayana Buddhism in Tibet, Nepal, Bhutan and



The Nalanda University

Burma (Myanmar). Many Buddhist *viharas* were built during this period. Dharmapala improved the Nalanda University and also founded Vikramasila University. Devapala built the famous Mahabodhi Temple at Gaya. The Palas maintained close trade links and cultural contact with south-east Asia.

## **GURJARA-PRATIHARAS**

King Nagabhata set up the Gurjara Pratihara dynasty by defeating the Arabs in AD 738. King Bhoja (AD 836 – AD 885) was the greatest ruler of this dynasty. His empire extended from Bihar in the east to Kathiawar in the west. Kanauj remained his capital for a very long time. His son Mahendrapal added parts of north Bihar to the Pratihara empire. Mahendrapal's successors were weak. Mahmud of Ghazni invaded Kanauj in AD 1019. The city was conquered without much resistance.

The four most important kingdoms that arose on the ruins of the Pratihara empire were those of the Chauhans of Ajmer, the Chandellas of Bundelkhand, the Solankis of Gujarat and the Paramaras of Malwa.

**Patrons of Art and Learning:** The Gurjara-Pratiharas were also great patrons of learning and art. King Bhoja was learned, kind and just. Many stories are told of his wisdom and goodness. The Pratihara rulers decorated Kanauj with beautiful buildings and temples. They sent their ambassadors to Baghdad (present-day Iraq). This contact led to the promotion of Indian philosophy, science, astronomy and mathematics in western Asia.

### **A Prashasti**

A *prashasti* is a piece of writing that praises someone highly. A *prashasti* composed by a learned Brahmin speaks of the achievements of King Nagabhata. It says that he won victory over the rulers of Kanauj, Bengal, Gujarat, Malwa and many other kings of northern India.

## **CHAHAMANAS OR CHAUHANS**

Chahamanas had been the feudatory chiefs of the Pratiharas, the Paramaras and the Chalukyas. There were many branches of Chahamanas who ruled from different centres like Jalor, Saipur, Jodhpur, Dholpur and Ajmer. One of the famous Chauhan rulers was Prithviraj, also known as Rai Pithora. Chandbardai in his famous work *Prithviraj Raso* described Prithviraj's military exploits. He ruled over vast territories extending from Ajmer to Delhi. In AD 1191, he defeated Muhammad Ghori in the Battle of Tarain, near Bhatinda. But he was defeated and killed at the Second Battle of Tarain in AD 1192. This battle was a landmark in the history of India. It laid the foundation of Turkish rule in northern India.



Prithviraj Chauhan

## ADMINISTRATION OF THE RAJPUT KINGDOMS

The only form of government known to these Rajput chiefs was monarchy. Kingship was hereditary. Many of the Rajput chiefs had assumed high-sounding titles, such as *Maharajadhiraj* (the ruler of rulers) or *Tribhuvana Chakravarti* (the master of three worlds). But in reality the king's powers were restricted because of three reasons. First, the rulers depended on their feudatories or *Samantas* who maintained troops and helped them in times of war. Secondly, they ruled according to the well-established laws and traditions of the land. Thirdly, the learned Brahmins and the association of peasants and traders also prevented them from becoming too powerful.

**Finance and Resources:** There were many sources of income, such as (i) land revenue obtained from the peasants, (ii) taxes on goods carried by road or on boats or ships, (iii) income from mines, and (iv) income from cattle-keepers and artisans. Land revenue was usually one-sixth of the produce of the land. We do not know the rates of other taxes.

**Items of Expenditure:** The revenue generated from the above sources was used for the maintenance of the royal family and construction of temples and forts. They were also used to fight wars, because the Rajput chiefs were constantly fighting among themselves. The conquerors plundered the wealth of the defeated rulers.

## ECONOMIC CONDITION, EDUCATION, RELIGION, ARCHITECTURE AND SOCIETY

**Economic Condition:** Agriculture continued to be the main occupation of the people. Many crafts had developed in the country. The Indian craftsmen excelled in the manufacture of silk, cotton and woollen clothes. They were also good in woodwork and metal work.

Distribution of land among the *Samantas* resulted in the loss of revenue to the rulers. They could not maintain a large standing army and depended on their *Samantas* (feudal chiefs) in times of war.

India had trade links with West Asia and South-East Asia. The main articles of exports were spices, metal work, wood products, precious stones, silk, cotton and woollen clothes. India imported high breed horses from Arabia. Wealth was unevenly distributed. In fact, it was concentrated in the hands of a small minority.

**Education and Learning:** Education was confined mostly to the Brahmins and people of the upper castes. Schools were held in temples and *mathas*. The main subjects taught were mathematics, grammar, philosophy and religious texts. The Nalanda and Vikramsila universities in Bihar grew to be the most famous universities of the early medieval period. Kalhana wrote *Rajatarangini* in Sanskrit. It is supposed

to be a reliable history of kings who ruled over Kashmir from ancient times to the early years of the twelfth century.

**Religion:** Buddhism was declining. Most of the kings of this period were the followers of the Hindu religion. They worshipped Shiva, Vishnu and Goddess Shakti. These kings, however, were very tolerant towards all religions. The Bhakti Movement led by *Alvars* (Vaishnav saints) and *Nayanars* (Shaiva saints) in south spread to north India.

**Architecture:** Buddhism was still quite popular in eastern India, i.e. in Bengal and Bihar. Jainism became popular among trading communities in western India. The Jain temples (Dilwara temples) at Mount Abu were decorated with beautiful statues and engravings. The famous statue of Gomatesvara at Sravanabelgola (in Karnataka) was constructed in about AD 983. Lingaraja Temple at Bhubaneswar and Sun Temple at Konark are excellent examples of the architecture of this period.

**Society:** Caste system was gradually becoming rigid. But foreigners could become Hindus and get absorbed in the society. During this period some of the Brahmins gave up their traditional vocation and took up arms, while some of the Kshatriyas lived as merchants. Gurjara-Pratihara Harichandra, who was a Brahmin, took up the profession of arms. But on the whole, the Brahmins were a rich and powerful caste. Many of them were granted land by the king.

Women of the upper classes were given good education. They took a prominent part in administration and social life. The practice of *swayambara* (choice of a husband) was known during this period. Many upper class people practised polygamy.

## TURKISH INVASION

By the end of the tenth century, Turks had risen to power in Central Asia. The Turkish generals had proclaimed their control over many territories. Ghazni in Afghanistan had also come under the rule of one such Turkish general. One of the most outstanding Turkish rulers of Ghazni was Mahmud. He had heard about the huge wealth stored in Indian temples. Mahmud who had ascended the throne of Ghazni in AD 998, began to raid India frequently. Between AD 1000 and AD 1025, he invaded India 17 times and plundered the north Indian temples at Mathura and Kanauj. He also plundered Somnath temple in Gujarat in AD 1025. He got immense wealth, jewellery and precious stones which he took to Ghazni. Even the gateway of Somnath temple was taken to Ghazni.



The Gomatesvara at Sravanabelgola in Karnataka



Silver coins of Mahmud of Ghazni

## EFFECTS OF MAHMUD GHAZNI'S RAIDS

Mahmud's raids had the following effects on India and the city of Ghazni.

1. **Annexation of Multan:** In AD 1006, Mahmud marched up to Multan which he conquered. Multan became a part of Mahmud's wide kingdom.
2. **Plunder and Loot:** Thousands of people were killed during the raids made by Mahmud. He attacked and plundered Nagarkot, Kangra, Thaneshwar, Mathura and Kanauj. He was known as the 'idol breaker'. He indulged in massacre wherever he went.
3. **Beautified the city of Ghazni:** Mahmud used this wealth to build palaces, mosques, schools and libraries in Ghazni. Many scholars lived at his court. Firdausi wrote the great Persian epic, *Shahnama*, which is an account of Mahmud's life and his times. Alberuni, a great scholar visited India during this period.
4. **Migration of People in Large Number:** Mahmud's invasions opened India to migration of people, who came as soldiers, traders and workers. Many Muslim preachers also entered India. Many Sufi saints from Iran came to India. They preached love and devotion to God.

Mahmud had no ambition to set up an empire in India. He died in AD 1030. The empire of Ghazni disintegrated rapidly after Mahmud's death. For about 150 years India was free from foreign attacks after his death.

**Muhammad Ghoris Invasions:** Muhammad was the ruler of a small kingdom of Ghor, in Afghanistan. In AD 1173, he captured Ghazni and then he turned towards India. His aim of invading India was different from that of Mahmud of Ghazni. His objective was not to loot and plunder but to conquer India. His first invasion was directed against Multan. In AD 1179 he captured Peshawar. By AD 1191 Multan, Sindh and Lahore became parts of the empire of Muhammad Ghoris. As he crossed Punjab, he was opposed by Prithviraj Chauhan, the Rajput ruler of Delhi and Ajmer. In the first Battle of Tarain in AD 1191, Muhammad Ghoris was defeated. But in AD 1192 he came back to avenge his defeat. Prithviraj organised a confederacy of Rajput chiefs to meet the challenge. But Jaichand, the ruler of Kanauj, refused to help him. In the second Battle of Tarain, Prithviraj was defeated and killed.



Muhammad Ghoris

After this remarkable success Muhammad Ghori returned to Ghazni, leaving his slave Qutubuddin Aibak in charge of his new conquest. In AD 1194, Ghori defeated Jaichand of Kanauj at the Battle of Chandawar. Muhammad Ghori returned to Ghazni. The next three or four years were utilised by Qutubuddin Aibak in conquering many other territories, such as Mathura, Gwalior, Bundelkhand and Malwa. Another general of Muhammad Ghori, Bakhtiyar Khalji conquered Bengal and Bihar. Thus, within a short period of time a large part of northern India fell under the control of the Turkish invaders.

In AD 1206, Muhammad Ghori was murdered. He had no son. Hence, his empire passed into the hands of his generals. At Ghazni, he was succeeded by Alauddin who was soon displaced by another general. In India, he was succeeded by Qutubuddin Aibak. He laid the foundation of a new dynasty, known as the Slave dynasty.

### CAUSES FOR DEFEAT OF THE RAJPUTS

1. Disunity among the Rajputs was the most important reason for their defeat.
2. The Turks were militarily superior to the Rajputs. They used horses which moved very swiftly when compared to elephants used by the Rajputs. The Turks had better planning and strategy. The Rajputs constantly fought among themselves and did nothing to equip themselves with better weapons and tactics.
3. The rulers had no standing armies. They had to depend on their feudal lords.
4. The Turkish invasion failed to arouse national consciousness in India. The masses did not really cooperate with the rulers.
5. The Turks were inspired by a great religious enthusiasm. They believed that their victory would help in spreading Islam in India.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Early medieval period saw the rise of small Rajput kingdoms.
- The three kingdoms of the Palas, the Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas constantly fought for control over Kanauj in order to become the master of the Gangetic valley. This is known as tripartite struggle.
- Besides Pratiharas another Rajput clan which rose to political power was the Chauhans of Ajmer and Delhi.
- Turkish Invasion: Mahmud of Ghazni invaded India seventeen times between AD 1000–AD 1025. But his sole purpose was to plunder the wealth of India.
- Muhammad Ghori's Invasions: Muhammad Ghori was defeated at the first Battle of Tarain in AD 1191. In the second Battle of Tarain in AD 1192 he defeated Prithviraj Chauhan. India passed into the hands of the Turkish sultans.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The Tripartite struggle between the Rashtrakutas, the Pratiharas and the Palas was for control over the city of  
(a) Delhi. (b) Gaya. (c) Kanauj. (d) Ajmer.
2. The greatest ruler of the Gurjara-Pratihara dynasty was  
(a) Nagabhatta. (b) Raja Bhoja. (c) Mahendrapal. (d) Jaya Singh.
3. The most famous of the Chauhan rulers (Chahamanas) was  
(a) Samanta. (b) Ajayapala.  
(c) Prithviraj (Rai Pithora). (d) Vighraharaj.
4. Muhammad Ghori defeated the Rajput confederacy in the Battle of  
(a) Tarain. (b) Ajmer. (c) Kanauj. (d) Mathura.
5. The capital of the Rashtrakutas was  
(a) Ellora. (b) Malkhed. (c) Kalyani. (d) Thanjavur.

### II. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Krishna I
2. King Bhoja
3. Chandbardai
4. Palas
5. Dilwara Temple

#### Column B

- (a) *Prithviraj Raso*
- (b) Built Kailasa Temple
- (c) Mount Abu
- (d) Many stories are told about his wisdom
- (e) Bengal and Bihar

### III. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. Name the two important cities under the control of the Chauhans (Chahamanas).
2. Name the two high-sounding titles assumed by the Rajput rulers.
3. Name the two most famous universities of Bihar during the early medieval period.
4. Name the two sects of the saints who popularised the Bhakti Movement in south India.
5. Who plundered the Somnath Temple in Gujarat?

### IV. Answer the following questions.

1. What were the effects of the Tripartite struggle?
2. Mention briefly the state of religion during the reign of Rajput chiefs in medieval India.
3. Give a brief description of society during the medieval age.
4. Mention any two effects of Mahmud of Ghazni's raids on India.
5. Mention any two reasons why the Turks could defeat the Rajputs.

## V. Projects and Activities

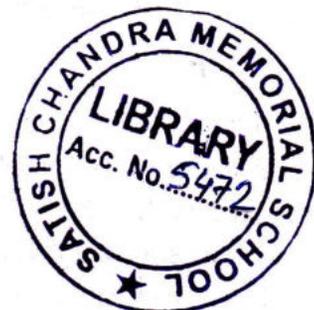
1. Collect pictures of the following and paste them in your scrapbook.
  - (a) Dilwara Temple
  - (b) Kailash Temple
  - (c) Gomatesvara statue at Sravanabelgola
  - (d) Ruins of the Nalanda University
2. Try to know a little more about Raja Bhoja about whom many stories are being told. Narrate one of these stories in your class.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

How could the Rajputs avoid their defeat at the hands of the Turks?

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Why did Mahmud of Ghazni carry with him wealth, artisans and learned persons from India?



# 3

## Kingdoms of the South (AD 700 – AD 1200)

### New Words to Remember

**Mandalam:** A province of the Chola kingdom

**Hereditary:** A title or position that is acquired on account of blood relationship

**Nattar:** District council

**Nagaratta:** City council

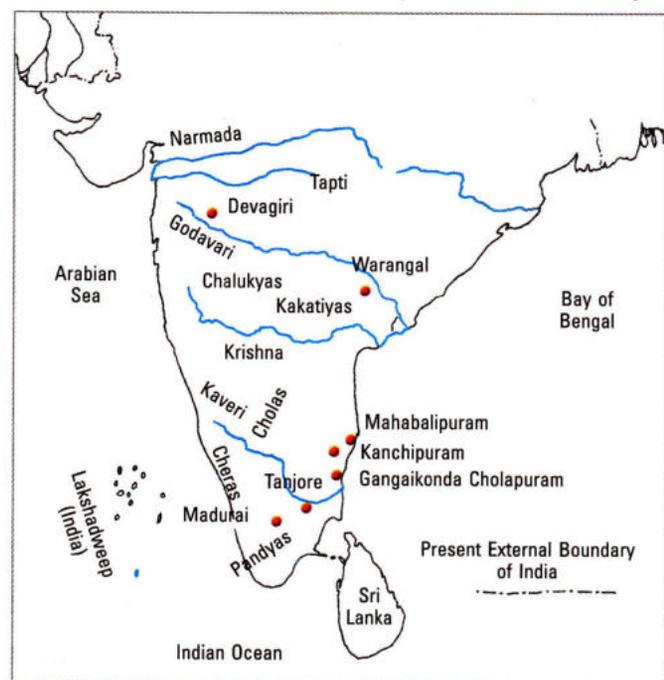
**Valanadu:** A district under the Cholas

**Brahmadeya:** Land gifted to Brahmins

**Matha:** Religious centres set up by Shankaracharya

During the medieval period, a closer contact between the people of north and south India could be seen. This was made possible by two main developments. In the first place, the rulers both in north and in south India crossed the Vindhya mountains in order to expand their empires. Secondly, the teachings of Shankaracharya and other saints spread in every corner of the country. Early in the ninth century, Shankaracharya chose four places as centres for his teachings — **Badrinath** in the north, **Shringeri** in the south, **Dwarka** in the west and **Puri** in the east. These places are famous because Shankaracharya set up a *math* (monastery) at each of them.

The Deccan and the south India witnessed the rise of many kingdoms. It is difficult to trace the history of all these kingdoms. In this chapter we shall make a brief mention of the Pallavas and then proceed to explain the rise of the Cholas. The Cholas dominated the political scene of south India for more than two centuries.



South India in the eleventh century

## THE PALLAVAS OF KANCHI

The origin of the Pallavas is unknown. The Pallava ruler Mahendravarman ruled from AD 600 to AD 630. The Pallavas were in continuous conflict with the Chalukyas, the Pandyas, the Cheras and the Cholas. The Chalukya ruler Pulakesin II defeated Mahendravarman and annexed his northern provinces. Mahendravarman was succeeded by Narsimhavarman. Under the Pallavas, Kanchi became a great centre of Brahminical as well as Buddhist learning. The Pallava kings were patrons of art and architecture. The famous temples cut out of rock boulders, known as *Rathas*, were built by them. The Shore Temple at Mahabalipuram and the Kailashnath Temple at Kanchi are best examples of architecture of this period. Narsimhavarman's son Rajasimha ruled for many years. Thereafter, their power declined. Finally, the Cholas defeated the Pallavas and became the dominant power in the south.

### Case Study

#### The Cholas of Thanjavur (AD 846 – AD 1279)

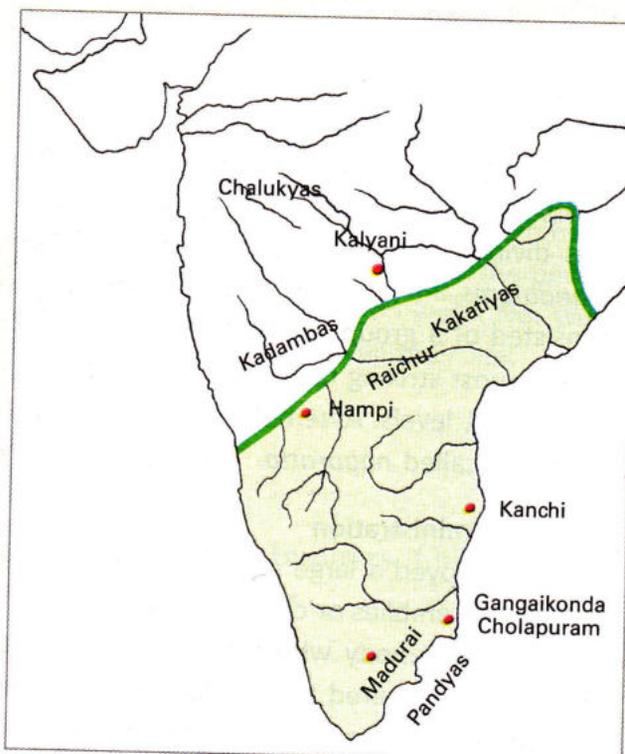
The Cholas were originally the chieftains who were subordinate to the Pallava kings. They exercised power along the east coast of Tamil Nadu. One of their leaders Vijayalaya declared independence in AD 846. He established his rule over east coast with Thanjavur (Tanjore) as his capital. His grandson Parantaka I ruled for 48 years (AD 907 – AD 955). He defeated the Pandyas of Madurai and captured their kingdom. He extended the Chola rule as far as Nellore. It is said that he also defeated the ruler of Sri Lanka. This rapid rise had brought the Cholas in conflict with the Rashtrakuta king Krishna III. In AD 949, the Cholas suffered a crushing defeat at the hands of Krishna III.

#### Rajaraja I (AD 985 – AD 1014)

The Cholas regained their glory under Rajaraja I. He made himself the overlord of the whole of southern India, Sri Lanka and other islands. The whole of the Chola territory was called *Cholamandala*. The name Coromandal Coast is derived from the word *Cholamandala*. Rajaraja I was not only a great conqueror, he was also a capable administrator and a patron of arts and literature.

#### Rajendra Chola (AD 1014 – AD 1044)

Rajaraja I was succeeded by his son Rajendra Chola. He made his navy bigger and stronger and sent it out to conquer countries of South-East Asia—Malaya, Java and Sumatra. He even



Extent of the Chola kingdom

raided the Ganga valley and defeated the Pala kings of Bengal. To mark this victory in the north, he took the title of *Gangaikondachola* or the conqueror of the Ganga and built a new capital called Gangaikondacholapuram.

Rajendra Chola also built lakes and canals so that the farmers might always have water for their fields. The trade with

South-East Asia made the Chola empire very prosperous. He was a great patron of arts and an able administrator. His reign is described as the *Golden Age of Cholas*. His naval expedition to South-East Asia was the first to be undertaken by an Indian king.



The coins of Rajendra Chola

### The Decline of the Cholas

The Chola empire remained intact up to AD 1122. Thereafter, it began to decline as a result of constant wars with the Chalukyas. The Chalukya ruler **Vikramaditya** regained the control of Vengi. By the end of the thirteenth century, the Pandyas and the Hoysalas also proclaimed their independence. It finally became a part of the great Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar in the fourteenth century.

### Chola Administration

The Chola empire was well administered. The king enjoyed power and glory. He had a group of ministers and high officials to help him. For administrative convenience, the kingdom was divided into provinces called *mandalams*, which were administered by governors. The *mandalams*, in turn, were divided into a number of districts called *valanadus*. A *valanadu* consisted of a group of villages. The lowest unit was the village or *gramam*.

The most striking feature of Chola administration was the institution of popular assemblies at different levels. Assembly at the district level was called *nattar*. A big city also had its own assembly called *nagaratta*. These assemblies performed several administrative functions.

### Village Administration

Villages enjoyed a large amount of freedom in the management of their affairs. Each village had two assemblies or councils. The *Ur* was the general assembly of all the villagers. The *Sabha* was a smaller body whose members were elected by all the villagers. The members of the *Sabha* were required to be educated, to be owners of land and well-versed in administrative matters. The method of election was that name-slips of all candidates were mixed up in a pot, from which they were drawn one-by-one by a small boy. The results were announced by a village priest. The *Sabha* gathered taxes, regulated water supply and managed all institutions, such as tanks, lakes, temples and schools. It also settled disputes between villagers.

### Associations of Traders

Associations of traders, craftsmen and other vocational groups were known as *nagarams*. They would protect the interests of their members.

### Care of Peasants

The Chola kings took good care of the peasants. The peasants were exempted from paying land revenue when their crops failed. Construction of tanks and canals helped in irrigating

vast lands. They cleared the forests for building good roads and bringing more land under cultivation. In many regions two crops were grown in a year.

### Sources of Revenue

The Cholas collected revenue from peasants, traders and merchants. Taxes on mines and duties on imported goods also brought in substantial revenue.

### Works of Public Utility

A part of the revenue was spent on the maintenance of royal family and maintenance of the army. The money collected by the rulers was spent on works of public utility, such as building of roads, construction of tanks and irrigation system.

### Military Administration

The Cholas created a powerful standing army and a strong navy. Their army consisted of archers, foot soldiers, horsemen and war elephants. The navy helped in maintaining control over the islands and in protecting the sea routes. This was vital for maintaining commercial relations with other countries.

### Society

The caste system very much prevailed in southern India. The Brahmins received land grants called *brahmadeya*. Their land was exempted from taxes. Besides the Brahmins, merchants had emerged as a powerful class. They owned a lot of wealth. The social status of the people called 'outcastes' was pitiable. They could not draw water from the common wells. Nor were they allowed to enter temples. The labourers in the towns worked hard all their life.

## ARCHITECTURE OF SOUTH INDIA

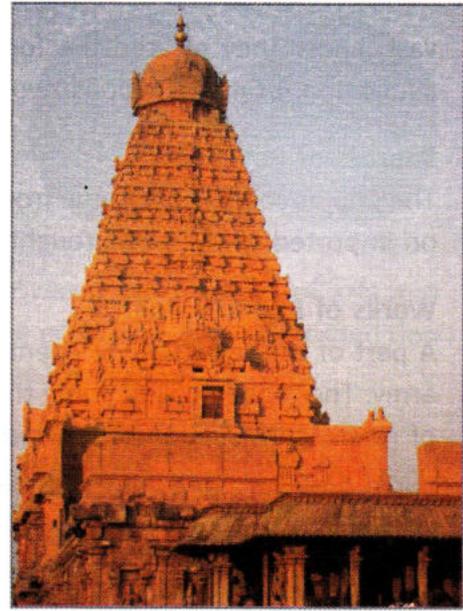
The Chola kings and the rich merchants were great temple builders. Other rulers of Deccan and south India also built many magnificent temples.

**The Rathas and Shore Temple of Mahabalipuram:** Under the Pallava rulers of Kanchipuram, two forms of temple architecture evolved in the south — the rock-cut and the structural shrines. The Rathas of Mahabalipuram were built by King Narasimhavarman I of the Pallava dynasty. These shrines are called Rathas, each carved from a single massive stone. At a little distance is the Shore Temple built by Narasimhavarman II. It was built with brick and mortar.



The Rathas

**Brihadeswara Temple at Thanjavur:** The Brihadeswara Temple was built about AD 1000 by the Chola ruler Rajaraja I in honour of Lord Shiva. It was considered to be the biggest temple in south India. Its massive tower rises to a height of 57 metres and is shaped like a pyramid. It has thirteen successive storeys. The interior walls of the temple are decorated with paintings and magnificent sculptures. King Rajendra Chola erected a temple at his new capital, Gangaikonda Cholapuram.



The Brihadeswara Temple at Thanjavur



The Hoysaleswara Temple

**Hoysaleswara Temple, Halebid:** The Hoysaleswara Temple was built by Hoysaleswaras at Dwarasamudra (modern Halebid). They ruled between AD 1110 – AD 1310. It has richly carved interiors and exteriors. The doorways are covered with some of the best sculptures.

### **DISTINCTIVE FEATURES OF SOUTH INDIAN TEMPLES**

The south Indian temples are best examples of Dravidian style of architecture. The Dravidian style of architecture differs from north Indian Nagara style in many respects. In Northern India, bricks and mortar were used for building temples. They are called structural temples. The Dravidian temples are often carved from massive rocks. These temples have gateways called *gopurams* which are not found in northern temples.

The southern temples were centres of social and cultural activities. As such they have bigger courtyards and worship halls as compared to those of northern temples. The activities associated with the Chola temples were: music recitals, dance performance and celebration of fairs and festivals during which various games and competitions were conducted. Services of many kinds of people—priests, singers, cooks and garland makers—were required for daily worship in the temples. The meetings of the village *sabha* were also held in the temple.

**Sculpture:** The metal work, specially bronze sculptures of the Cholas are noted for their perfection, grace and simplicity. The bronze image of *Nataraja* (Shiva) remains unsurpassed in grace and perfection to this day.

## EDUCATION, LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

The temples became the centres of learning, arts, culture, and literary activity. Secular subjects, such as astronomy, grammar, medicine and mathematics were also taught in schools maintained by the temples.

Under the Chola rulers much literature was created in Dravidian languages like Tamil, Telugu and Kannada. Kamban translated the Sanskrit epic *Ramayana* into Tamil in the ninth century. It came to be known as *Kamban Ramayana*.

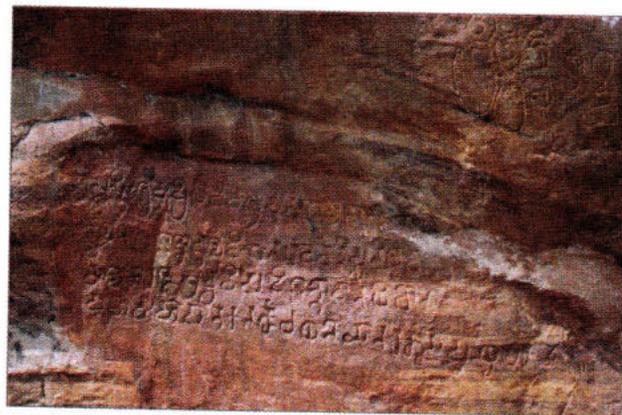
## RELIGION

The Chola rulers were worshippers of Lord Shiva, but they were tolerant to other religious faiths. The most remarkable religious teacher of this age was Shankaracharya. He was born in Kerala. He travelled all over India to preach his philosophy of *Advaita* (non-duality or monism). In the eleventh century, another great religious teacher Ramanuja preached *Bhakti* or true devotion to God.

In Tamil Nadu, the Bhakti Movement was led by *Alvars* and *Nayanars*. *Alvar* saints worshipped Vishnu and *Nayanars* were the devotees of Shiva. They composed devotional songs. They ignored all rituals and caste distinctions. To them all human beings were equal in dignity. By twelfth century a new sect called *Lingayat* developed in the Karnataka region. It was started by Basava. The *Lingayats* worshipped *Shivalinga* (the symbol of Lord's generative powers).

## CHOLA INSCRIPTIONS

The Chola rulers' achievements are recorded on stone and copper plates. These inscriptions have been found at many places like Thanjavur, Thiruvallangadu, Trichy, etc. The inscriptions provide details of the various military campaigns launched by the Cholas. The inscriptions also tell us the way in which Gram Sabhas were organised or worked. The Chola inscriptions are in Tamil and Sanskrit.



Stone Inscription of the Chola period

## Summary of the Lesson

- During the medieval period, a closer contact between the people of the north and south India could be seen.
- The Cholas regained their glory under Rajaraja I and Rajendra Chola.
- Rajendra Chola's reign is described as the Golden Age of Cholas.
- The Chola empire was well-administered. The kingdom was divided into provinces called *mandalams*.
- Provinces were divided into a number of districts called *valanadus*.
- The members of the village *Sabha* were required to be educated and well-versed in administrative matters. The *Sabha* settled disputes, gathered taxes and managed temples and schools.
- The Chola temples include the Brihadeshwara Temple and many other temples.
- The Hoysaleswara Temple is also a fine specimen of art and architecture of this period.
- Caste system very much prevailed in southern India. The 'outcastes' were not allowed to enter the temples.
- The Chola rulers were worshippers of Lord Shiva, but they were tolerant of other religious faiths. The Bhakti Movement in Tamil Nadu was led by *Alvar* and *Nayanar* saints.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The Rathas at Mahabalipuram were built by the  
(a) Chera rulers.      (b) Pallava rulers.      (c) Chola rulers.      (d) Pandya rulers.
2. Whose reign is described as the 'Golden Age of Cholas'?  
(a) Vijayalaya      (b) Rajaraja I      (c) Rajendra Chola (d) Rajendra II
3. The Chola provinces were divided into a number of districts called  
(a) valanadus.      (b) kottams.      (c) kurrans.      (d) mandalams.
4. The gateways of the south Indian temples are called  
(a) towers.      (b) gopurams.      (c) mandapas.      (d) stupas.

### II. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Capital of Cholas
2. The Shore Temple
3. The name of the Chola province
4. *Nataraja*
5. Shankaracharya

#### Column B

- (a) Kerala
- (b) Bronze statue of Lord Shiva
- (c) The Pallavas
- (d) Mandalam
- (e) Thanjavur

**III. Give short answers to the following questions.**

1. Name the Pallava ruler who ruled from AD 600 to AD 630.
2. Who took the title of Gangaikondachola? Why?
3. What were the two main functions of the village Sabha under the Cholas?
4. What was known as *Brahmadeya* under the Cholas?
5. Which four places did Shankaracharya choose as centres for his teachings?

**IV. Answer the following questions.**

1. What were the main sources of revenue of the Chola rulers?
2. Highlight the two main achievements of Rajendra Chola.
3. Highlight any two measures taken by the Chola rulers to promote agriculture and protect the interests of the peasants.
4. Who were *Alvars* and *Nayanars*? How did they popularise the Bhakti Movement?
5. Mention the teachings of the great saint Shankaracharya.
6. Mention any two social and cultural activities associated with the Chola temples.

**V. Projects and Activities**

1. Collect and paste pictures of two south Indian temples in your scrapbook. Write a paragraph on each temple.
2. Plan a project mentioning the main differences between the temples of northern and southern India.
3. On an outline map of India, show the four places which the great saint Shankaracharya chose as the centres for his teachings.

**VALUE-BASED QUESTION**

Was it proper for the rulers of Medieval India to construct such magnificent temples when the poor masses managed to survive with very little food and clothing?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 1-3)

### I. Project Work

Collect pictures of different archaeological sources of history. Also make a report on Literary sources of history for the period.

### II. Assignment

Get information about foreign travellers like Marco Polo and Ibn Batuta. Write a short note on their findings of different kings and kingdoms in India.

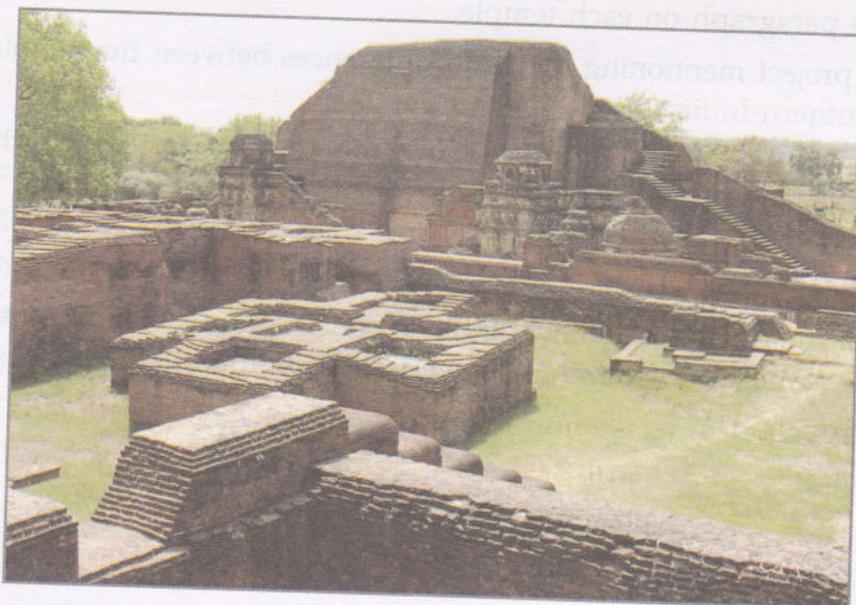
### III. Map Work

On an outline map of India, show the kingdoms of south India.

### IV. Picture Study

Look at the picture and answer the following questions.

- In which period was this monument of learning built?
- What was it famous for?
- Where is it located?



The Nalanda University



## The Delhi Sultanate (AD 1206 – AD 1526)

### New Words to Remember

**Sultanate:** A kingdom of a Muslim ruler (sultan)

**Chalisa:** A group of forty powerful nobles formed by Iltutmish to help him in suppressing his enemies.

**Mongols:** Warrior tribes who lived on the borders of ancient and medieval China. They were domiciled in Mongolia.

**Ulemas:** The men who are recognised as experts in Islamic theology.

**Iqta system:** The system of giving land grants instead of cash payment for services rendered.

**Kharaj:** Land tax

**Khamas:** Tax levied on booty captured in war

**Muqaddam:** Village headman

The Turkish invaders were newcomers to India. They expanded the Muslim frontiers substantially. Muhammad Ghori died in AD 1206. His empire was divided among his generals. Qutbuddin Aibak, the general of his Indian provinces, suppressed other governors. He declared himself the Sultan of Delhi. In AD 1206, he laid the foundation of the Delhi Sultanate. His dynasty was known as the Slave dynasty because Qutbuddin himself was a slave of Muhammad Ghori. Iltutmish and Balban had also been slaves in their early career.

As many as five dynasties ruled over Delhi until Babur started the rule of the Mughals: Slave dynasty (AD 1206 – AD 1290), Khilji dynasty (AD 1290 – AD 1320), Tughlaq dynasty (AD 1320 – AD 1414), Sayyid dynasty (AD 1414 – AD 1451) and Lodi dynasty (AD 1451 – AD 1526).

### SOURCES OF INFORMATION ABOUT THE DELHI SULTANATE

The inscriptions, coins and the monuments (like forts, mosques, tombs and temples) provide ample information about the history of this period. In addition to these, we have travellers' accounts and court chronicles that provide information about events and lives of kings and ordinary people.

The court chronicles mean *tawarikh* or an account of historical events. Such accounts are mainly in Persian and partly in Arabic. The authors were wise and learned men. Some of them had an official position and spent a lot of time at the court of a king. Ziauddin Barani wrote *Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi*. It begins with the accession of Balban and comes down to the early years of Firoz Tughlaq. Minhaj-i-Siraj wrote on the early history of the Delhi Sultanate.

**Not Much Information about the Life of Ordinary People:** The authors or historians have given an excellent description of some of the major events. But there were reasons why these chronicles failed to provide much information about the life of ordinary men and women. First, they held an official position. *For example*, Ziauddin Barani held an important post in the revenue department. Their whole effort was to please the Sultans who rewarded them with gifts and money. How could they depict people's poverty and misery? Secondly, they lived in cities. They had no opportunity of going to the villages and see how ordinary people lived there.

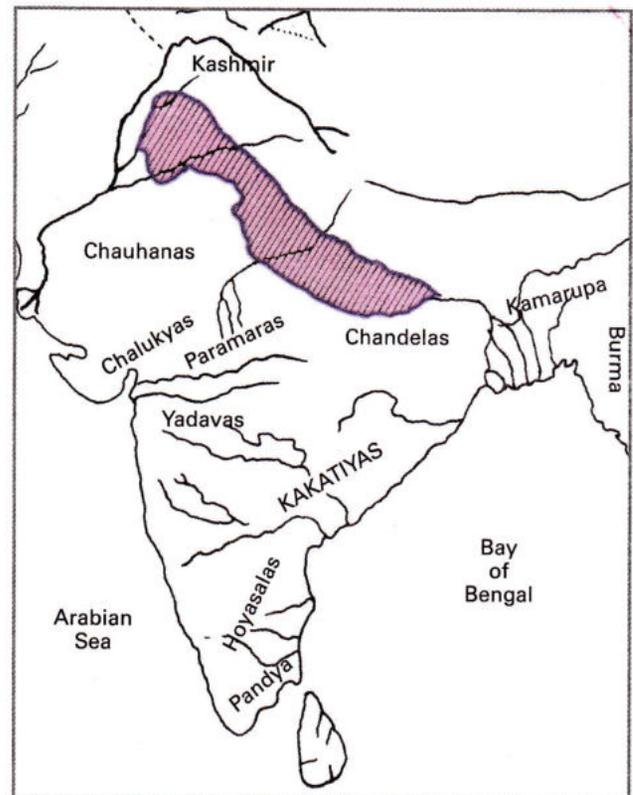
**Bias in their Account:** The authors seemed to be biased. They coloured their account with their own personal opinions. Minhaj-i-Siraj was a great admirer of Balban. He paints him as a great administrator free from all faults. Minhaj-i-Siraj failed to see that Balban was intolerant of the religion of the vast majority of his subjects, i.e. the Hindus.

Minhaj-i-Siraj showed bias against Razia Sultan because she was a woman. Razia Sultan was brave and energetic. But Minhaj-i-Siraj, like other nobles, would not like to be ruled by a woman. According to him, women are supposed to be subordinate to men. Ziauddin Barani was a highly educated man. He knew the duties of a historian. Yet he was not free from bias and prejudices.

## SLAVE DYNASTY (AD 1206 – AD 1290)

### QUTBUDDIN AIBAK (AD 1206 – AD 1210)

Qutbuddin Aibak had begun his career as a humble slave of Muhammad Ghori. He rose to power after his master's death in AD 1206. He consolidated his power through matrimonial alliances. Being a slave, he had a difficult time in overcoming the resistance of his nobles and suppressing internal revolts and external invasions. He constructed the first Islamic monuments, the Quwwat-ul-Islam mosques, one each at Delhi and Ajmer. He also started the



Kingdom of Qutbuddin Aibak

construction of the Qutab Minar in memory of the Sufi Saint, Qutbuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki. It was completed by Iltutmish. He died in AD 1210 during a fall from a horse while playing *chaugan* (polo) at Lahore.

### **ILTUTMISH (AD 1211 - AD 1236)**

Iltutmish was a slave of Qutbuddin Aibak and later became his son-in-law. Sensing the resentment of nobles, he created a group of forty powerful nobles known as *chalisa* or 'the forty' to help him in suppressing his enemies. Qabacha was the ruler of Multan and occupied parts of Punjab. Tajuddin Yaloz was the ruler of Ghazni and wanted to annex Indian territories.

Iltutmish defeated both of them. There were revolts in the Gangetic valley from Rajput rulers and other governors. Iltutmish defeated them all and firmly established the Turkish rule.



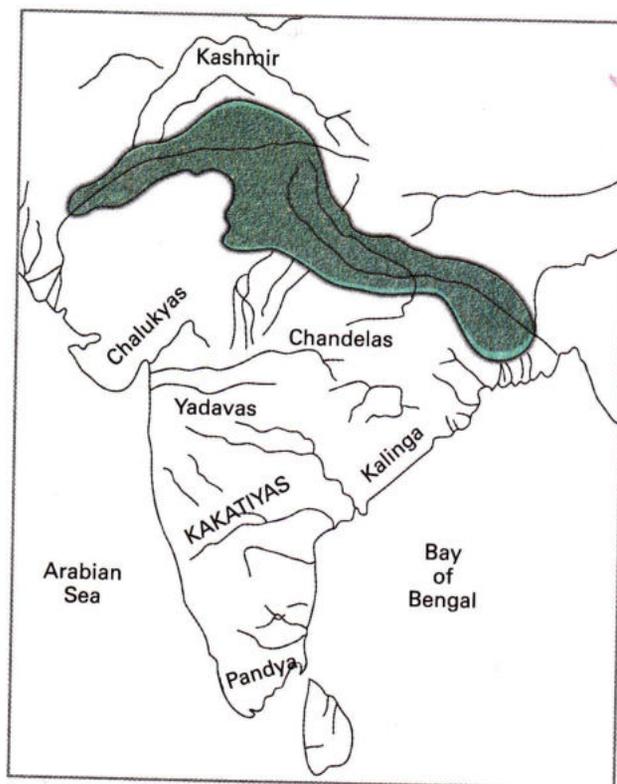
Silver coins of Iltutmish

### **RAZIYA SULTAN (AD 1236 - AD 1240)**

Raziya Sultan came to the throne after her father Iltutmish died in AD 1236. Being a woman, she had to face great opposition and rebellion from the nobles. She was very brave. She rode horses and led her army in the battlefield. She was, however, defeated by Altuniya, the Governor of Sirhind and the leader of the rebels. She later married Altuniya to recover the throne. The nobles, however, plotted against her and she was put to death in AD 1240.

### **GHIYAS-UD-DIN BALBAN (AD 1265 - AD 1287)**

After about six years of internal strife, Nasir-ud-din Mahmud, the youngest son of Iltutmish ascended the throne. He was pleasure loving, weak and inexperienced. He left the administration to his adviser Ghiyas-ud-din Balban. All the powers of the Sultan were now in his hands. For 20 years, he acted like a Prime Minister. After Nasir-ud-din's death in AD 1265, Balban occupied the throne. He took many steps to consolidate his position. He also crushed many revolts and ruled with an iron hand. With his stern and bold policy, he created fear and respect in the minds of people. He established peace and order in the country. He also



Kingdom of Balban

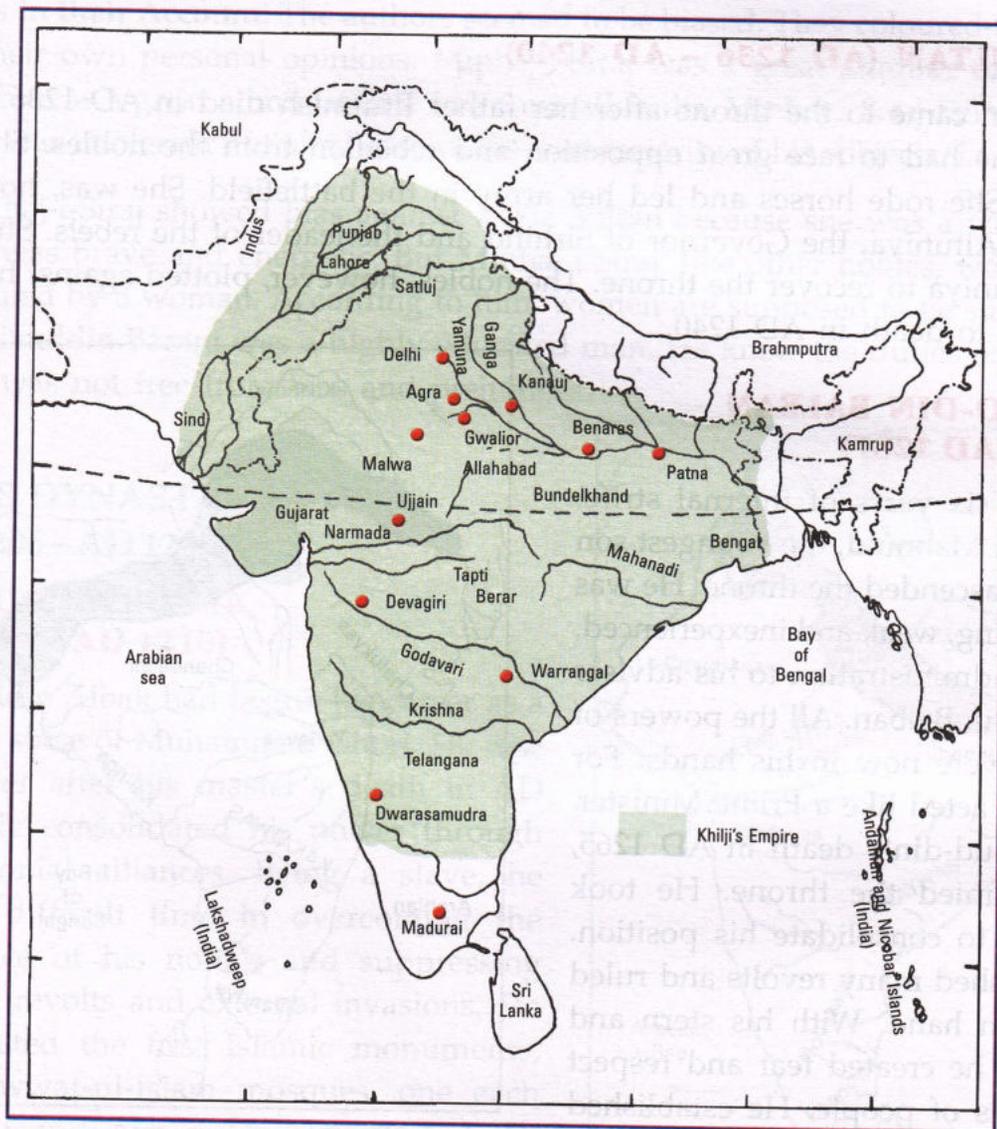
reorganised the army and posted a strong force in the north-west. The Mongols were creating great trouble there. Balban destroyed the group of 'forty' which had become very powerful. The nobles stood silently in the court. They had to kneel and touch the ground with their forehead in salutation known as *sijdah*.



Gold coins of Ghiyasuddin Balban

### KHILJI DYNASTY (AD 1290 – AD 1320)

Balban's successors were very weak. A grandson of Balban was murdered in AD 1290 and the Sultanate passed into the hands of the Khiljis. Jalaluddin Khilji (AD 1290 – AD 1296) was the first ruler of this dynasty. He sent his nephew Alauddin on a mission to conquer Devagiri in Deccan. He was victorious there. When he



Empire of Alauddin Khilji

returned to Delhi with fabulous riches, Jalaluddin came forward to greet him, but was treacherously stabbed by Alauddin.

### **ALAUDDIN KHILJI (AD 1296 – AD 1316)**

Alauddin Khilji was a brilliant general and an able administrator. He dreamt of becoming a second Alexander. His conquests included annexation of Gujarat and Malwa in AD 1297, Ranthambhore in AD 1301 and the fort of Chittor in Mewar in AD 1303. It was during his attack on the fort of Chittor that the Rajput women performed *jauhar*. They preferred to perish in flames rather than to submit to the enemy.

Alauddin Khilji needed money to maintain a large army. He raised the taxes on wealthier people. He also kept watch on the revenues collected by his nobles.

**Control of the Market:** Alauddin Khilji had the ambition of conquering the whole of India. A huge army was needed to fulfil such ambitions. The soldiers had to be fed well. Therefore, he fixed the prices of foodgrains, cloth and other essential commodities. The merchants had to sell all commodities at fixed rates. If they failed to carry out these orders, they were punished. Although this was done to benefit the soldiers, ordinary people also benefited from it.

**Conquest of the South:** Alauddin Khilji was the first Sultan of Delhi who conquered the southern India. He entrusted his military commander Malik Kafur with the task of the conquest of Deccan. Between AD 1309 and AD 1313, the Yadavas of Devagiri, the Kakatiyas of Warangal, Hoyasalas of Dwarasamudra and the Pandyas of Madurai were subdued. The rulers of Dwarasamudra and Warangal gave all their wealth and elephants to Malik Kafur. The rulers of southern India were allowed to rule on promise of paying the tribute regularly.

During Alauddin Khilji's regime, the Mongols raided the Sultanate of Delhi a number of times. But he was successful in keeping the Mongols under check.

Alauddin Khilji's empire was as large as that of Emperor Ashoka. Ghazi Malik, a general, got Khusro Khan, the last ruler of the Khilji dynasty, murdered. He then occupied the throne of Delhi.

### **Case Study**

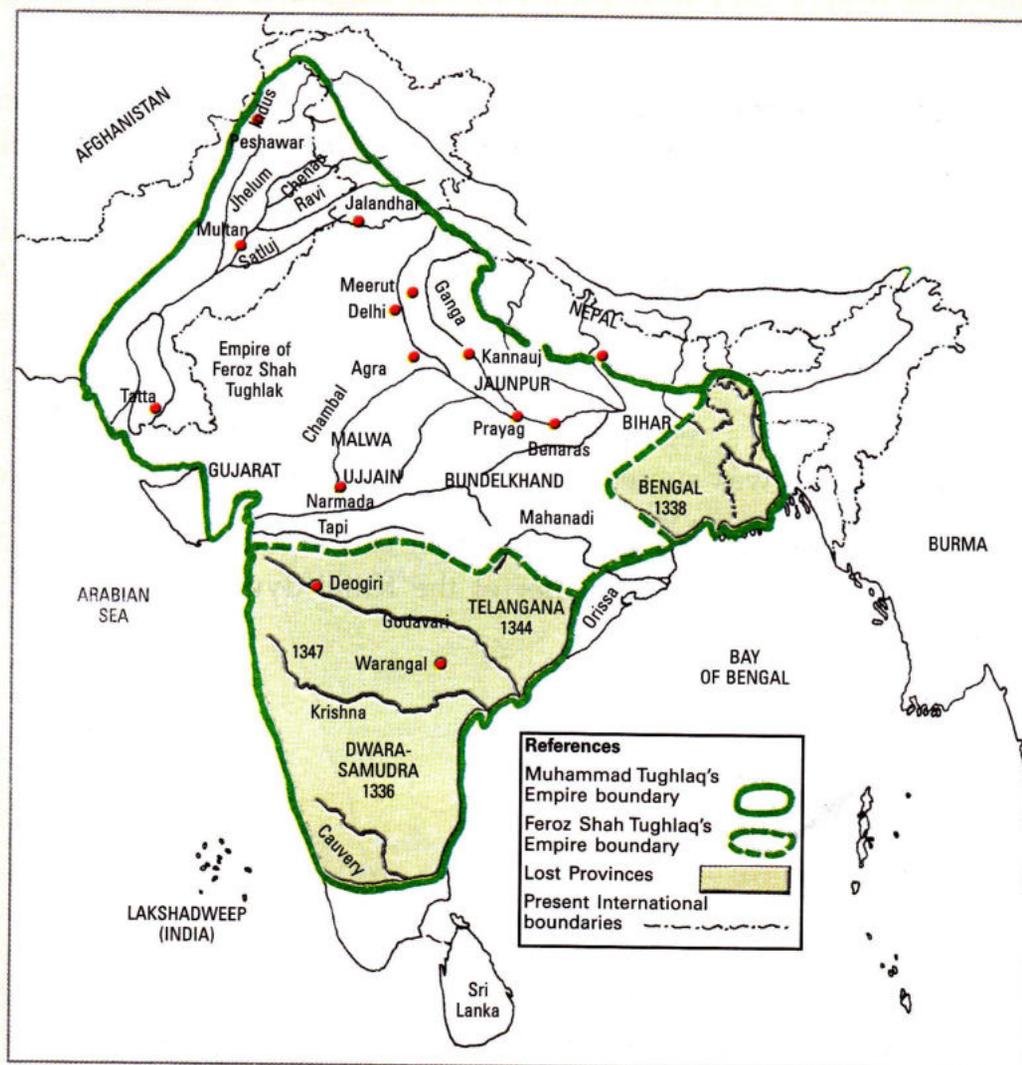
#### **TUGHLAQ DYNASTY (AD 1320 – AD 1414)**

**Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq (AD 1320 – AD 1325):** Ghazi Malik put an end to Khilji dynasty. He took the title of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq Shah and ascended the throne in AD 1320. He conducted campaigns against Warangal, Odisha and Bengal to expand his kingdom. He died in AD 1325 when a pavilion built for a public reception in his honour collapsed.

**Muhammad-bin Tughlaq (AD 1325 – AD 1351):** Muhammad-bin Tughlaq was a great scholar and the only Sultan to have received good education. He has often been described as a 'mixture of opposites'. He was kind as well as cruel. He was wise. Yet, at times he behaved unwisely that resulted in great misery to the people.

**Taxation in Doab:** The territory between the Ganga and the Yamuna is considered very fertile and is known as doab. In order to increase revenues, Muhammad-bin Tughlaq increased the rate of tax and ordered his officials to realise the tax strictly. This was done at a time when there occurred a famine in the doab because of failure of rain. Hundreds of people fled to jungles because of torture and misery. The land became barren. He later provided liberal relief but then it was too late.

**Transfer of Capital:** In AD 1327, Muhammad-bin Tughlaq decided to transfer his capital from Delhi to Devagiri in Deccan because Devagiri was situated in the middle of his kingdom. He ordered all his nobles, officials, learned men and many others to shift to the new capital which was renamed Daulatabad. In spite of many arrangements, the distance of 1500 km was too long for people to bear the hardship of the journey. As soon as the Sultan realised that the scheme had failed, he ordered the people to return to Delhi. This brought more misery to the people.



Empire of Muhammad-bin Tughlaq

**Token Currency:** Muhammad-bin Tughlaq had lost a great deal of his wealth due to bad decisions. He decided to introduce token currency in brass and copper in place of gold and silver. He issued an order that the people should use and accept these coins just like gold and silver coins. This experiment also failed. Gold and silver coins disappeared from the market and forged coins manufactured by people at their homes came into circulation. Trade and business came to a standstill. The treasury became empty and the prestige of the empire suffered.



Coins of Muhammad-bin Tughlaq

**Plans of Conquest:** Muhammad-bin Tughlaq wanted to conquer Persia (Iran) and China. For about a year he went on making preparations. Ultimately, he had to give up this project. This put a heavy strain on the royal treasury.

Muhammad-bin Tughlaq's personal life was marked by a high standard of morality. He was a great scholar, loved fine arts and music. But as a ruler he failed. He lacked practical wisdom. He inherited a vast kingdom, but at the time of his death it was considerably reduced in size. His weakness resulted in repeated revolts in many parts of the kingdom.

### **Firoz Shah Tughlaq (AD 1351 – AD 1388)**

Muhammad-bin Tughlaq died in AD 1351. According to Badauni, "the Sultan was freed of his people and they of him". He was succeeded by his cousin, Firoz Shah Tughlaq. Firoz Shah Tughlaq faced a difficult situation. The empire was shrinking. The army, the nobles and the *ulemas*, all wished to have a greater say in the administration of the empire. He, though a distinguished military leader, lacked courage and conviction. He failed in his two expeditions against Bengal, which he lost forever. He also made no efforts to reconquer Deccan. Thus, Firoz Shah Tughlaq's reign was a reign of peace. The welfare of the people became his primary interest.



Coins of Firoz Shah Tughlaq

1. He took efforts to improve cultivation. He reclaimed wasteland and brought it under farming. He repaired old canals and dug new ones.
2. He reduced the taxes.
3. He was a great builder and built towns, schools (*madarsas*), mosques and hospitals. He built a new capital at Delhi and named it Firozabad.

Firoz Shah Tughlaq proclaimed himself a true Muslim king. Unfortunately, he was intolerant towards other religions. He could not tolerate even the *Shias*. He imposed *jaziya* tax on the non-Muslims. He thus set his Hindu subjects against him.

### **Firoz Shah Tughlaq's Successors**

Firoz Shah Tughlaq's successors were incompetent. After his death in AD 1388, his descendents rose against each other. The empire started disintegrating. Only Punjab and Delhi remained under the control of the Tughlaqs.

## **INVASION OF TAMARLANE (AD 1398)**

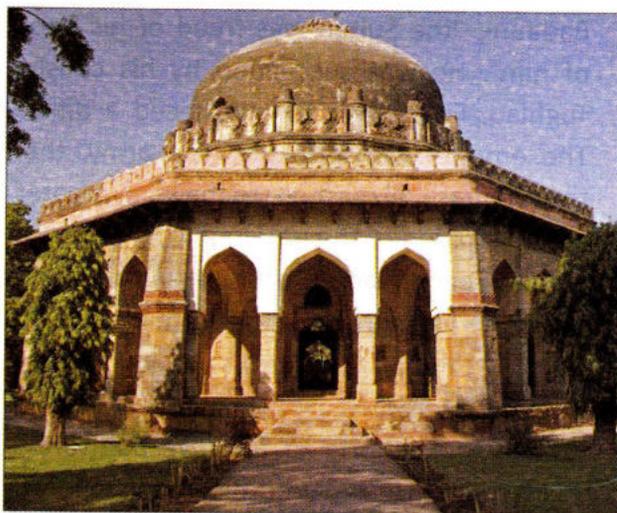
Timur Lang (Timur the Lame), better known as Tamarlane, had risen to power in Central Asia. In AD 1398, Tamarlane attacked Delhi and did not face much resistance. Like other Mongol invaders, he started looting and terrorising people. When they resisted, he ordered their massacre. This terror lasted for about a fortnight. He then left Delhi and on his way back he looted Meerut, Haridwar, Nagarkot and Jammu. Besides the wealth, he took a large number of artisans, craftsmen and builders to Samarkand.

## **SAYYID DYNASTY (AD 1414 – AD 1451)**

Timur entrusted the governance of Multan, Lahore and Dipalpur to his deputy Khizr Khan. Timur died in AD 1405. The Tughlaq kingdom somehow managed to continue till AD 1413. Khizr Khan occupied Delhi in 1414. He laid the foundation of the Sayyid dynasty. He was the most able ruler of this dynasty. He died in AD 1421. His successors were all very weak.

## **LODI DYNASTY (AD 1451 – AD 1526)**

During the rule of Sayyids, one of their Afghan officers, Bahlol Lodi (AD 1451 – AD 1489), rose to great prominence and became the governor of Punjab. In AD 1451, he seized Delhi and raised himself to the throne. He (AD 1451 – AD 1489) recovered Sind and Mewar. He treated the nobles as his equals. He tried to win their confidence by giving them gifts and land grants as *jagirs*. With their help he ruled for about 38 years.



Tomb of Sikander Lodi – Delhi

## **SIKANDER LODI (AD 1489 – AD 1517)**

Sikander Lodi succeeded Bahlol Lodi. He suppressed rebellious chiefs. He was the greatest of the Lodi kings. He moved the capital from Delhi to Agra so that he could control the kingdom better. He is known for his hatred towards the Hindus.

## **IBRAHIM LODI (AD 1517 – AD 1526)**

Ibrahim Lodi failed to keep the nobles in good humour. Lodi kings were Afghans. Much of their strength depended on the loyalty of the Afghan nobles. These nobles became jealous of his power and success. A powerful Afghan noble, Daulat Khan Lodi,

invited Babur to invade India. In AD 1526 Babur, a descendant of Timur, established the Mughal empire in India.

## ADMINISTRATION UNDER DELHI SULTANATE

The Muslim state was a theocracy. The Sultan ruled in the name of God and Islam was the religion of the state.

### I. CENTRAL ADMINISTRATION

1. **The Sultan and the High Officials:** The Sultan was at the head of both civil and military administration. He carried on the administration with the help of a number of ministers. The most important of these was the *wazir* or the chief minister. Other key officials were the *diwan* (the finance minister) and the *qazi* (chief judge).
2. **The army:** The standing army was directly under the control of the *Sultan*. Besides the standing army, *iqtadars* were also required to supply the forces through provincial governors. The army minister was known as *Diwan-i-Ariz*.
3. **Justice:** In cases involving Muslims, justice was based on *Shariat* or the Islamic law. It was usually administered by the *qazi* (judge).

### II. PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION

The empire was divided into a number of provinces. Some of the provinces were administered by governors called Naib Sultan. Some other provinces were administered by the defeated rulers who had been allowed to rule on payment of regular tribute. They were also required to assist the Sultan in times of war.

### III. LOCAL ADMINISTRATION

The provinces were divided into *shiqs*, each under a *shiqdar*. Each *shiq* was divided into a number of *parganas* which were like the modern day districts. The village was the smallest unit of administration. Each village had a revenue officer called *patwari*. It had its own *Panchayat* to settle disputes.

### IV. ECONOMIC CONDITIONS

1. Agriculture was the most important economic activity. It was the chief source of income of the Sultanate. Indians produced many crops, such as rice, sugarcane, oilseeds and cotton. Firoz Shah Tughlaq built many canals.
2. Our people were masters of many crafts, such as weaving of woollen and silk cloth, jewellery-making, metal work and stone work. Delhi, Jaunpur, Lucknow and Cambay were well-known industrial centres during the medieval age.
3. India had commercial relations with countries of central and west Asia, East Africa and China. Bengal was the chief port for trade with China and East Indies.

### The Circle of Justice

Fakhr-i-Mudabbir, a thirteenth-century writer, wrote that the rulers and military commanders should promote the interests of the peasants. Why should they? This is because a successful ruler should have a large army to support him. The soldiers cannot live comfortably without a good salary. In order to pay them a good salary, the rulers need revenues. The revenues came from the peasants. But the peasants can pay revenue only when there is peace and prosperity in the kingdom. The rulers should, therefore, ensure justice for the peasants.

## V. THE NOBLES AND IQTA SYSTEM

The nobles were a powerful force in the Sultanate period. Most of the nobles were Turkish or Afghans in origin. Most of the provincial governors, military commanders and high ranking officials in the government came from this class. Instead of paying salary to an officer in cash, he was granted a certain revenue arising from a piece of land or village reserved for the purpose. The land grants were known as *iqtas* and their holders were called *iqtadars* or *muqtis*. This was known as the *iqta system*. Under this system, out of the revenue that the officer collected, he kept a certain amount as his salary and another sum for maintaining the soldiers for the Sultan. In some cases, a part of the revenue was sent to the Sultan. The *muqtis* maintained law and order in their *iqtas*. They were also required to supply soldiers to Sultan in times of war.

**Control over Muqtis:** The *muqtis* were expected to keep a detailed account of income and expenditure concerning their *iqtas*. Rulers like Balban, Alauddin Khilji and Sikandar Lodi could keep their nobles under proper control. But most of the Sultans failed to bring the nobles under proper discipline. Control over *muqtis* was easier if the land grants were not hereditary. But when a title passed on from father to his son, it became difficult to manage the *muqtis*.

## VI. IBN BATUTA'S OBSERVATIONS

Ibn Batuta, a traveller from Morocco (Africa), reached India in AD 1333. He spent many years at the court of Muhammad-bin Tughlaq. He has left an interesting account of India of his times. It is clear from Ibn Batuta's account that Muhammad-bin Tughlaq had contradictory qualities. Sometimes he was very humble, but at other times he would inflict severe punishment for even ordinary offences.



Ibn Batuta

According to Ibn Babuta, the country was in a state of disorder and travelling from one place to another was unsafe. He says, "some chieftains live in thick bamboo forests. The bamboos protect the rulers, as if they are living in a fort. Inside the strong bamboo walls are their cattle and their crops. The rains last three or four months in a year in these regions. Therefore, there is also sufficient water for them within." These rulers could not be conquered easily. For this a strong army was needed which would cut down the bamboo forests using some very sharp tools.

### Summary of the Lesson

- The Slave dynasty lasted from AD 1206 to AD 1290. Qutbuddin Aibak first established his capital at Delhi. The other dynasties until AD 1526 were those of the Khiljis, the Tughlaqs, the Sayyids and the Lodis.
- Qutbuddin Aibak had a difficult time in overcoming the resistance of his nobles.
- Iltutmish patronised a group of forty powerful nobles known as *chalis*.
- Razia Sultan, being a woman, had to face great opposition. She was put to death in AD 1240.
- Balban ruled with an iron hand. He crushed many revolts and destroyed the group of forty nobles.
- During Alauddin Khilji's conquest of Chittor, Rajput women performed *jauhar*. He was the first Sultan of Delhi who conquered southern India. During his reign, the Sultanate reached their highest position.
- Muhammad-bin Tughlaq became unpopular on account of taxation in doab and transfer of his capital from Delhi to Devagiri.
- Tamarlane during his raids in AD 1398 looted and massacred people in Delhi, Meerut, Haridwar, Nagarkot and Jammu.
- During the reign of Ibrahim Lodi, a rebellion spread. Daulat Khan Lodi invited Babur to raid India.
- Sultan was the head of both civil and military administration. His chief minister was called the *wazir*. Other key officials were the *diwan* (the finance minister) and the *qazi* (the chief judge).
- The empire was divided into a number of provinces.
- The provinces were divided into *shiqs*. Each shiq was divided into a number of *parganas* like the modern day districts.
- The village was the smallest unit of administration.
- Agriculture was the most important economic activity.
- Many crafts flourished, such as weaving, jewellery making and metal work.
- *Iqtadars* or *muqtis* maintained law and order. They supplied soldiers to Sultan in times of war. Balban and Alauddin Khilji kept their nobles under proper control.
- Ibn Batuta's observations were that Muhammad-bin Tughlaq had contradictory qualities. Some chieftains lived in thick bamboo forests.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- The only woman to rule over Delhi Sultanate was  
(a) Bibi Hamida. (b) Bibi Mubarak. (c) Razia Sultan. (d) Rani Habiba.
- The first Sultan of Delhi who conquered Southern India was  
(a) Iltutmish. (b) Alauddin Khilji. (c) Sikandar Lodi. (d) Ibrahim Lodi.
- An important political experiment of Muhammad-bin Tughlaq was the transfer of the capital from Delhi to  
(a) Agra. (b) Dhaka. (c) Wardha. (d) Devagiri.
- During the Sultanate period, the chief minister was known as  
(a) diwan. (b) wazir. (c) Naib Sultan. (d) qazi.

### II. Match the columns.

Column A	Column B
1. <i>Shiqdar</i>	(a) Attack on the fort of Chittor
2. <i>Jauhar</i>	(b) Head of district administration
3. Iltutmish	(c) Founder of the Delhi Sultanate
4. Alauddin Khilji	(d) <i>Chalisa</i> (the forty)
5. Qutbuddin Aibak	(e) Last among Delhi Sultans
6. Ibrahim Lodi	(f) To perish in flames

### III. Give short answers to the following questions.

- Name two historians (authors of *Tawarikh*) of the Sultanate period.
- Name the Sultan who first established his capital at Delhi.
- Why did Razia Sultan face great opposition from the nobles?
- During whose reign did the Delhi Sultanate reach its highest position?
- In which year did Timur Lang invade India? Name any two places which he looted.

### IV. Answer the following questions.

- Give two reasons why the authors of history (*tawarikh*) failed to provide information about the life of the ordinary people.
- Mention two ways in which Firoz Shah Tughlaq improved cultivation and promoted welfare of the people.
- According to Mudabbir, the rulers should promote the interests of the peasants. Explain the 'circle of justice' that Mudabbir suggested.
- What were the duties of *iqtadars* or *muqtis*? Name the two Sultans who could keep their nobles (*iqtadars*) under proper control.

5. From which country did Ibn Batuta reach India? Why did he say that Muhammad-bin Tughlaq had contradictory qualities?
6. Why were the bamboo forests cut down according to Ibn Batuta?

#### V. Map Work

On an outline map of India, show the extent of Muhammad-bin Tughlaq's empire.

#### VI. Projects and Activities

1. Plan a project on Alauddin Khilji's 'Control of the Market' (Market Reforms). Do you think the similar policies should be pursued by our rulers at the present time? You may consult your teachers for their opinion and advice.
2. Have a discussion in class on the topic: 'Raziya Sultan failed as a ruler because she was a woman'.

#### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Raziya Sultan was the only woman to rule during the period of the Delhi Sultanate. What essential qualities did she possess that could be the source of inspiration for us?

#### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Badauni on Muhammad-bin Tughlaq's death said, "The Sultan was freed of his people, and they of him". What does this statement indicate about Muhammad-bin Tughlaq?

#### INTERESTING FACTS

According to the historians, Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq died in a very mysterious way. His son Muhammad-bin Tughlaq constructed a pavilion for him that collapsed when it got struck by elephants. Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq died because of the collapse.

# 5

## The Creation of an Empire

### New Words to Remember

**Standing army:** Regular army ever ready for action or combat

**Ibadat khana:** The Hall of Worship built by Akbar at Fatehpur Sikri. Here, religious discussions were held.

**Coronation:** A ceremony in which crown is formally placed on the head of a new prince.

**Khalsa:** The term meaning 'the pure' was used for the Sikhs when the tenth Guru, Guru Gobind Singh, began to organise them as soldiers for fighting against the Mughal armies.

**Treaty:** An agreement between two or more states.

**Guerilla:** A warfare carried out by small group of soldiers who use tactics to overpower the enemy.

**Mansab:** A rank or position under the Mughals. Each mansab maintained a certain number of horses.

### WHO WERE THE MUGHALS?

With the advent of the Mughals began a new era in the Indian history. The Mughal empire was established by Babur. He was related to Timur, the ruler of Iran, Iraq and Turkey, on his father's side and Chengiz Khan, ruler of the Mongol tribes, on his mother's side. In fact, the Mughals did not like to be associated with the Mongols who were terrible people. The Mongols had often raided the north-western frontier. They had killed many people. The Mughals pointed with pride to their Timurid ancestors, because Timur had seized Delhi in AD 1398. Babur, a Timurid prince of the fourth generation established the Mughal Dynasty.

Ibrahim Lodi was the ruler of Delhi from AD 1517 to AD 1526. One of his governors, Daulat Khan Lodi invited Babur, the ruler of Kabul, to invade India and overthrow Ibrahim Lodi.

### BABUR (AD 1526 - AD 1530)

Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodi in the Battle of Panipat in AD 1526. Babur was now the ruler of Delhi, though not yet the king of India.

The most powerful chieftain against whom Babur had yet to fight was Rana Sanga of Mewar. Rana Sanga had organised a huge confederacy of Rajput chiefs against the Mughal invader. The victory at Khanua, a village near Agra, in AD 1527 gave Babur complete control over central India. The Rajput power was seriously weakened.

Babur next defeated the combined forces of Bengal and Bihar in AD 1529. His empire now extended from Afghanistan in the west to Bihar in the east. Babur died in AD 1530. He wrote *Tuzuk-i-Baburi* or *Baburnama* his autobiography and kept a diary. From this we learn that he was a man of outstanding ability, courage and artistic temperament.

### **HUMAYUN (AD 1530 - AD 1540 AND AD 1555 - AD 1556)**

On ascending the throne, Humayun had to face a difficult task of establishing his empire. The rulers and the masses considered the Mughals (Mongols) as foreigners and ferocious persons. They had caused untold suffering to people over the past few centuries.

#### ***Humayun's Wars and Exile***

Humayun's kingdom was surrounded by several hostile powers. These included the Afghan chief, Sher Shah; the ruler of Gujarat, Bahadur Shah Suri and his own brothers Kamran, Hindal and Askari.

Humayun's brother Hindal's treachery enabled Sher Shah Suri, the Afghan chief of Chunar (Bihar) to defeat Humayun's forces at Chausa in AD 1539. It was from here that Humayun was on the run and the Afghan chief Sher Shah Suri followed him wherever he went.

The two met again at Kanauj in AD 1540. Humayun had to hastily assemble an army to face Sher Shah Suri. The Mughal forces were demoralised because of fighting among brothers. Sher Shah Suri secured a decisive victory. The entire Mughal empire was lost to the Afghans.

Humayun wandered from place to place. Finally, the ruler of Iran provided him a place to stay. With his help Humayun could recapture Kabul and Kandahar in AD 1545.

#### **HUMAYUN'S DEATH**

Humayun did not live long to consolidate his power. In AD 1556 he died from a fall from his library building in *Purana Qila* at Delhi.



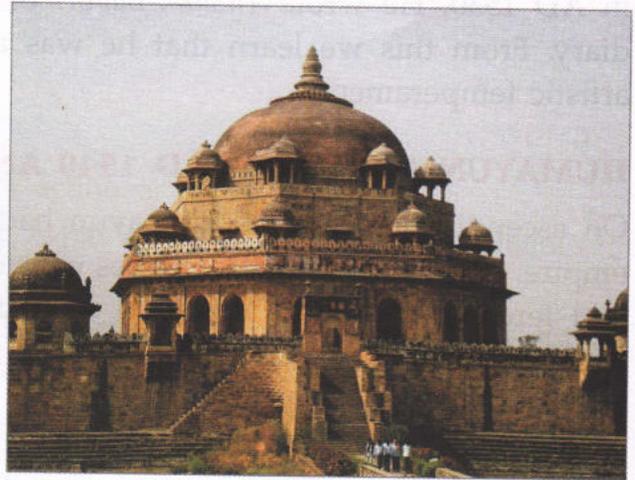
Humayun

## SURI SULTANATE (AD 1540–AD 1555)

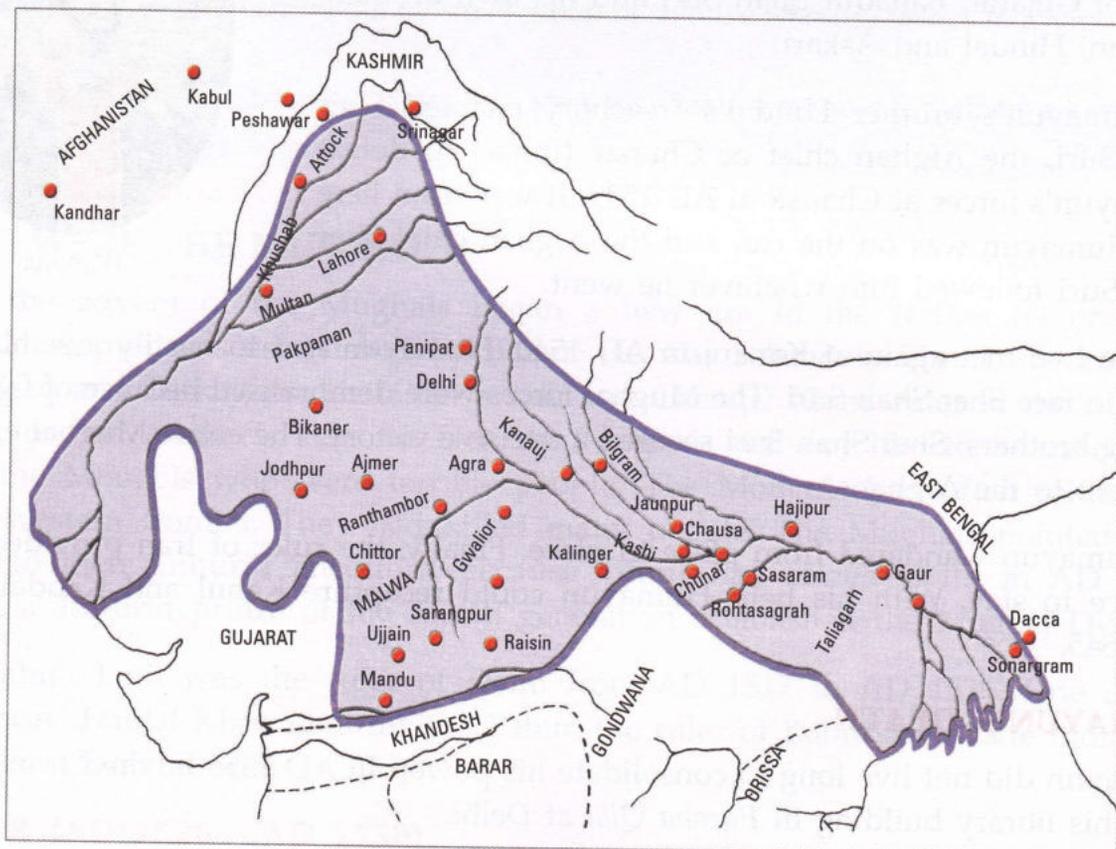
### SHER SHAH SURI (AD 1540–AD 1545)

At the time when Sher Shah Suri ascended the throne, he was already 67 years old. His original name was Farid. He had been given the title Sher Shah because he had once killed a tiger. From a mere landholder, he rose to become the Sultan of Delhi. During his five years rule, he conquered Malwa, Rajasthan and Sind and laid the foundation of a strong administrative system. His empire extended from Bengal to Indus, except Kashmir. He died in May 1545 in a gun powder explosion while assaulting the fort of Kalinjar. His tomb is at Sasaram in Bihar.

Sher Shah Suri was succeeded by his son Islam Shah (AD 1545 – AD 54) who died in AD 1554. A war of succession broke out among various claimants to the throne. In AD 1555, exiled Humayun re-established the Mughal rule in India.



Sher Shah's tomb



Empire of Sher Shah Suri

## Main achievements of Sher Shah Suri

### I. Administration

In just five years Sher Shah Suri created an administrative system far ahead of his times.

- (a) He crushed the nobles and strengthened central administration.
- (b) A large standing army completely under central control was created.
- (c) There were a number of provinces called *sarkars* each of which was again subdivided into *parganas*. Each *pargana* was under a military official known as *shiqdur*. He looked after law and order. A civilian official *munsif* looked after the collection of revenue. The village officials included *muqaddam* and *patwari*.
- (d) He also had an efficient espionage system. He held each high official, village headman and local chieftain accountable for crimes in their respective areas.

### II. Public Works

Sher Shah Suri paid great attention to the means of transport and communication. A number of good roads were constructed. The longest route connected Sonargaon (Dacca) in Bengal to Agra and then to Lahore. It later became the Grand Trunk Road and then one of the national highways in independent India.

### III. Trade

- (a) Excellent transport and communication system promoted trade and commerce.
- (b) Rest houses or *sarais* were constructed. The *sarais* were also used as *dak-chowkies*. The horseman carried the royal-mail in relays from one *chowki* to the next. This ensured quick delivery of royal mail.
- (c) He introduced the system of payment of excise duty on movement of goods from one region to another and customs duty on trade with central and west Asia. This helped increase the revenues of the kingdom.



Coins of Sher Shah Suri



## Akbar

### Akbar's Reign (AD 1556 – AD 1605)

Akbar was only thirteen years old when he became the emperor. During his fifty years' rule, he proved himself a worthy king.

**Bairam Khan:** Akbar in his early years was guided by his father's trusted friend and his tutor Bairam Khan. He looked after the kingdom until AD 1560. He had brought Gwalior, Ajmer and Jaunpur under Mughal control. When Akbar grew up he wanted to take the reins of administration in his own hands and persuaded Bairam Khan to go on a pilgrimage to Mecca. On his way to Mecca, Bairam Khan was killed by an Afghan in Gujarat.

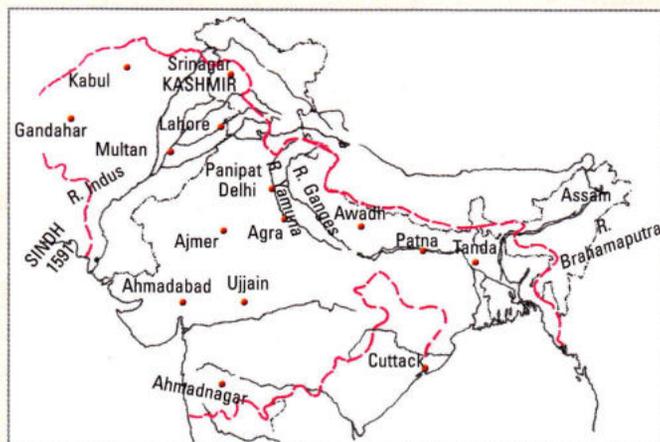


Akbar

### Conquests

Malwa was conquered in AD 1561. In AD 1564, Akbar attacked Gondwana where Rani Durgawati bravely resisted the Mughal forces. She was defeated.

Akbar wanted to expand his kingdom and bring about peace and order all around. He established friendly relations with the brave Rajputs. He himself married a number of Rajput princesses. Many Rajputs were given high posts in his administration. Many of his loyal advisers were Rajputs like Raja Man Singh. There were, however, many brave Rajput rulers, such as Rana Udai Singh and Rana Pratap who challenged Akbar's might. He advanced to Chittor



Akbar's Empire

in AD 1567. The battle continued for four months when Jaimal, the commander of Chittor was killed. Mewar passed onto the hands of the Mughals. Rana Udai Singh's son Maharana Pratap was equally a valiant king. Though he was defeated in the Battle of Haldighati in AD 1576, he took to hills and continued his battle from hill to hill for about twenty years until his death in AD 1597. He became a symbol of Rajput bravery and love of freedom.

Akbar conquered Bengal in AD 1576 and Gujarat in AD 1578. These two conquests added greatest riches to the Mughal empire. Besides the fertile land of Bengal, a number of ports which were centres of foreign trade came under the control of the Mughals.

In the north-west, Akbar conquered Kabul (AD 1585), Kashmir (AD 1586), Sind (AD 1591) and Kanadhar (AD 1595). With these conquests, the Mughals were able to develop close ties with Central Asia and Persia. It, in turn, led to a considerable growth in trade.

**Deccan:** The Deccan states of Ahmednagar, Bijapur and Golconda which had destroyed the Vijayanagar empire, resisted both diplomatic and military offensive of the Mughals. Chand Bibi,

the brave queen of Ahmednagar, faced the Mughal army in AD 1595. She was forced to sign a treaty and handover Berar to the Mughals.

### Administration

Akbar not only established a vast empire, he also gave the country an efficient administrative set up.

**Central Administration:** Akbar was the pivot of the whole administration. He was at the head of both civil and military administration. He was the fountain of justice. He was assisted by many talented and gifted officers. *Wazir* was the Prime Minister who looked after general administration. The *diwan* was in charge of the Department of Finance and Revenue. *Mir Bakshi* was the head of the military department. *Sadr-us-Sadur* was the adviser to the emperor on religious matters. He looked after charities for educational and religious purposes.

**Provincial Administration:** For administrative purposes, Akbar divided his empire into 15 provinces called *subas*. These *subas* were under the control of provincial governors called *subedars* and *sipahsalar*s. The *subas* or provinces were further divided into districts called *sarkars*. The districts were sub-divided into smaller units called *parganas* which were under *faujdar*s. Each *pargana* had a number of villages. The *muqaddam* and *patwari* looked after village administration.

**The Mansabdari System:** Akbar created an imperial service based on merit and rank or position. It was called *mansabdari system*. The word *mansab* means a rank or position. The *mansabdars* or the holders of this rank enjoyed certain privileges and had certain functions to perform. The lowest rank was that of 10, whereas the highest rank was 5,000, which was later on increased to 10,000 by Akbar's successors. The *mansabdars* held their appointments directly from the emperor. They acted both as military commanders and civil administrators. The highest rank was generally reserved for members of the royal family and the nobles. Each *mansab* maintained a fixed number of horses, camels and carts. The holders of lower ranks received their salaries in cash, but the holders of higher ranks were granted *jagirs* (land grants).

**Jagirs:** The *mansabdars* were allowed to collect land revenue from the *jagirs* granted to them. They were granted *jagirs* for a temporary period. *Jagirs* were often transferred from one *mansabdar* to another. In other words, they were not given ownership rights over the lands granted to them. They only collected revenue for themselves and for the troops they maintained. The chief merit of the *mansabdari* system was that Akbar was able to recruit persons of great ability for the service of the empire. The system worked well under him, but in course of time it led to corruption. Some of the *mansabdars* did not maintain as many troops as they were required to have.

**Military Administration:** The Mughal army consisted of infantry, cavalry, artillery and navy. The troops were mostly provided by *mansabdars*. *Mir Bakshi* was responsible for maintaining the list of *mansabdars* and other officials. He was also the Paymaster General of all officers of the state, including *mansabdars*.

**Land-Revenue System:** During the reign of Akbar, a reformed revenue system was introduced. *Todar Mal*, who had earlier worked under *Sher Shah*, first carried out a proper survey of land. He classified the land, according to its productivity, into four categories. Land-revenue or the

tax was fixed according to the productivity of land. This revenue system was called *zabt*. It was also known as Todar Mal's *bandobast* because Todar Mal was Akbar's Revenue Minister. The revenue was collected by the village headman (*muqaddam*) or some other local chief called the *zamindar*. The *zamindars* could keep a certain percentage of what they received from the peasants. In course of time the *zamindars* had become very powerful. They started exploiting the peasants who sometimes revolted.



Gold coins of Akbar

### Religious Ideas

Akbar built the *Ibadat Khana* at Fatehpur Sikri. Here he held religious discussions with the preachers of different religions. He realised that there is basic unity among all religions. It was this idea of *sulh-i-kul* (universal peace) which made him tolerant of different religious faiths. He abolished the hated *jaziya* tax, which was taken from the Hindus. In AD 1580 the emperor started a new faith called *Din-i-Ilahi* (divine religion). It contained the best principles of different religions, such as honesty, truth, justice and peace. Unfortunately, not many people were attracted to the new faith.

**Akbar's Mausoleum:** Akbar was a great conqueror and an able ruler. He was one of the greatest monarchs known to history. His mausoleum is at Sikandra, near Agra.



Akbar's mausoleum

## JAHANGIR (AD 1605 – AD 1627)

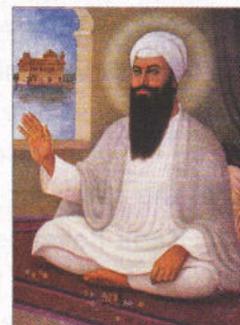
During Akbar's reign, his eldest son Salim had rebelled and set himself up as an independent ruler at Allahabad. Akbar became seriously ill in AD 1604 and soon father and son gave up their quarrel. Akbar named Salim his successor. In AD 1605, the emperor died. Salim took the name of Jahangir and his reign began in AD 1605.



Jahangir

### MAJOR EVENTS OF JAHANGIR'S REIGN

**Execution of Guru Arjan Dev (AD 1606):** Guru Arjan Dev was the fifth Sikh guru. He had given shelter to Prince Khusrau, son of Jahangir, who had revolted against his father. The Guru was asked to pay a fine of rupees two lakh. On his refusal to pay the fine, the Guru was tortured. The Guru became a martyr. This cruel act marked the beginning of bitter relations between the Sikhs and the Mughals.



Guru Arjan Dev

**Conquests:** Mewar, which Akbar could not subdue, was brought under control by Prince Khurram, son of Jahangir, in AD 1615.

Jahangir completed the task left unfinished by Akbar in Deccan. In AD 1616, Prince Khurram personally commanding the Mughal forces conquered the Ahmednagar fort. For this victory Prince Khurram was conferred title of 'Shah Jahan' (Lord of the World) by Jahangir.

**Nur Jahan:** Jahangir had married Nur Jahan (real name Meharunissa) in AD 1611. She was the widow of a Persian nobleman who had earlier been put to death for treason. Nur Jahan was an ambitious lady. Gradually, she took control of the entire administration in her hands. Her father and brother became prominent nobles at the court. Jahangir used to take her advice on all important matters. She wanted her son-in-law Prince Shahriyar to succeed Jahangir. Jahangir died in AD 1627. Shah Jahan, the Governor of Deccan at that time, marched to the capital (Agra) and became the emperor in AD 1628.



Gold coins of Jahangir

**European Traders:** The East India Company had been formed in England in AD 1600 to trade with India. In AD 1615 Sir Thomas Roe was sent to India as an ambassador of the British king. The English were permitted to open a factory at Surat. Thomas Roe has left behind an interesting account of Jahangir's court.

## SHAH JAHAN (AD 1628 – AD 1658)

Shah Jahan was a kind ruler. His reign was generally peaceful.

**Conquests:** Ahmednagar, Bijapur and Golconda, the three kingdoms in Deccan had been a source of trouble for the Mughals. After annexing Ahmednagar in AD 1632, the emperor asked the states of Bijapur and Golconda to submit to the Mughal authority. The ruler of Golconda submitted, but military action was needed to bring Bijapur into submission.

In the north-west, the Mughals had suffered some reverses after Akbar's death. Shah Jahan was able to recover Kandhar, but the Mughals could not retain it for long. The Shah of Iran captured it again in AD 1649. The campaigns to recover Kandhar failed. Kandhar was lost by the Mughals forever.



Mumtaz and Shah Jahan

## WAR OF SUCCESSION

Shah Jahan was taken seriously ill in AD 1657. A war of succession began among the four brothers (Aurangzeb, Dara Shikoh, Murad and Shuja). Aurangzeb emerged victorious. He imprisoned his father Shah Jahan at the Agra Fort in AD 1658 and declared himself the Emperor of India. Shah Jahan died in AD 1666.

## AURANGZEB (AD 1658–AD 1707)

Aurangzeb ruled for nearly fifty years. His rule extended over almost the entire subcontinent — from Kashmir in the north to river Kaveri in the south and from Kabul in the west to Chittagong in the east. But he reversed Akbar's policy of religious toleration. He reimposed *jaziya tax* on the Hindus. Therefore, he had a difficult time. He spent the last days of his reign attempting to suppress one revolt after another.



Aurangzeb

## CHIEF EVENTS DURING AURANGZEB'S REIGN

### *The Revolts of Jats and Satnamis*

In AD 1669, the Jats of Mathura revolted under the leadership of Gokula, the *zamindar* of Tilpat. They were defeated but could not be crushed permanently. In AD 1672, the Emperor had to march personally to crush a rebellion of another group of peasants called *satnamis*. These uprisings, however, continued until the Jat leader Churaman established a separate Jat kingdom.

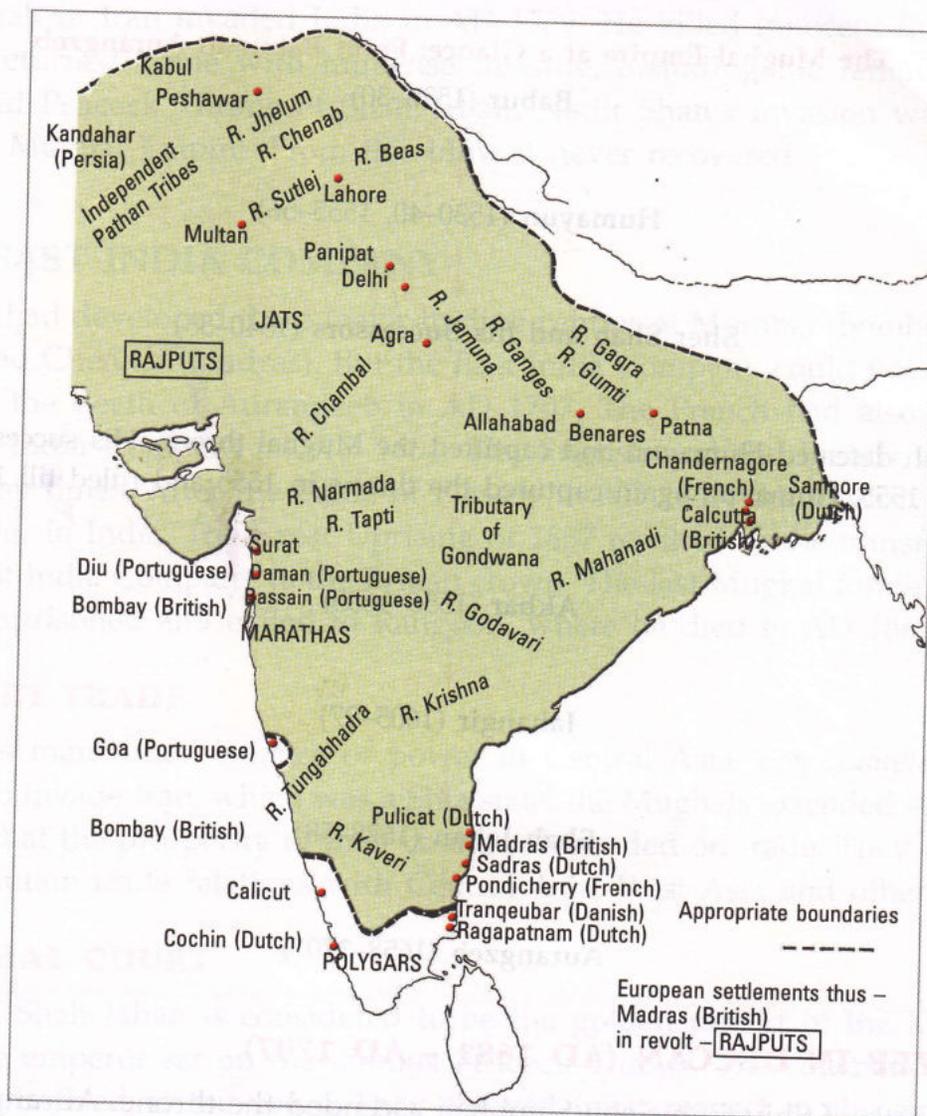
### *The Revolt of Sikhs*

Guru Teg Bahadur, the ninth guru of the Sikhs, opposed the policy of religious persecution followed by Aurangzeb. In AD 1675 Guru Teg Bahadur, along with five of his followers, was arrested and brought to Delhi. Guru Teg Bahadur was ordered to embrace Islam. On his refusal to give up his faith, the Guru was beheaded at a place called *Chandni Chowk* in Delhi.

Guru Teg Bahadur's son, Gobind Singh, the tenth guru, organised the Sikhs into a disciplined military sect called the *Khalsa*. They continued their heroic struggle against the Mughals. There was a fierce battle at Anandpur Sahib in AD 1704. Guru Gobind Singh fought heroically. His two sons were bricked alive when they refused to embrace Islam.

### *Relations with Rajputs*

Aurangzeb's relations with Rajputs were never cordial. He kept Raja Jaswant Singh of Marwar and Raja Jai Singh of Mewar away from the court as he was annoyed with them. After Raja Jaswant Singh's death, Aurangzeb did not allow his infant son, Ajit Singh, to inherit the throne. He detained the infant in Delhi. Durga Das Rathore, a



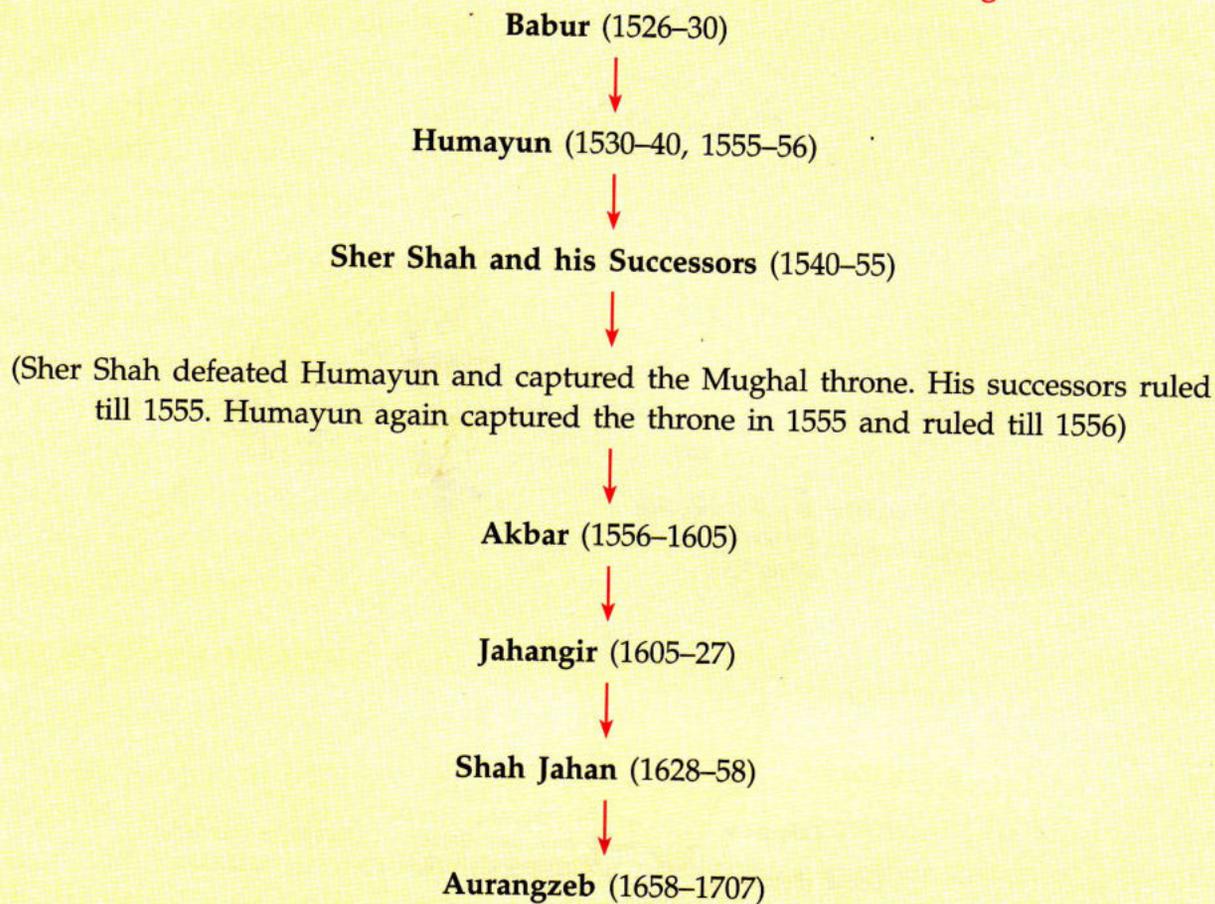
Empire of Aurangzeb

brave Rajput, rescued Ajit Singh. Thereafter, Rajputs of Marwar and Mewar joined hands and fought against the Mughals for several years. At the end, Aurangzeb had to yield and accept Ajit Singh as the ruler.

### Relations with Shivaji

The Mughals had conflicts with the Marathas who had become a strong power under Shivaji. The latter started attacking the Mughal territories in Deccan. Aurangzeb sent Shaista Khan with a powerful army to fight against him. Shaista Khan was wounded and his son got killed. Aurangzeb then sent another army under Raja Jai Singh to deal with Shivaji. Raja Jai Singh persuaded Shivaji to visit the Imperial Court in AD 1666. Shivaji was humiliated by Aurangzeb. He, along with his son Sambhaji, remained under house arrest for nearly nine months. Shivaji managed to escape. He reached Deccan. In AD 1674 Shivaji was crowned as a king. Shivaji's glorious rule was cut short by his death in AD 1680. He was not only a successful military leader, but an able administrator as well.

## The Mughal Empire at a Glance: From Babur to Aurangzeb



### AURANGZEB IN DECCAN (AD 1681 - AD 1707)

After the death of Shivaji, his son Sambhaji ascended the throne. Aurangzeb reached the Deccan in 1681. He was determined to crush the Marathas, but his efforts did not bear the desired results.

Aurangzeb annexed Bijapur in 1686 and Golconda in AD 1687. In AD 1689 Sambhaji was also defeated, captured and killed. But the Marathas continued to cause a lot of trouble. From AD 1700 to AD 1707 Aurangzeb remained in the Deccan. He died at Aurangabad in AD 1707, with little success but great loss of wealth and prestige. His absence from the north created disorder and weakened the empire.

### LAST DAYS OF THE EMPIRE

The successors of Aurangzeb were very weak and inefficient. One such king was Muhammad Shah (AD 1719 - AD 1748) who kept himself surrounded by musicians and dancers. He, therefore, came to be known as Muhammad Shah Rangila (Muhammad Shah the colourful). During his reign Asaf Jahan created an independent kingdom at Hyderabad. Soon afterwards, the governors of Bengal and Awadh also declared their independence. They did not recognise the authority of the Mughal king.

Nadir Shah of Iran invaded India in AD 1739. He killed innocent inhabitants of Delhi and returned home with immense treasure, including the famous Kohinoor diamond and Peacock Throne of Shah Jahan. Nadir Shah's invasion was a terrible blow to the Mughal Empire. From this blow it never recovered.

## **RISE OF EAST INDIA COMPANY**

The English had developed three major trading centres at Mumbai (Bombay), Kolkata (Calcutta) and Chennai (Madras). But the East India Company could not make much advance till the death of Aurangzeb in AD 1707. The French had also formed the French East India Company in AD 1664. The English and the French were at war in India many times. After the Battle of Plassey in AD 1757, the English became the leading power in India. The Great Uprising of 1857 resulted in the transfer of power from the East India Company to the British crown. The last Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah was imprisoned and exiled to Rangoon, where he died in AD 1862.

## **THE EXPORT TRADE**

The Mughals maintained balance of power in Central Asia. *For example*, when the Turks tried to invade Iran, which was a Shia state, the Mughals extended support to it. They knew that the prosperity of their country depended on trade. They made every effort to maintain trade relations with Central Asia, West Asia and other countries.

## **THE MUGHAL COURT**

The reign of Shah Jahan is considered to be the golden period of the Mughal rule in India. The emperor sat on the famous Peacock Throne. The courtiers and nobles had their seats fixed at the court. They showed great respect to the emperor. The business of administration was transacted in the court. The officers gave their reports and took instructions from the emperor. The emperor also met the common people at fixed hours at *Diwan-i-aam* and heard their grievances. When the emperor went on official tours, the courtiers also moved with him.

## **AKBAR NAMA AND AIN-I-AKBARI**

You must be surprised how we know so much about Akbar. Much of it we know from his court historian Abul Fazl who wrote *Akbar Nama*. This book tells a great deal about Akbar and his times. *Akbar Nama* is in three volumes. The first volume deals with Akbar's ancestors from the days of Timur to those of Humayun. The second volume presents the events of Akbar's reign. The third volume (*Ain-i-Akbari*) gives information about Akbar's administration and the legal and revenue systems of the empire. It also gives a detailed account of the city and village administration, the duties assigned to police *kotwals* (inspectors) and the measures taken to regulate prices and to prevent women from becoming *sati* (burning themselves) against their will.

## Summary of the Lesson

- Babur was related to Timur on his father's side and Chengiz Khan on his mother's side.
- Ibrahim Lodi, the last ruler of Delhi Sultanate, was inefficient.
- Babur invaded India in AD 1525 at the invitation of one of the Governors of Ibrahim Lodi.
- In the Battle of Panipat (AD 1526), Ibrahim Lodi was defeated and at Khanua (AD 1527) Rana Sanga was defeated.
- By AD 1529 Bengal and Bihar became part of the Mughal empire.
- Humayun ascended the throne in AD 1530.
- As a result of the hostile attitude of his brothers and a few other factors, Humayun was defeated by an Afghan chief Sher Shah Suri in 1540.
- Humayun fled and Suri dynasty ruled India between AD 1540 and AD 1555.
- Sher Shah Suri, though 67 years old, during a brief period of 5 years conquered Malwa, Rajasthan and Sind.
- Sher Shah Suri created an efficient administrative system and undertook many public welfare projects, such as the construction of many good roads.
- In AD 1555, exiled Humayun re-established the Mughal rule in India.
- Humayun's son Akbar ascended the throne in AD 1556 when he was just thirteen years old.
- Bairam Khan, trusted friend of Akbar's father, was his tutor.
- Akbar entered into matrimonial alliance with royal families of Jaipur and wanted a similar alliance with Mewar, but the Rana of Mewar refused.
- Akbar's rule was the most glorious period of the Mughal era.
- The reign of Shah Jahan is considered to be the golden period of the Mughal rule in India.
- Aurangzeb ascended the throne in AD 1658 after having defeated his brothers in the war of succession. Dara was killed and Shuja fled.
- Aurangzeb remained busy with wars, first in the north-west and then in Deccan.
- Aurangzeb had to suppress revolts of Jats, Sikhs and Satnamis. He reversed Akbar's policy of religious toleration. Guru Teg Bahadur was beheaded.
- The Mughals' conflict with the Rajputs continued even after Aurangzeb's death.
- Marathas became a strong power under Shivaji.
- After the death of Shivaji, Aurangzeb defeated and killed Shivaji's son Sambhaji.
- During Aurangzeb's reign, the English and French trading companies became rivals in India.
- *Akbar Nama* and *Ain-i-Akbari* give a detailed account of Akbar's administration and the legal and revenue systems of the Mughal empire.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodi in AD 1526 at the  
(a) Battle of Khanua. (b) Battle of Panipat.  
(c) Battle of Chausa. (d) Battle of Chittor.
- Akbar's revenue minister was:  
(a) Raja Bharmal. (b) Raja Jaimal.  
(c) Raja Todar Mal. (d) Raja Jaswant Singh.
- Akbar started a new religious faith called  
(a) Din-i-Ilahi. (b) Din-i-Ibadat. (c) Sulh-i-Kul. (d) Din-i-Aman.
- The fifth Sikh Guru Arjan Dev became a martyr during the reign of  
(a) Babur. (b) Humayun. (c) Jahangir. (d) Aurangzeb.

### II. Match the columns:

Column A	Column B
1. Grand Trunk Road	(a) Akbar
2. <i>Subedars</i>	(b) Jahangir
3. Mansabdari system	(c) Sher Shah Suri
4. Haldighati	(d) Shivaji
5. Nur Jahan	(e) Provincial governor
6. House arrest	(f) Maharana Pratap

### III. Give short answers for the following questions.

- Why did the Mughals take pride in pointing to their Timurid ancestors?
- Humayun's kingdom was surrounded by several hostile powers. Name any two powers.
- Who became a symbol of Rajput bravery and love of freedom?
- How can you say that Nur Jahan was an ambitious lady?
- During whose reign Sir Thomas Roe was sent to India as an Ambassador of the British king?
- Name any two revolts that broke out during Aurangzeb's reign.

### IV. Answer the following questions.

- Write a note on Akbar's provincial administration.
- What was the *Mansabdari* system?
- Write a brief note on Akbar's religious ideas.
- Mention Shah Jahan's military operations against the three Deccan kingdoms.
- Aurangzeb reversed Akbar's policy of religious toleration. What were its consequences?

## V. Projects and Activities

1. Collect the pictures of the Mughal Emperors Akbar and Shah Jahan. Write a few lines on each of them.
2. Abul Fazl, Akbar's court historian, gave a detailed account of Akbar's administration in *Ain-i-Akbari*. What information does he provide about Akbar's administration?

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Why did Maharana Pratap become the symbol of Rajput bravery and love for freedom even though he was defeated by Akbar at the Battle of Haldighati?

# 6

## The Architecture: Forts and Sacred Places

### New Words to Remember

**Garbhagriha:** Sanctum where the main deity is kept.

**Shikhara:** The pointed high super structure built on the top of garbhagriha.

**Gopuram:** The gateway of the temple in South India.

**Baoli:** The step wells in Rajasthan and Gujarat used for water harvesting.

**Calligraphy:** Decorative handwriting

**Dome:** Large semi-circular roof

**Minars:** Slender and tall towers tapering to the top

**Canopy:** Covering over a bed or a person or throne

The story of Indian art and architecture covers a long period of more than five thousand years. Our archaeological heritage includes temples, mosques, *gurdwaras*, forts, palaces, tombs and hydraulic structures like canals, tanks, wells, etc.

We can classify the architectural heritage into two categories — (a) Sacred Monuments which are associated with religion. For example, temples, mosques, *gurdwaras* and synagogues. (b) Secular monuments, such as forts, palaces, *havelis*, gateways, towers, etc. Funerary monuments include tombs, *dargahs*, *chhatries*, etc. The rulers of ancient and medieval India built grand monuments.

### IMPORTANCE OF MONUMENTS AS SOURCES OF INFORMATION OF HISTORY

The monuments are the most authentic source for reconstructing history because they cannot be tampered with.

- (a) The monuments tell us much about the engineering skills and building techniques of a particular period.
- (b) They show different styles of architecture. For example, the north Indian temples display *Nagara* style and the south Indian temples display the *Dravida* style. The

Islamic architecture has some special features, such as domes, *minars*, *minarets*, etc.

- (c) The palaces and *havelis* highlight the splendour and lavish lifestyle of the royal families and nobility. The forts, with their high walls and gateways, reveal the strategy of defence against the enemies.
- (d) Many temples, particularly those built by the Chola rulers, had inscriptions which furnish details about military conquests of these rulers.
- (e) The temples during the middle ages had vast treasures of gold and jewels. Mahmud of Ghazni defeated many Hindu kings and destroyed temples. His motive was not only to loot wealth, but also to show that he was a great Hero of Islam (*al-ghazi* or "god's warrior").

### ARCHITECTURE BETWEEN AD 800 AND AD 1200 (THE RAJPUT PERIOD)

During the Rajput period, architecture and sculpture reached a high level of excellence. The Kailash Temple at Ellora built in the second half of the eighth century by a Rashtrakuta king marked the beginning of temple architecture. This shrine was made out of a single rock. The temples that followed later were structural temples built with brick and mortar. The Kailash Temple consists of four parts—(i) the main shrine, (ii) the richly carved gateway called *gopuram*, (iii) a *Nandi* shrine between two huge towers, and (iv) an assembly hall.



The Kailash Temple

The hill at Ellora contains a number of rock-cut caves. The Elephanta Caves, near Mumbai, contain remarkable images of deities. The main temple styles discussed here are those of Odisha, Gujarat, Rajasthan and Bundelkhand.

#### (A) TEMPLES OF ODISHA

The *Nagara* style was developed in Odisha between tenth and thirteenth centuries. Out of many temples, the following three are most noteworthy.

- (i) **Lingaraja Temple, Bhubaneswar:** The Lingaraja Temple was built by rulers of the Ganga dynasty in AD 1100. The interior of the temple is plain, but outer walls are richly carved. It has conical shaped spire.
- (ii) **Mukteswara Temple, Bhubaneswar:** The Mukteswara Temple was built in the tenth century by the rulers of the Ganga dynasty. It has an arched gateway decorated with beautiful sculptures depicting the life of Lord Krishna.



Elephanta Caves



The Lingaraja Temple

(iii) **Sun Temple, Konark:** The Sun Temple was built by King Narasimha Dev-I (1238–1264) of the Eastern Ganga dynasty. It is dedicated to Sun god or *Surya*. The whole structure is fashioned like a ratha drawn by seven horses. The big wheels fixed on either side are beautifully carved. This temple is also known as the **Black Pagoda**.



The Sun Temple

### **(B) TEMPLES OF GUJARAT AND RAJASTHAN**

Temples in Gujarat and Rajasthan are mostly Jain temples. The Gujarat temples were constructed by the Solanki kings in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. The **Dilwara Jain Temples** of Mt. Abu in Rajasthan were built during eleventh to thirteenth centuries. They are made of white marble. These temples have delicate carvings in the interior, while the exterior is simple and plain. The Dilwara temples have no towers (*shikharas*).



The Dilwara Temple

### **(C) TEMPLES OF BUNDELKHAND**

The temples of Bundelkhand were built by the Chandela rulers in the tenth and eleventh centuries at Khajuraho in Madhya Pradesh. Among them, the most famous is the Kandariya Mahadev Temple (1050) with 84 decorated small towers surrounding the main tower. Every inch of the walls is



The Kandariya Mahadev Temple

covered by superb sculptures. The *sikhara* is fashioned in such a way that it appears like Mount Kailasa, the home of Lord Shiva.

The early part of the mediéval period from AD 750 to AD 1200 witnessed the consolidation of the intellectual tradition and great artistic activity. It also witnessed much demolition in the later period by the Muslim invaders.

**Palaces:** Rajput rulers also built many forts and palaces. The Jaipur Palace where the ruler resided is a huge and magnificent structure. The Umaid Bhawan Palace at Udaipur, built of sandstone, is impressively elegant. Some of the palaces of the past have been converted into heritage hotels. Many Rajput palaces had *chitrasalas* or art galleries.

## MONUMENTAL ARCHITECTURE UNDER THE SULTANATE OF DELHI (AD 1206 – AD 1526)

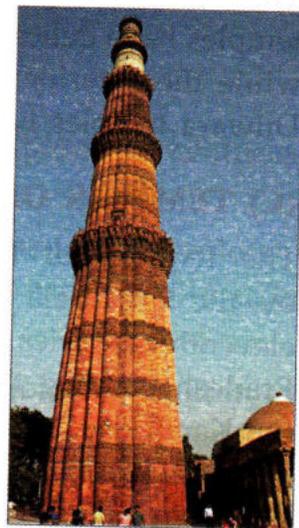
The Turks brought with them their own style of architecture. But they had to employ Hindu architects and craftsmen who introduced certain Hindu designs in the buildings. This resulted in the growth of a new Indo-Islamic style of architecture.

The Muslim mosques and tombs had domes, beautiful *minars* and *minarets*. They had arched roofs or ceilings called vaults. In keeping with the Islamic traditions, the Turks did not have animal or human forms on the walls of monuments. Their structures were decorated with geometrical patterns and calligraphy, i.e. passages from the Holy Quran. Some of the monuments had Hindu designs, such as lotus and the Swastika bell. For the construction of these buildings, marble, red sandstone and lime mortar were used.

The Delhi Sultans built many fine buildings. Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque built by Qutb-ud-din Aibak in Delhi is one of the earliest monuments of the Delhi Sultanate. Later, Qutab Minar, Alai Darwaza, the tomb of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq, Feroz Shah Kotla and tombs of Lodi kings at Delhi were built.

**Qutab Minar:** The most magnificent of these monuments is the Qutab Minar. It rises to a height of 72.5 m. It has five storeys. Each storey has a different pattern and goes on tapering as the storeys ascend. Each storey has a balcony. Its construction was started by Qutb-ud-din Aibak and completed by Iltutmish. This minar displays great engineering skill.

**Quwwat-ul-Islam Mosque:** Quwwat-ul-Islam means 'might of Islam'. This mosque was built by Qutb-ud-din Aibak at Delhi. It was dedicated to the Sufi saint Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki.



The Qutab Minar

**Alai Darwaza:** The Alai Darwaza is one of the four gateways to the Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque. It was built by Alauddin Khilji. It preserves the earliest use of 'arch' at the entrance of a building. The walls of the gateway as well as the mosque are richly decorated with motifs taken from the Hindu art of Gujarat.



The Alai Darwaza

**Tomb of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq:** The architecture of the Tughlaqs was simple, but more massive. The tomb of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq has sloping walls. Built on a raised platform it has a marble dome. Tughlaq structures are also found at Feroz Shah Kotla. They used grey stone in their structures. As such, there is little ornamentation.



The Tomb of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq

**The Lodi Buildings:** The monuments of the Lodis are impressively elegant. Their structures were often constructed in the middle of the garden. The Lodi Garden in Delhi is a fine example of Lodi art and architecture.

## THE MUGHAL ARCHITECTURE (AD 1526 – AD 1707)

It was in the field of architecture that the Mughals made their greatest contribution to the Indian culture. Their monuments are great masterpieces of all times.

Babur and Humayun had great liking for Persian style of architecture. During Akbar's reign, the Indian style got embedded in it and during the rule of his successors, it was entirely Indian.

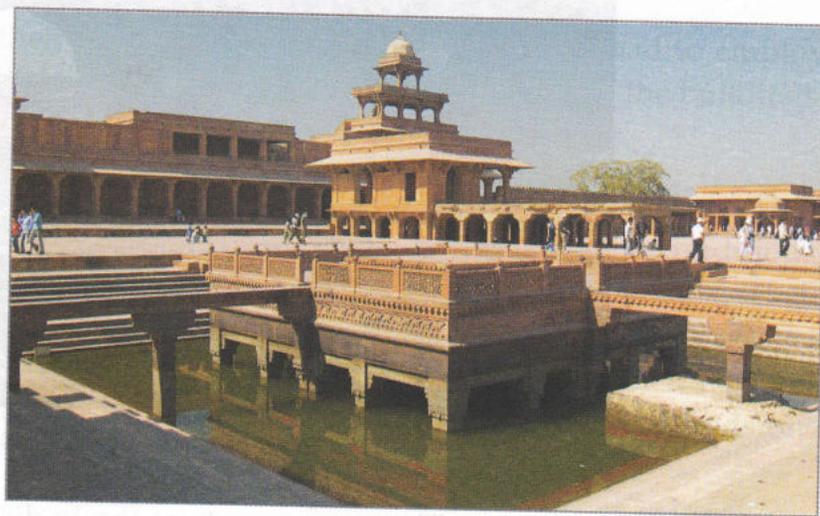
Some of the features of the Mughal architecture are as follows:

- (a) For the construction of these monuments white marble and red sandstone were mainly used.

- (b) The monuments were decorated with natural scenery (trees, birds, etc.), precious stones of different colours and mosaic work.
- (c) The mosques had beautiful minars at the corners.
- (d) Their structures had huge gateways.
- (e) Gardens were developed around the tombs.

Only two monuments built by Babur have survived. One is a mosque at Panipat and the other mosque is at Sambhal in Rohilkhand. Humayun did not get much time for planning and constructing monuments. The first important monument of Akbar's reign is the tomb of Humayun at Delhi, built by Humayun's wife. The unique feature of the monument is its massive dome having on it the influence of Persian art. The tomb was placed in the midst of a large garden. Its central hall is surrounded by eight rooms. The structure was constructed with red sandstone, although marble was also freely used in the construction of the building.

**Akbar:** Akbar built a number of monuments. He built the Agra Fort on the banks of the River Yamuna. His most ambitious project was his new capital at Fatehpur Sikri, situated 43 km west of Agra. The prominent buildings of the city were: (i) Diwan-i-Aam, where emperor held his general *darbar*, (ii) Diwan-i-Khas or the Hall of Private

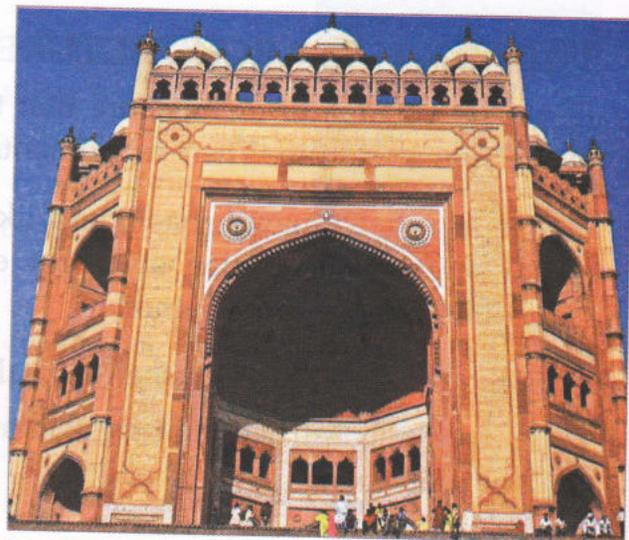


Fatehpur Sikri

Audience, (iii) Jodhabai's Palace, (iv) Rang Mahal, (v) the House of Birbal, (vi) the Jama Masjid, and (vii) the tomb of Sheikh Salim Chisti.

Buland Darwaza was erected at Fatehpur Sikri to commemorate the conquest of Gujarat. It is a gateway, 40 m high and 35 m wide. It carries beautiful inscriptions. A verse from the teachings of Jesus Christ was also included in the inscriptions. That shows the religious tolerance of the great Emperor.

**Jahangir:** Jahangir completed Akbar's tomb at Sikandara. During his reign Nur Jahan built the tomb of her father Itmad-ud-daula. It was built of white marble.



The Buland Darwaza

## Case Study

### Shah Jahan

Shah Jahan is often called the 'Engineer King' because Mughal architecture reached its climax during his reign.

The main sources of information about the great monuments built by Shah Jahan are the *Badshah-Nama* written by Abdul Hamid Lahori, a court historian, and the travel accounts of Tavernier who visited India between AD 1638 and AD 1668.

Shah Jahan's reign is considered as the 'golden age of Mughal architecture'. His monuments lacked originality and grandeur when compared to Akbar's monuments. But in terms of beauty of form, harmony of proportion and elaborate decorations they are matchless. Some of the buildings are the Red Fort of Delhi and its Diwan-i-Aam and Diwan-i-Khas, the Jama Masjid in Delhi and the Moti Masjid at Agra. But the most famous of them all is the Taj Mahal.

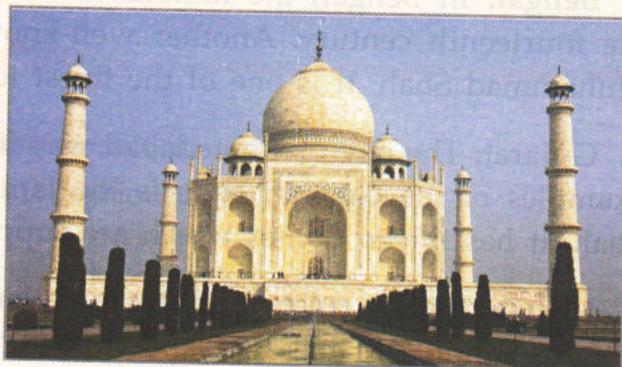
**The Taj Mahal**, at Agra, has been described as 'a dream in marble.' It is purely Persian in style but Indian in spirit. This monument is considered one of the Seven Wonders of the World. It was built on the banks of River Yamuna by Shah Jahan in memory of his wife Mumtaz Mahal. It was designed and completed by Ustad Isa. It took 22 years to complete and cost rupees three crores. More than 20,000 workers were employed for its construction. It is made entirely of marble brought from Makrana in Rajasthan. It stands on a huge platform and has a bulbous dome which looks like an inverted lotus. There are four smaller domes at the four corners of the building. The outer walls and the interior walls are richly decorated with calligraphy. The precious stones and various other materials that were used for decorating the monument came from different countries. It attracts large number of tourists from all parts of the country as well as outside India.

**Red Fort:** The Construction of Diwan-i-Aam or the Hall of Public Audience in the Red Fort was commenced by Shah Jahan but completed by Aurangzeb. It is mainly made of marble. It was here that the emperor listened to the public petitions and met the officials.

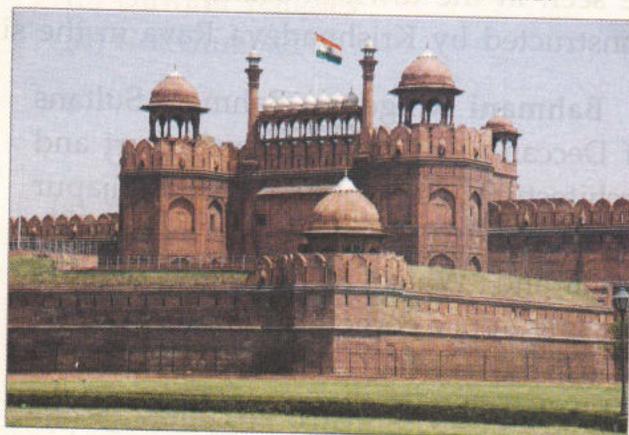
Diwan-i-Khas or the Hall for Private Audience, inside the Red Fort, was a remarkable building. It was here that the



Shah Jahan



The Taj Mahal



The Red Fort

famous Peacock Throne made of solid gold was placed. The figure of a peacock, set with precious stones, topped the canopy of the throne.

Behind the imperial throne there was *pietra-dura* which means 'pictorial mosaic work using semi-precious stones.' The picture was that of the Greek God Orpheus playing the lute. This god could charm wild beasts with the beauty of his singing. The idea was that king's justice could bring peace and harmony in the country. An inscription on the wall of Diwan-i-Khas said, "If there is Heaven on Earth, it is here, it is here, it is here." This made one to believe that peace and prosperity prevailed throughout the empire.

**Jama Masjid:** Shah Jahan also built the Jama Masjid in Delhi. It is one of the most elegant monuments of its kind.

## THE REGIONAL ARCHITECTURE

The rulers of the various regional dynasties were also builders of palaces, mosques and tombs.

**Bengal:** In Bengal, the famous Adina mosque was built in the second half of the fourteenth century. Another well-known structure is the tomb of Jalal-ud-din Muhammad Shah. It is one of the finest tombs in Bengal.

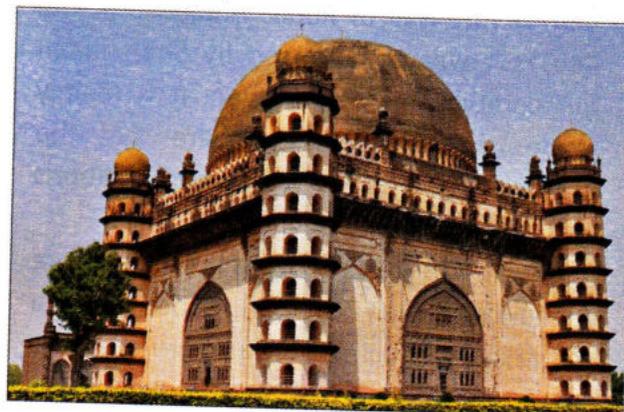
**Gujarat:** The city of Ahmedabad was founded by Ahmad Shah. One of the finest examples of the Gujarati style is the Jama Masjid at Ahmedabad built by Ahmad Shah. It has fifteen domes which are supported by more than two hundred pillars.

**Malwa:** Malwa rulers built many splendid monuments of Mandu, such as Jami Masjid, Hindola Mahal and Jahaz Mahal.

**Kashmir:** In Kashmir the local chiefs adopted the old tradition of constructing buildings with wood and stone. The Jami Masjid at Srinagar is a very impressive piece of architecture in wood.

**Vijayanagara Empire:** The Vijayanagara empire in Deccan had high achievements to its credit. The best examples of the temples built by the Vijayanagara rulers can be seen in the town of Hampi in Karnataka. The Vitthaldeo Temple at Hampi was constructed by Krishnadeva Raya in the sixteenth century.

**Bahmani Kingdom:** Bahmani Sultans of Deccan were great patrons of art and architecture. The Gol Gumbad at Bijapur (in Karnataka) is known for its massive dome and 'Whispering Gallery'. Even a whisper in one corner can produce a loud echo in the hall. It was built by Muhammad Adil Shah II (AD 1637 – AD 1656) as his own mausoleum.



Gol Gumbad, Bijapur

## Summary of the Lesson

- Monuments are a great source of information for reconstructing the past history.
- Archaeological heritage can be classified into two categories: sacred monuments and the secular monuments.
- A number of famous temples were built by rulers in north India—the Dilwara Temples of Mt. Abu and the Khajuraho Temples in Madhya Pradesh.
- Two types of architectural styles emerged—the *Nagara* style in north India and the *Dravida* style in south India.
- Domes, arches and minars are important features of the Islamic architecture introduced in India by the Turks.
- Quwaat-ul-Islam mosque, Qutab Minar, Alai Darwaza and the Tomb of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq are some of the important monuments of the Sultans of Delhi.
- Akbar and Shah Jahan were great builders. Akbar's monuments were mainly made of red sandstone. Shah Jahan is called an Engineer King.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The Sun Temple at Konark (Odisha) is fashioned like  
(a) a *ratha*. (b) a horse.  
(c) a bulldozer. (d) a bullock cart.
2. The Lingaraja Temple at Bhubaneswar was built by the rulers of  
(a) Pala dynasty. (b) Paramara dynasty.  
(c) Ganga dynasty. (d) Chalukya dynasty.
3. The Buland Darwaza was built by Akbar to commemorate or to make people remember his victory over  
(a) Gondwana. (b) Mewar. (c) Gujarat. (c) Bengal.
4. The phrase 'a dream in marble' was used to describe the beauty of  
(a) Diwan-i-Khas (b) Dilwara Temples  
(c) Taj Mahal (d) Gol Gumbad

### II. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque
2. Fatehpur Sikri
3. *Badshah Nama*
4. Jama Masjid in Delhi
5. Gol Gumbad

#### Column B

- (a) Abdul Hamid Lahori
- (b) Shah Jahan
- (c) Akbar
- (d) Bahmani Sultan Adil Shah II
- (e) Qutb-ud-din Aibak

### III. Give short answers to the following questions.

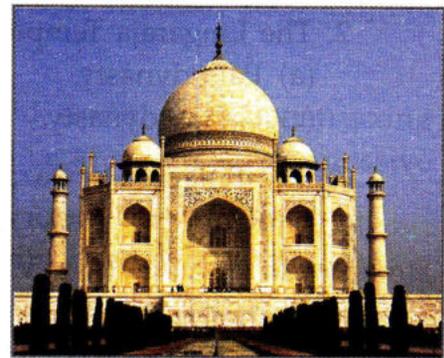
1. Mention any two features of the Dilwara Temple of Mount Abu in Rajasthan.
2. Name any two buildings built by Akbar at Fatehpur Sikri.
3. Who completed Akbar's tomb at Sikandara?
4. Who among the Mughal rulers is called the Engineer King?
5. Name the place where the Vitthaldeo Temple is found. By whom was the temple built?

### IV. Answer the following questions.

1. What is pietra-dura?
2. An inscription in Diwan-i-Khas stated that it was like heaven. What does it cause people to think about the Mughal Empire?
3. Mention the main features of the Gol Gumbad at Bijapur.
4. Where is Humayun's Tomb located? Mention two main features of the building.
5. Mention any two features of the Mughal architecture.

### V. Projects and Activities

1. Undertake a visit to a historical monument in your town or city or a place that is nearby. Make a diary entry about, the period of its construction and the king associated with it.
2. Collect the pictures of at least two Mughal monuments. Paste them in your scrapbook. Write a few sentences about them.
3. The Monument shown was selected as the World Heritage Site in 2007 by UNESCO—a body of the United Nations. Now provide the following information about it.
  - (a) Where is it located?
  - (b) When and by whom was it built?
  - (c) What is it famous for?
  - (d) The other monuments built by the same emperor in Delhi.
4. Get a picture of the Sun Temple and paste it. Now provide the following information about it.
  - (a) The place where the temple is located.
  - (b) When and by whom was the temple built?
  - (c) Mention two main features of the temple.



### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Calligraphy is the art of producing beautiful handwriting using a brush or a special pen. Which are the acclaimed books known for their artistic writing?



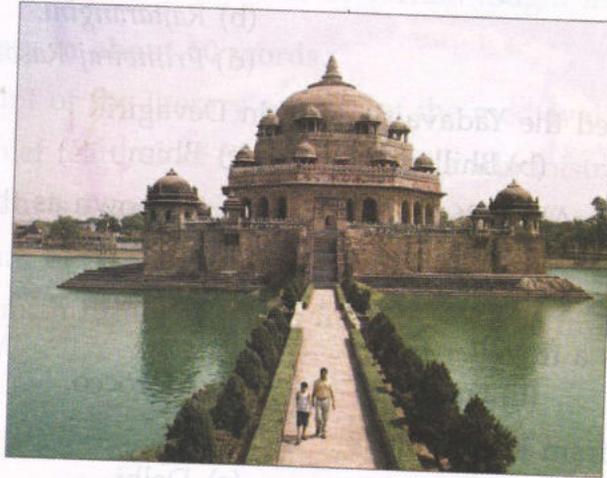
## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 4–6)

### I. Map Work

On an outline map of India show the extent of Delhi Sultanate.

### II. Picture Study



This is a picture of a tomb of a famous king who became the Sultan of Delhi.

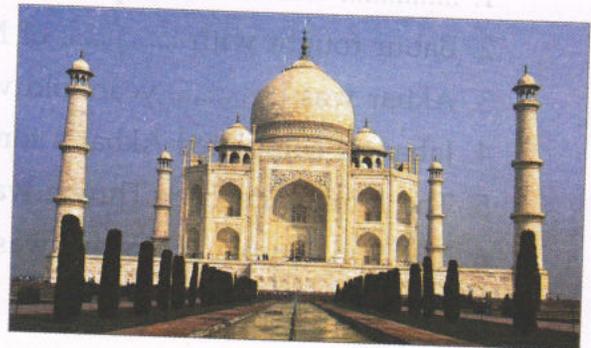
- Identify this monument.
- Where is it located?
- What was the original name of the Sultan whose name is associated with it?
- What was his main achievement in the field of Public Works?

### III. Chart Work

Collect pictures of any three Mughal monuments and paste them on a chart paper. Mention the name of the Kings associated with each Monument.

### IV. Assignment

Ravindranath Tagore described the Taj Mahal as "a tear drop on the cheek of time." Explain this statement and describe why it is called one of the Wonders of the World.





## TEST PAPER

(Based on Chapters 1–6)

Total Marks: 50

Time: 2 Hours

**I. Tick (✓) the correct answer.**

1 × 8 = 8

- The history of the kings of Kashmir is  
(a) *Ratnavali*. (b) *Rajtarangini*.  
(c) *Babunama*. (d) *Prithviraj Raso*.
- ..... founded the Yadava dynasty in Devagiri.  
(a) Bhoja (b) Bhillama (c) Bhim (d) Dantidurga
- The period from AD 1206 to AD ..... is known as the age of Delhi Sultanate.  
(a) 1256 (b) 1526 (c) 1625 (d) 1525
- Ibn Batuta was a traveller from .....  
(a) China. (b) Japan. (c) Morocco. (d) England.
- Where was Bairam Khan killed?  
(a) Ajmer (b) Gujarat (c) Delhi (d) Agra
- Where is the Sun Temple located?  
(a) Konark (b) Ajmer (c) Jaipur (d) Agra
- The reign of ..... is considered to be the Golden period of Mughal rule.  
(a) Akbar (b) Jahangir (c) Shah Jahan (d) Aurangzeb
- When did Timur Lang attack Delhi?  
(a) 1526 (b) 1398 (c) 1365 (d) 1605

**II. Fill in the blanks.**

1 × 6 = 6

- ..... was the most powerful ruler of the Slave dynasty.
- Babur fought with ..... of Mewar.
- Akbar was ..... years old when he became the emperor.
- Jahangir completed Akbar's tomb at .....
- The famous Peacock Throne was placed in ..... in the Red Fort.
- The Sun Temple at Konark was built by king .....

**III. Write the answer in one word.**

1 × 6 = 6

- The first Slave ruler .....
- The Engineer King .....
- A Dream in Marble .....
- Author of *Akbarnama* .....

5. Founder of the Lodi dynasty .....

6. The Turkish ruler who invaded India seventeen times. ....

**IV. Write short answers in about 30 words.**

**2 × 5 = 10**

1. Who was Abul Fazl? What was he famous for?
2. Who was Alauddin Khilji?
3. Who started Qutab Minar's construction and who completed it?
4. What are the two main features of the Gol Gumbad at Bijapur?
5. Between whom was the first Battle of Tarrain fought in 1191?

**V. Give long answers in about 60 words.**

**4 × 5 = 20**

1. Give an account of the literary sources of the medieval period in India.
2. Discuss the chief features of Sher Shah Suri's administration.
3. What was Akbar's *Mansabdari* system? Discuss the features of this system.
4. Give an account of Akabar's conquests.
5. How did Iltutmish firmly establish the Turkish rule in India?

# 7

## Towns, Traders and Craftsmen

### New Words to Remember

**Urbanisation:** The process of gradual development of a village into a city.

**Court cities:** The cities which were seats of royal court or authority.

**Port Cities:** The cities which developed due to growth of overseas trade and commerce.

**Kalamkari:** A style of fabric painting in Andhra Pradesh. In this style of painting, a cotton tipped bamboo stick is used for drawing outlines on fabric and then it is dyed in natural colours.

**Saltpetre:** A crystalline, white, salty substance used as an ingredient for gunpowder. It contains potassium nitrate.

**King's Balance:** A balance by which the rulers were weighed against grains, gold or money which was then distributed among poor. Such practice existed at Hampi.

One of the important aspects of the medieval period in the seventeenth century was the fast growing urbanisation. The Arab, Turkish and Afghan migrants settled in towns and cities and many new towns were founded.

### GROWTH OF TRADE AND THE RISE OF CITIES

Some of the causes for the growth of trade and commerce which led to the rise of new towns are as follows:

- There was peace and racial harmony in the Mughal empire. Travel was safe for traders.
- There were good means of transportation in the country. The roads were well-linked. The rivers were also used for efficient transportation.
- The structure of taxes was uniform. A trader could sell his goods anywhere in the country.
- There was great demand for luxury goods. This gave great encouragement to handicrafts.

- (e) The Mughal rulers issued coins in pure silver. These could be exchanged easily.
- (f) The *mandis* or the places where the farmers sold their grains slowly developed into small and big towns.

## SOURCES OF INFORMATION ABOUT THIS PERIOD

The sources of history for this period are the accounts of foreign travellers who visited India during this period. They visited many towns and cities. They have included details about the prosperity of these towns in their description. Some of the travellers were Father Monserrete, Ralph Fitch and Domingo Paes.

The maps prepared by Hondiu furnish useful information about trade towns of India. The maps of Sir Thomas Roe give details about administrative divisions of the Mughal empire.

The official *farmans* or orders issued by the rulers are also an important source of history for this period.

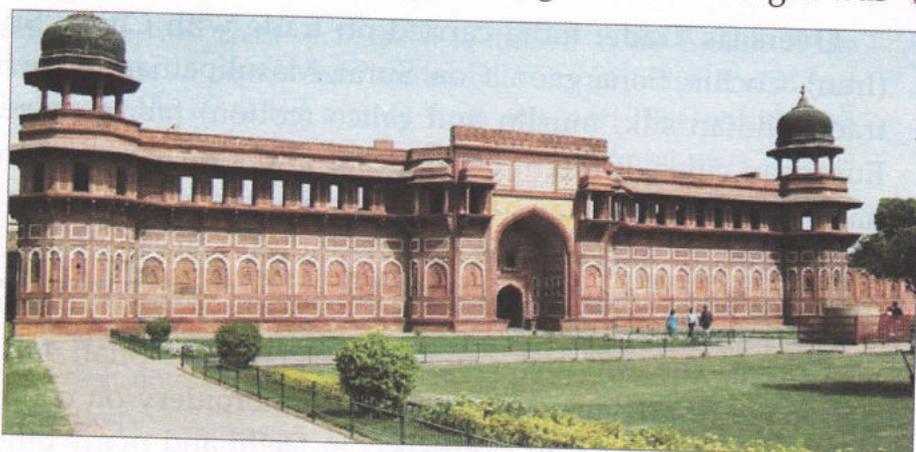
The towns that developed in the seventeenth century could be classified into three types: (a) court towns, (b) pilgrimage towns, and (c) ports and trading centres.

### COURT TOWNS

Some of the important court towns or administrative centres were Lahore, Agra, Fatehpur Sikri and Delhi. According to Ralph Fitch these were much bigger than London and were more populous.

**Lahore:** Lahore was the capital of Akbar between AD 1585 and AD 1598. It also had a huge fort. Monserrette wrote that Lahore was "not second to any city in Europe or Asia." It was also a centre of handicrafts production. It was the distribution centre of Kashmiri carpets and shawls. The travellers have spoken about the riches of Lahore and considered it as an important city of trade.

**Agra:** Agra was the seat of royal authority during the reign of Akbar. Agra was much bigger than Delhi. Abul Fazl mentioned that the Agra Fort, made of red sandstone, contained more than 500 masonry structures. It very much impressed the travellers who visited it. Cotton and silk-weaving was practised in Agra.



The Agra Fort

**Fatehpur Sikri:** Fatehpur Sikri was the new capital founded by Akbar. It is very near to Agra. He shifted his court to this city in AD 1571 and remained there till AD 1585. In his book '*Commentarius*', Monserrate referred to this city and its notable buildings. Akbar built imperial palaces at Fatehpur Sikri in honour of Sheikh Salim Chisti, a Sufi saint, who lived there.

**Delhi:** Shah Jahan rebuilt Delhi and named it Shahjahanabad in AD 1639. He built the Red Fort on the bank of River Yamuna. It was made of red sandstone. Chandni Chowk, an important shopping complex, was just outside the Red Fort.

### **PILGRIMAGE TOWNS**

Several towns developed around places of religious importance for both the Hindus and the Muslims. Varanasi and Allahabad (Prayag) were believed to be holy places visited by the Hindus from all over India. Fatehpur Sikri and Ajmer had the tombs of the Sufi saints. They, therefore, became the places of pilgrimage. Other pilgrimage towns were Sanchi, Kurukshetra, Nankana Sahib, Amritsar, Puri and others.

### **PORTS AND TRADING CENTRES**

Several other towns developed due to the products that were found in that region or due to their proximity to seashore. Gujarat had a number of such trading towns and ports, namely Cambay, Surat and Broach. Other important ports on the west coast were Goa, Cochin and Lahori Bander. On the east coast, the important ports were Chittagong, Sonargaon, Masulipatnam and Nagapatnam.

Kasim Bazaar in Bengal was an important trading town for cotton. At Patna, the British set up a factory for collecting and storing cotton goods. Saltpetre was available in plenty in Bihar. Patna prospered as many foreign traders competed with each other to buy saltpetre.

**Trading Communities:** Vaishyas, Marwaris and Bohras were the main trading communities, besides the Gujaratis in general. In south India the Chettiars were among the major trading communities.

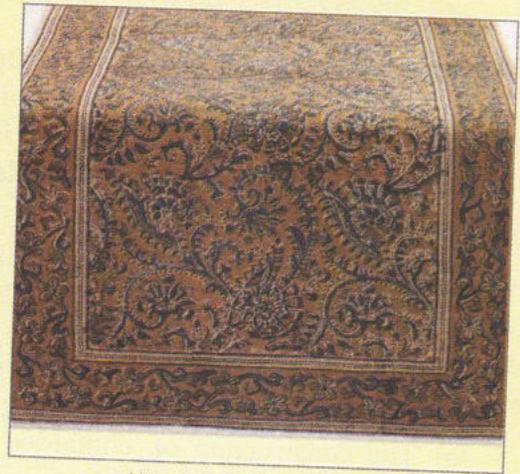
**Overseas Trade:** India carried on trade with China, Sri Lanka, Arabia and Persia (Iran). Cochin, Sonargaon, Goa, Surat, Masulipatnam were important ports for external trade. Indian silk, muslin and calico (cotton) fabrics were in great demand even in European cities. It might be interesting to know that several kinds of cloth took their names from Indian towns. For example, the word 'Calico' comes from Calicut. The main items of export were cotton clothes, spices, indigo, saltpetre, etc. The imports included good breed horses, perfumes, Chinese pottery, ivory goods, etc.

**Crafts:** The Mughal emperors, Akbar and Shah Jahan, were known for their patronage to artisans and craftsmen. Embroidery on cotton, silk and wool was quite well-known. Ivory craft flourished in Delhi and many other towns. The art of marble

inlay reached excellence in medieval India. The finest of carpets were produced at Lahore. The craftsmen of Bidar were known for their inlay work in copper and silver. Therefore, this art was called *bidri* work. This craft was used for decorating boxes, betel cases, *huqqas* (hubble-bubble) and other articles of domestic use.

### Masulipatnam

The town of Masulipatnam, also known as Machlipatnam, is located on the Coromandal Coast in Andhra Pradesh. It was a flourishing eastern sea port during the time of the Satavahanas. Periplus referred to it as 'Masulea', where muslins were made. Its importance was due to the fact that it was the major port city of the prosperous Golconda kingdom. It had been the centre of trade rivalry between the Dutch, the British and the French Companies in the seventeenth century. The British had set up a factory at Masulipatnam in AD 1633. The Dutch also had a trading settlement at Masulipatnam. The rivalry between the Dutch



Kalamkari Floor Spread

and the British companies remained serious till late fifties of the eighteenth century. But eventually the power of the Dutch declined. There were also trade rivalries between the British and the French in this region. But after the Second Carnatak War (AD 1749 – AD 1754) the French influence seemed to be on the decline. Later, many factors made Masulipatnam economically less important and less prosperous. The foreign companies got attracted to Kolkata (Calcutta), Chennai (Madras) and Mumbai (Bombay).

Masulipatnam has been well-known for its Kalamkari fabrics. The term *kalam* refers to the 'pen-like pointed tool used to draw outlines on clothes' and *kari* means workmanship. Masulipatnam was also known for its carpets and curtains industry. It had a lucrative trade in textiles and spices. Craftsmen at Masulipatnam made curtains for export to European cities. At present some of the places of interest at Masulipatnam and nearby areas are Manginapudi Beach, Pandurangaswamy Temple and Masulipatnam Church.

### Surat

Surat has been a major port on the west coast of India. It is located at the mouth of the river Tapi. Under the Mughals, it rose to be the chief commercial city of India. It also had an Imperial Mint. The pilgrims to Mecca sailed mainly from this port. The wealth and prosperity of Surat reached its height under the Mughals. The textiles of Surat were famous for their silk and gold brocades (*zari* work). When the local artists came into contact with the foreigners, fashions and designs underwent a change. It led to the adoption of different patterns and colours. The work of precious stone-setting was specially developed at Surat.

The Portuguese fleet virtually controlled the Surat trade. But the British and the Dutch also set up factories at Surat. The *Seths* and *Mahajans* of Gujarat had many banking houses at Surat. In fact, their *hundies* (cash notes) were honoured by indigenous bankers of other countries, including Egypt and Iraq.

With the fall of the Mughals, the trade and productivity at Surat declined. In AD 1688 the British East India Company got Mumbai (Bombay) from the king of England who had received it from Portugal as a dowry gift by marrying a Portuguese princess. The Company now had its headquarters at Mumbai (Bombay). Thereafter Surat declined in importance.

Surat is even now known for its diamond cutting and polishing industry. It is also a centre of the high technology industry of Gujarat.

### Hampi

Hampi is located in Karnataka on the banks of River Tungabhadra. It was a fortified city. It was the capital of the Vijayanagar empire. This empire was founded in AD 1336 by Harihar and Bukka, two of the five sons of Sangama. Krishnadeva Raya (AD 1509 – AD 1530) was the greatest king of the Vijayanagar empire. It reached its zenith in the sixteenth century. Several European travellers and traders wrote about the wealth and splendour of the capital city at Hampi.

Today the city of Hampi is in ruins. But it seems that the city had beautiful palaces and markets overflowing with goods of all kinds. The ruins of temples remind us of the past glory of the Vijayanagar empire.

(a) The construction of Vitthaldeo Temple was started by King Krishnadeva Raya and was continued by his successor Achyuta Raya. Its pillars are carved with sculptures. Besides the temple of the main deity Vitthal or Lord Vishnu, there are separate shrines for other deities. It has pillared halls called *Kalyana Mandapam* and an open pavilion.

(b) At Hampi, we also come across 21 feet high statue of Ugra Narasimha. It is located near Virupaksha Temple.

There is an inscription which states that it was hewn from a single boulder during Krishnadeva Raya's reign.



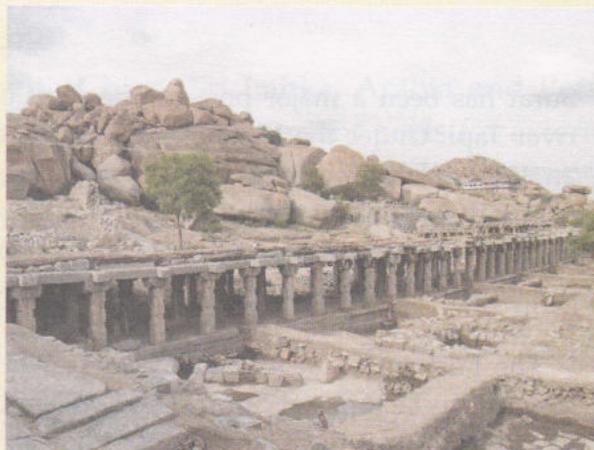
King Krishnadeva Raya



The Vitthaldeo Temple



The Stone Chariot, Hampi



The Ruins of Hampi

- 1688  
had  
pany  
nce.  
ntre
- (c) The House of Victory is another building found here. It was built by Krishnadeva Raya, after his victory over the king of Odisha. The *Navaratri* and *Dussehra* celebrations were organised on a grand scale at this place. King's presence added glory to these festivals.
- (d) The Queen's Bath, the Lotus Mahal, and the stables for elephants were a few other grand structures at Hampi.

The Karnataka government annually organises 'Vijayanagar Festival' to remind us of the bygone glory of this Empire. Hampi has been designated as a World Heritage Site.

### TRAVELLERS' ACCOUNTS OF THE VIJAYNAGAR EMPIRE

The Italian traveller Nicolo Conti visited Vijayanagar around AD 1420. He said that the empire of Vijayanagar was very rich and prosperous. He referred to the practice of *sati* in the kingdom.

Abdur Razzaq, an ambassador of the Persian king at the Court of Zamorin, visited Vijayanagar in AD 1443. He has left a detailed description of the city. About the prosperity of the empire he said, "In the king's treasury there are chambers filled with gold. All the inhabitants of the kingdom, whether high or low, wear ornaments in their ears or around their necks and arms."

A Portuguese traveller Domingos Paes said, "The king has many soldiers and many elephants. In the city of Vijayanagar you will find men belonging to every nation because of the great trade it has. The city is stocked with foodgrains and pulses."

In brief, Vijayanagar was the centre of an active commerce and trade in diamonds, silks of China, and pepper and sandal from Mysore.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Towns and cities flourished in medieval India due to growth in trade and commerce.
- The towns could be classified as court towns (e.g., Lahore, Agra), pilgrimage towns (Varanasi, Ajmer), and ports and trading centres (Surat, Masulipatnam).
- Both internal and external trade flourished. India carried on trade with China, Sri Lanka, Arabia and Persia.
- The main items of exports were cotton, clothes, indigo, saltpetre, cloves, etc. The imports included horses, perfumes, Chinese pottery and ivory goods.
- Masulipatnam is situated on the Coromandal Coast in Andhra Pradesh.
- The British East India Company set up its trading post there.
- Masulipatnam was known for its carpets and curtains industry. It had a lucrative trade in textiles and spices.
- At present some important places of interests in Masulipatnam are Manginapudi beach, Pandurangaswamy Temple and Masulipatnam Church.
- Surat has been a major port on the west coast of India. The pilgrims to Mecca sailed from there. The British set up a factory there. Surat lost its importance with the rise of Mumbai (Bombay) as a major port.
- The economic activities in Surat included diamond cutting and polishing, gold brocades (*zari* work) and manufacture of fabrics.

- Hampi was a fortified city of Vijayanagar empire. This empire was founded in AD 1336 by Harihara and Bukka. Krishnadeva Raya was the greatest king of the Vijayanagar empire.
- Today Hampi is in ruins, but it had beautiful palaces, temples and market places.
- The Vitthaldeo Temple is dedicated to Vitthal or Lord Vishnu. Its construction was started by King Krishnadeva Raya (AD 1509 – AD 1530). Its pillars are richly carved by sculptures.
- The Ugra Narasimha statue near Virupaksha Temple was made of a single rock.
- Hampi has been designated as a World Heritage Site.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Akbar built Fatehpur Sikri in honour of the Sufi saint:
 

(a) Nizam-ud-din Auliya.	(b) Shihabud-din Suhrawardi.
(c) Shaikh Salim Chisti.	(d) Khwaja Muinud-din-Chisti.
- Under the Mughals there was an Imperial Mint at
 

(a) Lahore.	(b) Surat.	(c) Agra.	(d) Delhi.
-------------	------------	-----------	------------
- Hampi was the capital of the
 

(a) Vijayanagar empire.	(b) Bahamani kingdom.
(c) Golconda kingdom	(d) Bijapur kingdom.
- The greatest king of the Vijayanagar empire was
 

(a) Deva Raya.	(b) Virupaksha.
(c) Krishnadeva Raya.	(d) Rama Raya.

### II. Write true or false.

- One of the reasons for the rise of new cities was the growth of trade and commerce.
- The craftsmen of Delhi were known for their *bidri* work.
- Varanasi and Prayag were believed to be holy places by Hindus.
- The Vitthaldeo Temple was dedicated to Lord Shiva.

### III. Match the columns.

Column A	Column B
1. Coromandal Coast in Andhra Pradesh	(a) Hampi
2. Cash notes	(b) Nicolo Conti
3. <i>Farmans</i>	(c) Hundis
4. Ugra Narasimha	(d) Portuguese traveller
5. Italian traveller	(e) Masulipatnam
6. Domingos Paes	(f) Official orders

#### IV. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. Name any two places which developed as trading centres because of their proximity to seashore in medieval times.
2. Name any two cities having the tombs of the Sufi saints.
3. What is the famous craft or industry for which Surat is known even now?
4. Mention any two factors that promoted trade and commerce in medieval period.
5. The wealth and prosperity of Surat reached its height under the Mughals. Mention any two crafts of Surat in those days.

#### V. Answer the following questions.

1. What are the main sources of history for medieval India?
2. Give a brief account of the greatness of Hampi in the Vijayanagar empire.
3. Trace the history of Masulipatnam as a centre of trade during the medieval period.
4. What was the significance of Surat as a port city of trade and craft in the medieval period?

#### VI. Projects and Activities

1. Have you ever visited any present-day pilgrimage town? If so, write a few sentences describing the places and things that you saw.
2. Get a picture of the Vitthaldeo Temple, Hampi and paste it in your project book. Write the answers of the following questions.
  - (a) Under whose reign did the construction of the temple start?
  - (b) Under whose reign was the construction completed?
  - (c) Mention any two important features of the temple.

#### **HOTS: THINK BEYOND**

Whenever Timur conquered new lands, he would take the artisans of those places to his Capital city Samarkand. Why did he do so?



# 8

## Social Change: Mobile and Settled Communities

### New Words to Remember

**Nomads:** The members of a tribe who move from one place to another to find food.

**Sati:** A former Hindu custom of a widow burning herself on the funeral pyre of her husband. It was abolished long ago.

**Assimilated:** To become a part of a group, community or nation

**Pastoralism:** Caring and rearing of animals like camels, goats and cattle.

**Tribes:** Denote primitive families or communities united by racial bonds and sharing the same customs, religion, language, etc. They depend on agriculture, hunting and forest products for their livelihood.

### SOCIAL CHANGE: THE SETTLED COMMUNITIES

Indian society not only consisted of indigenous people but also large number of people who came from outside. They settled down in India and got assimilated in Indian population. During the medieval period the Turks, the Afghans and the Mughals came from Central Asia. They made India their homeland.

### SOCIAL LIFE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

Due to the influence of the Muslim rulers and their soldiers, many of our people also became Muslims. They adopted their customs and modes of dressing.

**The Hindus:** The Hindus formed the vast majority of the population. Their social structure was knit around the caste system. The Brahmins, the Kshatriyas, the Rajputs and the Vaish community enjoyed a higher status in society. The Rajputs had become very powerful from eleventh century onwards. They were known for their acts of heroism. They took pride in protecting the honour of women. *Sati* was practised by the Rajput women.

The caste system had become very rigid during the medieval age. Many new castes and sub-castes associated with various occupations sprang up, such as weavers, goldsmiths, carpenters, fishermen and potters. There were also the people who were considered social outcasts. The practice of untouchability was the main cause why

so many people from the lower *jatis* or castes changed their religion and became Muslims. Many Muslim rulers treated their Hindu subjects cruelly.

The *purdah* system (wearing a veil) became more common among women during this age. Many Rajput women practised *jauhar* (collective suicide) in order to escape dishonour at the hands of invaders.

**The Muslims:** By and large, the Muslim population was divided into three classes: (a) the nobles called *Khans*, *Maliks* or *Amirs*, (b) the *Ulemas* and *Imams* or the clergy, and (c) the peasants, artisans and the petty traders. The Muslim society also had its own class or caste structure for purposes of marriage and social intimacy. *Burqa* was worn in public by Muslim women.

### TRIBAL SOCIETIES AND THE NOMADS

The term 'tribe' denotes primitive families or communities united by racial bonds. They share the same customs, religion and language and do the same economic activities or jobs. There are hundreds of tribal groups. They are believed to be the earliest settlers in Indian peninsula. They are also called the *adivasis* meaning the original inhabitants. With the growing need of protection, each tribe had its tribal chief. Some of the tribes lived a settled life. Others have been nomads continually moving and having no permanent home.

- (a) Some of the tribes like Birhors and Hill Kharias live by hunting, food gathering and fishing.
- (b) There are some other tribes who practise slash and burn cultivation. A piece of forest land is first cleared and the trees are cut and burnt. The seeds are then sown in ashes, which make the soil fertile. After a year or two when the yield decreases, they move to a new patch of land and clear it. *Juangs* and *Hill Bhuiyans* are some of the tribes who practise this type of cultivation.
- (c) There are many tribes who practise settled agriculture.
- (d) Some tribal groups like *Koyas* practise pastoralism or animal rearing.
- (e) The *Mahalis* and *Kol-Lohari* are artisans engaged in basket-making or work as blacksmiths using primitive techniques.
- (f) Some of them like *Pradhans* of Madhya Pradesh are folk artists.

### THE TRIBAL POPULATION

As per 2001 census the tribals constitute nearly 8.20 per cent of the total population. The north-eastern part of India has the largest concentration of tribal population in the country. The contribution of tribals to the growth of Indian history and culture cannot be underestimated. For example, the *Bhils* of Rajasthan provided shelter to Rana Pratap and his family after the Rana's defeat in the Battle of Haldighati. They strengthened the *Rajputs* by their guerrilla tactics.

## THE NOMADS AND THE MOBILE PEOPLE

The nomads or *banjaras* were dependent on pastoral economy. They kept sheep and cattle. They were continually moving from place to place to find fresh pasture for their cattle. Their caravan of cattle-pulled carts was known as *tanda*. They used to supply wool, *ghee* and other milk products to settled agriculturists. In exchange, they used to get from them grains, cloth and other things of domestic use.

Ala-ud-din Khalji forced the *Banjaras* to employ their cattle for transporting grains to city markets. When the Mughals invaded south India, the foodgrains were supplied to their troops by these nomad traders. That is how the *Banjaras* migrated to Andhra Pradesh and other adjoining areas in southern India. They eventually settled down in Deccan and followed various professions. But many sections among them continued to travel from place to place. They made and sold things such as small iron tools, ropes, mats and baskets.

## DEVELOPMENT OF THE TRIBES

The tribals mainly follow primitive occupations, such as hunting and gathering of forest produce. Many of them practise shifting agriculture or cultivation. Their main problems are illiteracy, poverty and backwardness. The tribals continue to be exploited by moneylenders. Making of liquors is a permissible activity among the tribal families that makes them weak both physically and economically.

Under the Constitution of India certain tribes have been mentioned as Scheduled Tribes (ST). There is reservation of seats in the Lok Sabha and State Assemblies for ST. Some posts in government services are also kept reserved for them. Non-tribals cannot purchase any property in the tribal belt. The tribals are simple and honest people. There is need for closer understanding of their customs and needs.

### Case Study

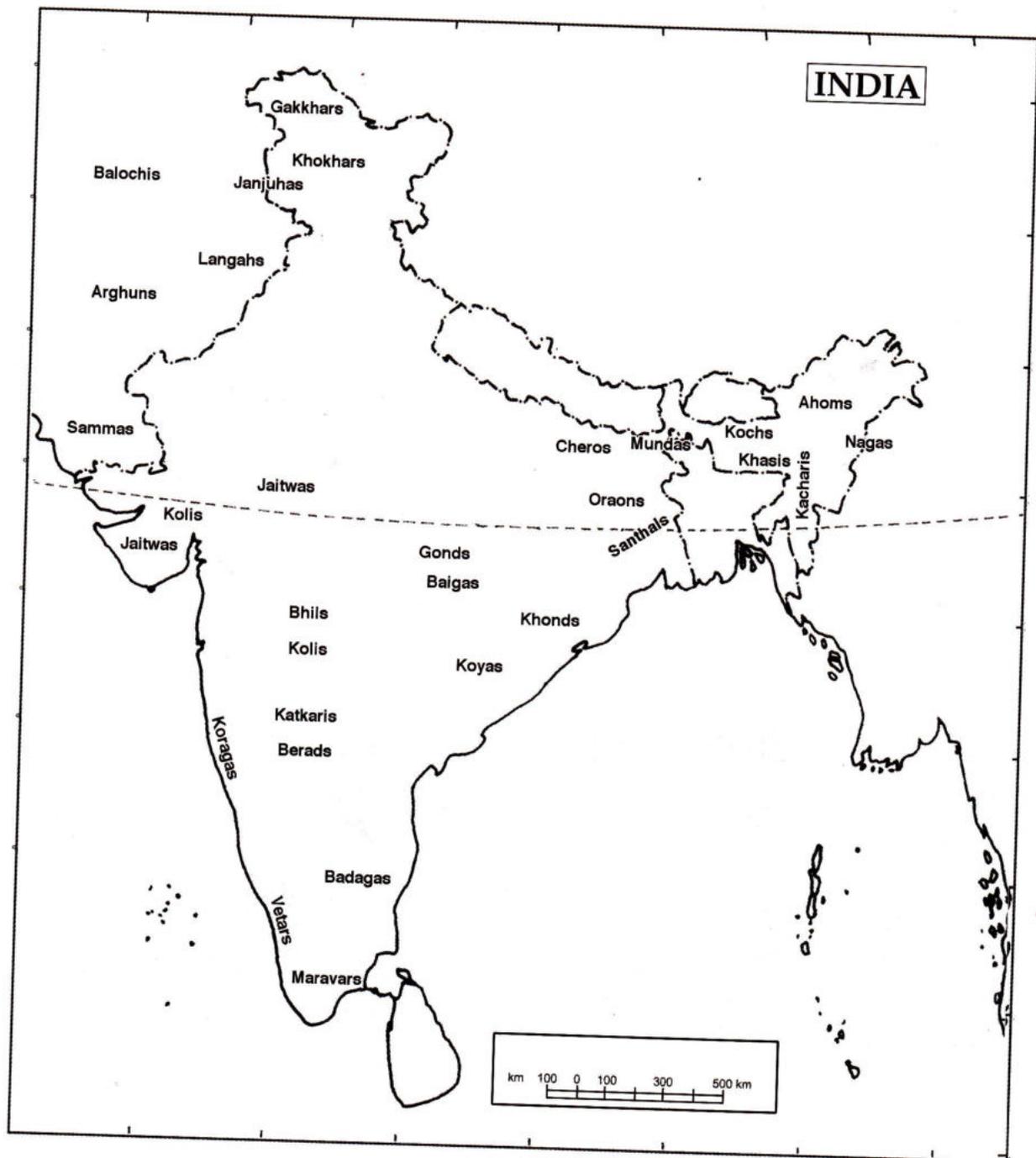


#### Gonds

The *Gonds* or the Gondi people lived in the states of Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh, western Odisha and central India. They were concentrated in the central region which came to be called Gondwana or the Land of Gonds.

The term Gond is derived from a Telugu word *Konda* meaning 'hill'. They speak Gondi dialect, which is related to Telugu and other Dravidian languages. Many of them speak Indo-Aryan languages including Hindi.

A number of Gond kingdoms flourished in Gondwana between fifteenth and eighteenth century. Many Rajput dynasties also ruled over some of the Gond regions between sixth to twelfth century. In the fifteenth century there were at least five powerful Gond kingdoms in Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh. The Gond kings had lot of wealth and resources. They had impressive palaces and forts.



The major tribes of India

The most powerful of the Gond kingdoms was Garh Katanga which consisted of some 70,000 villages. It was governed by Rani Durgavati on behalf of her minor son, Bir Narayan. She was a lady of great valour. The immense wealth of the kingdom attracted Akbar's attention. He sent Asaf Khan, the Governor of Eastern Provinces to conquer the kingdom. She fought bravely but was defeated. She committed suicide in order to save her honour. Her son also died a soldier's death. Asaf Khan held the kingdom for some time but later on it was given to a relative of the old ruling family. The Marathas crushed the power of Gonds in AD 1789 and later the British occupied their territory in AD 1817. After independence many Gond kingdoms were merged with Madhya Pradesh.

### Economy

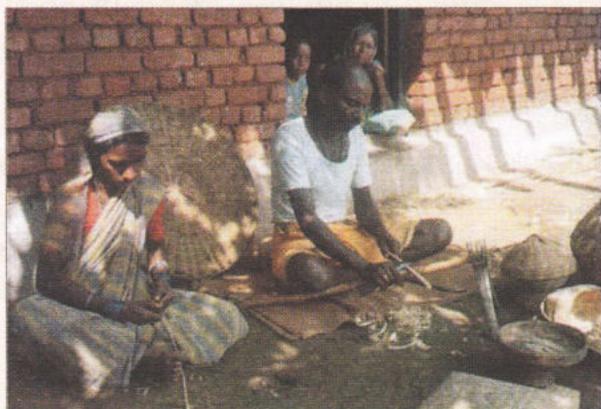
The Gonds were traditionally agriculturists. Some of them practised slash and burn cultivation. Others were settled agriculturists and raised cereals and many other crops. At present also the Gonds depend mainly on agriculture for their livelihood. They have also taken up some semi-skilled jobs.

### Administration of the Gond Kingdoms

In the middle ages the Gond kingdoms were divided into *garhs*. Each *garh* was governed by a particular clan. Each *garh* was divided into smaller units of administration called *chaurasi*. It seems that each *chaurasi* consisted of 84 villages. For an effective management of their own affairs, each *chaurasi* was divided into *barhots*. Each *barhot* was a group of 12 villages which managed its own resources.

### The Gond Society

The Gonds follow their own religion. Each clan has its own deity called *persapan*. In the Bastar region *Baradeo* is an important deity. A form of *Panchayat* is found in the village. The Gonds usually obey customary rules regarding marriage and divorce. Many of the petty crimes are settled by *Panchayats*. The new Panchayati Raj System has not been accepted by the Gonds.



The Gonds

### Case Study



### The Ahoms of Assam

The kingdom of Ahom was situated in the eastern Brahmaputra valley. It included present day territory of Assam and North Bengal. Assam derives its name from the *Ahoms*.

The Ahoms belonged to Mao-Shan tribe of China. They began to migrate to upper Myanmar (Burma) and then gradually entered India. They occupied a portion of the Brahmaputra valley in the thirteenth century after defeating the local chiefs.

### The Kingdom of the Ahoms

The Ahoms established a strong kingdom which lasted for six centuries. The first prominent Ahom ruler was Sukhapha. He probably ruled between AD 1228 and AD 1268. The Ahoms came under Hindu influence and adopted Hindu religion and customs. The Mughals under Shah Jahan tried to expand their empire. They fought against the Ahoms. Peace was achieved by fixing the borders between the Mughal dominion and the Ahom territory. But this peace was shortlived. Taking advantage of the

war of succession between the sons of Shah Jahan in his last days, the Ahoms violated the frontier. They occupied Gauhati and drove away the Mughal officers.

In AD 1662 the Mughals under Mir Jumla, the Governor of Bengal, invaded the Ahom kingdom. The Ahoms were defeated and had to cede Darrang territory to the Mughals. But the Mughal victory was shortlived. The Ahoms recaptured the lost territories. One of their greatest rulers was Rudra Singh who ruled between AD 1696 and AD 1714. He built the city of Rangpur and encouraged trade relations with Tibet.

By nineteenth century, the Ahoms had become weak. Their administration was ineffective. Soon Burmese overran their territories. The British got Assam by the Treaty of Yandaboo signed with the Burmese rulers in AD 1826.

### The Administration of the Ahom Kingdom

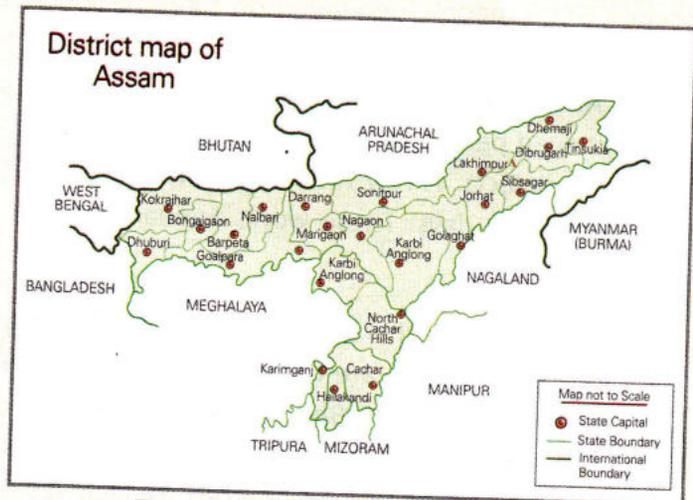
The Ahom kingdom was a strong centralised state. The rulers at the Centre gave out instructions to all the other regional authorities.

The Ahom rulers believed in a system of forced labour. During war times all adult males were officially required to join the army. When the kingdom had peace, the menfolk were forced to engage themselves in projects such as building dams across the rivers in order to make lakes behind them. In this way they could always have water to irrigate their fields. Other public works included building of roads, fortress, etc. Under this system of forced labour each village was required to send a number of persons called *paiks* by rotation for building dams that were built by the state.

### The Ahom Society

The Ahoms originally worshipped a number of tribal deities. But during the seventeenth century they were Hinduised and adopted Hindu religion and customs. Under the influence of Hinduism the Ahom rulers made gifts of money and land to the Brahmins and the Hindu temples.

Like other tribal societies, the Ahoms were also divided into various clans. They usually married in their own clan. They depended mainly on agriculture for their livelihood. No peasant could be deprived of his land without the approval of the village community or the village



The regions inhabited by the Ahoms

council. Some people depended on forest products and cattle rearing. There were not many artisans among them for whom they depended on the neighbouring kingdoms.

The Ahom society showed interest in culture, literature, plays and theatre shows. The rulers and moneyed people patronised poets and scholars. They got many Sanskrit works translated into local dialects. A few historical works called *buranjis* describe the real life or things that existed in those days. These works appeared in the Assamese language.

### The Bhils

The *Bhils* constitute the second largest tribal group in the country. They are also called the '*Bhil Garasia*'. The *Bhils* are concentrated mainly in a few districts of Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Rajasthan. The word *Bhil* seems to have been derived from a Tamil word *Bil* meaning 'a bow'. It is a very ancient tribe. We find references to it both in the *Mahabharata* and the *Ramayana*. We have already referred to their historic role in the history of Rajasthan. They provided military assistance to Rana Pratap in his struggle against the Mughals.

Early in AD 1818 when Khandesh came under the British, the *Bhils* revolted against the British rulers. But they were suppressed. The main source of livelihood of the *Bhils* is agriculture. They also depended on forest products and hunting. They celebrate *Holi* with great enthusiasm. Superstitions, magic and old beliefs form an integral part of their religion and culture.

## Summary of the Lesson

- Social life in the middle ages. The caste system was very dominant both in north and south India. In the middle ages it had become quite rigid.
- *Sati*, child marriage and polygamy were prevalent in India. The Muslim society also had its own caste or class structure.
- There are hundreds of tribal groups in India. Some of the tribes live a settled life. Others have been nomads continuously moving and having no permanent home.
- Their main problems are poverty, backwardness, illiteracy and seclusion. The government took many steps to promote the welfare of the tribals. There exists reservation for them in the Union and State legislatures and also in government services.
- The Gonds lived in Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh and central India. The central region came to be called Gondwana. A number of Gond kingdoms flourished in Gondwana between fifteenth and eighteenth century.
- The most powerful of the Gond kingdoms was Garh Katanga. Akbar conquered this kingdom.
- The Gonds were traditionally agriculturists. Each Gond clan has its own deity.
- Assam derives its name from the Ahoms. They belonged to Mao-Shan tribe of China. They overran Myanmar (Burma) and occupied Kamarupa region. Sukhapha was the first prominent Ahom ruler. The Mughals tried to establish control over Kamarupa or Assam but they failed. At last the Burmese overran their territory but later lost it to the British.

- The Ahom kingdom was a strong centralised state. The Ahom rulers believed in a system of forced labour. During war all adult males had to join the army. In the seventeenth century the Ahoms were Hinduised. The Ahom rulers patronised poets and scholars.
- The Bhils constitute the second largest tribal group in the country. It is a very ancient tribe.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- The caste system in India had become very rigid during
  - ancient times.
  - medieval age.
  - British rule.
  - modern times.
- During the Mughal rule the *Bhils* of Rajasthan provided shelter and assistance to
  - Rana Pratap.
  - Sheikh Gurus.
  - Shivaji.
  - Sambhaji.
- The Gond kingdom Garh Katanga consisted of:
  - fifty thousand villages.
  - sixty thousand villages.
  - seventy thousand villages.
  - eighty thousand villages.
- Each Gond clan has its own deity called
  - Era.
  - Surya.
  - Baradeo*.
  - Persapan.

### II. Write true or false.

- The Rajputs took pride in protecting the honour of women.
- The Muslim society did not have a class or caste structure.
- The tribal communities shared the same customs, religion and language.
- Each *chaurasi* in Gond kingdom consisted of 100 villages.
- The Ahom society showed no interest in culture and literature.

### III. Match the columns.

#### Column A

- Nomads
- Rani Durgavati
- Forced labour
- Konda
- Bhils*

#### Column B

- Ramayana and Mahabharata
- Ahom kingdom
- Telugu word meaning 'hill'
- Gond kingdom Garh Katanga
- Banjaras*

### IV. Give short answers to the following questions.

- What goods did the nomads (*Banjaras*) supply to the settled agriculturists?
- What goods did the nomads get in exchange for the goods supplied by them?

3. Mention any two measures that have been taken under the Constitution of India for the betterment of the Scheduled Tribes.
4. Has the new Panchayati Raj System been accepted by the Gonds?
5. What changes took place in religious practices of the Ahoms in the seventeenth century?

**V. Answer the following questions.**

1. What do you know about the administration of the Gond kingdoms in the middle ages?
2. How can you say that the Ahom society showed interest in culture and literature?
3. What do you know about the life of the nomadic tribal groups?
4. Describe the life and culture of the Bhil community.
5. List some tribal groups of this period. What occupations were they engaged in?

**VI. Projects and Activities**

1. Plan a Project regarding the main differences between the Ahoms and the Gonds with the help of clues given below.
  - (a) Centralised state versus smaller units of administration
  - (b) System of forced labour versus no such system
  - (c) Interest in culture and literature versus no evidence of the same
2. Suppose you are from a tribal community where even now the practice of untouchability is being followed. Write a letter to a national newspaper describing the plight of the tribal people and requesting the government to take strong action in wiping out this system.
3. Organise a group discussion on the problems faced by the tribals. Make a few suggestions about how we could improve their living conditions.

**VALUE-BASED QUESTION**

Rani Durgavati had been a tower of strength to the Gonds. What similarities do you find between Rani Durgavati and Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi? What inspirations could women of India derive from them?

**HOTS: THINK BEYOND**

Can the *paik* (forced labour) system of the Ahoms be relevant for the present-day society?

# 9

## Popular Beliefs and Religion

### New Words to Remember

**Transition:** The process of change from one condition to another.

**Orthodox:** In line with tradition or religion

**Silsila:** Chronological order of Sufi disciples; classification of Sufi saints into certain groups

**Dohas:** Couplets

**Adi Granth:** The Holy Book of the Sikhs

**Bhakti Saints:** The Hindu saints who popularised personal devotion to God. They condemned caste-system, idolatory, etc.

**Sufi Saints:** The mystic Muslim saints or holy persons who came to India from Persia (Iran).

**Urs:** The death anniversaries of the Sufi saints

The medieval period witnessed the transition of tribal societies into well-organised systems of administration. Pastoral nomads were also being transformed into civilized societies. Moreover, this period saw a closer contact between the Hindus and the Muslims. The spirit of tolerance gave rise to the two great religious movements — *Sufisms* among the Muslims and the *Bhakti Movement* among the Hindus.

### ISLAM

The word Islam means surrender or submission to the Will of God. It believes that there is one God, *Allah*.

This new religion was revealed to Muhammed, the Prophet of God. Islam was introduced in India by the Arabs. In the beginning of the eighth century the Arabs, under Muhammad-bin Qasim, conquered the Indian territories of Sind and Multan. The Turkish invasion in AD 1000 changed the whole situation. The Turks brought with them Islamic faith, Persian culture, and the Persian and Greek architectural styles.

### TEACHINGS OF ISLAM

- (i) There is but one God who is all powerful and all merciful. Muhammed is His Prophet.

- (ii) The followers of Islam should pray five times a day. The prayer is also called *Namaz*.
- (iii) Charity and alms-giving or *Zaqaat*
- (iv) Fast during the month of *Ramzan* or *Rozas*
- (v) Pilgrimage to Mecca or *Haj*

Muslims are also required to abide by *Shariat* — the Holy Laws of Islam.

### **IMPACT OF ISLAM**

During their raids on India the Turks faced strong resistance from the local rulers and the local people. They raided and looted the rich temple cities. The Delhi Sultanate consolidated the Muslim power in India. There were many restrictions on marriage and dining between the Hindus and the Muslims. But they freely mixed and talked with each other. Most women were too busy with their domestic duties, but those belonging to the upper class cultivated fine arts. The *pardah* system and the institution of child marriage developed among the Hindus.

The intermingling of Persian and Arabic words with Hindi led to the evolution of a new language called Urdu. We will discuss about the rise of Sufism and the Bhakti Movement during this period.

### **THE SUFI MOVEMENT**

The Sufis were the Muslim saints and mystics. They originally lived in Persia. The word 'Sufi' comes from the Persian word *Suf* meaning wool. The Sufi saints in Persia wore shawls which were made of coarse wool. They were influenced by various religious thoughts including Christianity, Hinduism and Buddhism. They were organised into twelve Orders or *Silsilas*, out of which two became very popular in India.

### **THE CHISTI ORDER**

The most famous of the Sufi saints in India was Hazrat Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti who founded the Chisti order. He came to India in AD 1192 and settled at Ajmer which became the centre of his activities. After his death, his followers started celebrating an *Urs* festival every year at Ajmer. His tomb at Ajmer is visited by thousands of people from India and abroad every year. Other Sufi saints of this *Silsila* or Order were (a) Nizamuddin Auliya whose tomb (*dargah*) is at Delhi, (b) Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki whose tomb is near Qutab Minar in Delhi, (c) Sheikh Salim Chisti of Sikri, and (d) Baba Farid of Multan.

### **SUHRAWARDI ORDER**

Sheikh Zakariya of Multan was the disciple of a famous mystic Shihabuddin Suhrawardi. He founded another order or *Silsila* of Sufi saints called the Suhrawardi

order. They were employed by the Muslim rulers and led lives of comfort. They did not believe in living in poverty.

### PRINCIPLES AND TEACHINGS OF SUFISM

1. God is one and all people are his children.
2. One can reach God through love and devotion and not through rituals.
3. Devotional music is an important way to reaching God.
4. Inner purity and self-discipline are the means of gaining knowledge about God.
5. The Sufis called their guru *pir*. One should follow the teachings of a *pir*.
6. The Sufis believed in equality of all human beings and in the universal brotherhood of man.



Nizamuddin Aulia's tomb

### RELIGIOUS POLICY OF AKBAR AND DIN-I-ILAHI

Akbar was tolerant of all religious faiths. He, therefore, enjoyed the loyalty and affection of all sections of society. Akbar abolished *jaziya* tax.

Akbar's policy of *Sulh-i-kul* meant universal peace. He introduced *Din-i-Ilahi* in AD 1582. It contained the good principles of all religions. Akbar's objective was the establishment of cultural and political unity in the empire. But the number of persons who accepted *Din-i-Ilahi* was small.



Gold coins of Akbar

It is interesting to note that one of the gold coins of Akbar shows Rama with a bow followed by Sita. Above the figure is written 'Ram-Siya' in Devanagari script.

### THE BHAKTI MOVEMENT

The word *Bhakti* means 'devotion to God'. The *Bhakti* Movement originated in the ninth century in south India when the great saint Shankaracharya brought about a revival in Hinduism. The *Bhakti* Movement in south India was led by Ramanujacharya and Madhavacharya. Some of the prominent *Bhakti* saints were Ramananda, Kabir, Guru Nanak, Sant Tukaram, Sant Ravidas, Chaitanya Mahaprabhu and Meerabai.

## IMPORTANT FEATURES AND PRINCIPLES OF THE BHAKTI MOVEMENT

1. They preached that God is one.
2. One can attain salvation through *Bhakti* or devotion to God.
3. All men are equal before God. Dignity of man depends on his actions and not on his caste.
4. Religious rites, rituals and ceremonies are useless. One can reach God only through absolute surrender to Him.
5. We need a guru to lead us.

## BHAKTI MOVEMENT IN SOUTH INDIA: ALVARS AND NAYANARS

Shankaracharya laid emphasis on the philosophy of the *Upanishads* and the *Advaita* system. It means that the Ultimate Reality is God (Brahma) who is impersonal or formless. The world around us is *maya* or an illusion. *Moksha* or liberation could be had only through knowledge of the ultimate reality.

Shankaracharya later realised that Advaita philosophy could not satisfy the spiritual needs of the common people. He then laid stress on *bhakti*. In fact, the idea of bhakti had already been popularised in the South by the Vaishnava and the Shaiva saints. He composed devotional hymns in praise of Vishnu and Shiva lords and the goddess Shakti.



Shankaracharya

**Alvars and Nayanars:** The Vaishnava saints Alvars flourished during the seventh and eighth century. They were all wandering singers who were mad after God.

The Shaiva saints were called Nayanars. They also belonged to the seventh and eighth century. The most important of them are Appar, Sundaramurti and Manikkavasagar. Their images can be seen in many Shiva temples in southern India.

**Shri Ramanuja:** Shri Ramanuja was born in the year AD 1027 at Sriperumbudur. He became an ascetic and grew very popular. Later, he settled down at Srirangam. He toured the whole of south India and converted many people to Vaishnavism. He believed that the path of *Bhakti* (devotion to God) is open to all, high and low ones.

**Shri Madhavacharya:** Shri Madhavacharya was born in AD 1199 in a village near Udipi in Karnataka. He became an ascetic and spent several years in prayer and meditation. He founded a temple of Lord Krishna at Udipi. He believed in salvation through God's grace.

## VIR SHAIVA SECT OF BASAVA

In Karnataka Basavanna (or Basava) became an advocate of Vir Shaivism. He was a minister of a Jaina king who ruled in the mid-twelfth century. The important features of the Vir Shaiva sect were: (a) equality of all human beings, (b) rejection of the caste system, and (c) an eagerness to reform society, especially the liberation of women from the rigid restrictions. Basava arranged a marriage between the daughter of a Brahmin and the son of a so-called untouchable in that age. He was both a *Bhakt* and a reformer.

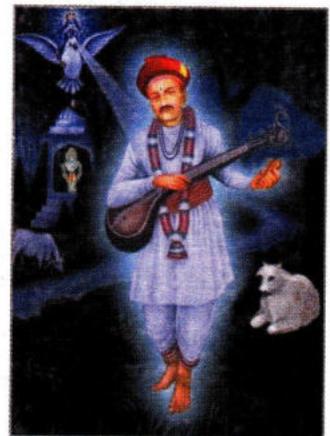
## BHAKTI MOVEMENT IN MAHARASHTRA

A religious reformation took place in Maharashtra in the thirteenth century under the Maratha saints. Sant Dhyaneswar (Janeshwar) was born in AD 1275 in a Brahmin family. His religious poems are called *Abhangas*. He condemned the caste system. His patron god was *Vithoba* who is regarded as the incarnation of Lord Vishnu.

The Bhakti tradition continued to grow in Maharashtra. One of the most prominent saints of Maharashtra in the seventeenth century was Tukaram. He was born in AD 1608. He was a devotee of Lord Vithoba. Namdev and Eknath were other great saints of Maharashtra.



Sant Dhyaneswar



Sant Namdev

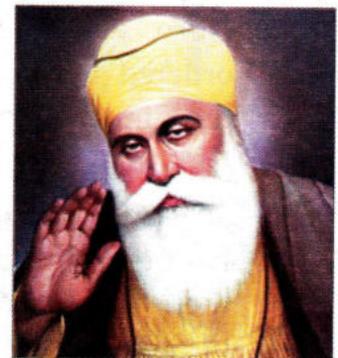
## BHAKTI MOVEMENT IN NORTH INDIA

The medieval period saw the growth of the Bhakti Movement also in north India.

## BHAKTI MOVEMENT IN PUNJAB

### *Guru Nanak Dev*

Guru Nanak was a great Bhakti reformer of the medieval period. Guru Nanak was born in AD 1469 at Talwandi, near Lahore, now in Pakistan. He lived at Kartarpur, now called Dera Baba Nanak. Having been attracted to Sufism, he went on a long pilgrimage to Hindu and Muslim centres of worship. He then returned to Punjab and started preaching his doctrines. He worshipped God as *Nirakar*, i.e. without any physical form. His main teachings are as follows:



Guru Nanak

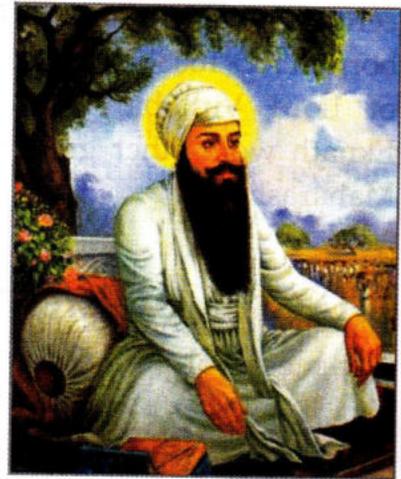
1. The ultimate aim in life should be to reach God. Only good actions could lead individuals to reach God.
2. He advised people to recite the word *satnam* or the 'true name'.
3. He opposed caste distinctions. He also disapproved of idol worship.
4. He taught religious tolerance and believed in the equality of all religions.
5. True knowledge could be attained only under the guidance of a guru.

Guru Nanak composed *Japji* or the holy prayer. His followers came to be known as Sikhs. The word Sikh comes from the Sanskrit word *shisya* which means disciple.

### **The Later Sikh Gurus**

1. Before Guru Nanak left this world in AD 1539, he nominated Bhai Lehna as his successor. Guru Nanak called him 'Angad'—the flesh of his own flesh. Therefore, he came to be known as Guru Angad (AD 1539 – AD 1552). He compiled Guru Nanak's hymns. He also introduced a new script called gurmukhi. He started the *langar* system (community dining).
2. Guru Angad nominated Amardas (AD 1552 – AD 1574) as his successor. Sikhism made rapid progress under the leadership of Guru Amardas.
3. Guru Ramdas (AD 1574 – AD 1581) was the fourth Sikh Guru. He made Guru-Gaddi hereditary. He founded the holy city of Amritsar in AD 1575.

4. Guru Arjan Dev (AD 1581 – AD 1606), the fifth Guru, was a remarkable organiser. He completed the construction of Amritsar and erected the Harmandir Sahib (the Golden Temple) which became the seat of the Guru. He compiled the *Adi Granth* which contains the hymns of Guru Nanak, Guru Angad, Guru Amardas, Guru Ramdas and many of his own hymns.



Guru Arjan Dev

During the reign of Emperor Jahangir, his son rebelled against the father. Guru Arjan Dev gave help to the prince. This offended the Emperor. Guru Arjan Dev was tortured. The Emperor ordered the execution of the Guru, who became a martyr. This cruel act of the Emperor converted the peace-loving Sikhs into a fighting community.

5. Guru Har Gobind Singh (AD 1606 – AD 1644) became the next Guru. He constructed *Akal Takht* (eternal throne) opposite the Golden Temple at Amritsar. He organised a well-equipped army and encouraged his followers to protect their honour and their community. The Sikhs were persecuted during the reign of Shah Jahan too.

6. Guru Har Rai (AD 1644 – AD 1661), grandson of Guru Har Gobind, became the seventh Guru at the age of fourteen. Under his guidance and leadership Sikhism expanded its organisational work.
7. Guru Har Kishan (AD 1661 – AD 1664) became the guru at the tender age of five. Unfortunately he left this world in AD 1664.
8. Guru Tegh Bahadur, the fifth son of Guru Har Gobind, became the ninth Guru in AD 1664. From the very beginning the guru had to face the enmity of the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb. On his refusal to embrace Islam, the Guru was beheaded at Chandni Chowk in Delhi. The place of his martyrdom became a pilgrimage centre where the Sikhs constructed Gurudwara Sisganj.
9. Guru Gobind Singh (AD 1675 – AD 1708) became the tenth Guru. He took a vow to save the honour of the Sikhs. He fought against the cruelty of the Mughals. On *Baisakhi* day in AD 1699 the Guru laid the foundation of the *Khalsa Panth*. He asked his followers to observe the 5Ks: *kesh* (long hair), *kangha* (comb), *kada* (bracelet), *kirpan* (sword) and *kachha* (shorts).

Aurangzeb tried to crush the rising power of the Sikhs. The Guru's last encounter with the Mughal forces was at Muktsar. The Guru retired for some time to the village of Talwandi Sabo in Punjab. The Guru announced the end of personal guruship. Thereafter, *Guru Granth Sahib* became the ultimate guru and guide of the Sikhs.

Guru Gobind Singh was not only a great military genius, he was also a great scholar. The guru's compositions were compiled in one volume called *Dasham Granth* (the tenth book).

### RAMANANDA AND CHAITANYA MAHAPRABHU

Ramananda, Kabir and Chaitanya Mahaprabhu were also among the greatest saints of the Bhakti Movement.

**Ramananda:** Ramananda was born in AD 1370 and was a disciple of Ramanuja. A worshipper of Rama, he challenged caste distinctions and began preaching in Hindi. Of his 12 principal disciples one was a Muslim weaver (Kabir), another a cobbler (Ravidas) and the third a barber (Saindas).

**Chaitanya Mahaprabhu:** Chaitanya Mahaprabhu (AD 1485 – AD 1533), born in Bengal, was a renowned Bhakti saint and reformer. He popularised the Krishna cult, i.e. the worship of Lord Krishna. He accepted disciples from all castes. He believed that through love, songs and dance one can experience the presence of God.



Chaitanya Mahaprabhu

## MIRABAI (AD 1547 – AD 1614)

Mirabai was a Rajput princess married into the royal family of Mewar (Udaipur). She was a devotee of Lord Krishna. She continued to devote her whole time to the Lord's worship even after her marriage. Thus, the marriage broke up. She wandered from place to place singing her beautiful songs. One of her hymns goes thus: "People say Mira has gone mad. I have myself become the eternal maid-servant of my *Narayana*." Mira reached Dwarka where she composed many songs in Gujarati. Next to Narsi Mehta she made the greatest contribution to the devotional literature in Gujarati. She had **Ravidas** as her guru. Her message was: "neither birth, nor rank is the means to experience God's presence. There is but one means — love or bhakti."



Mirabai

## NATHPANTHIS AND YOGIS

Nathpanthis were the saints whose emphasis was on *yoga* and inner calm. Gorakhnath is regarded as the founder of the Natha sect. His followers came to be known as Nathpanthis. They flourished during the tenth and eleventh century. They challenged the authority of the priestly class and, therefore, they were very popular among the low caste-groups. Gorakh's religious poems appeared under the title *Gorakh Bani*, i.e. Gorakh's Voice.

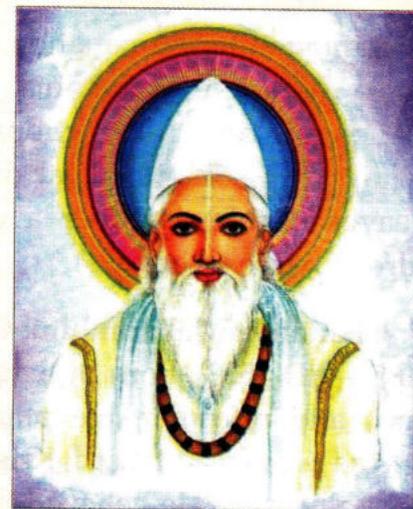
### Case Study

#### Kabir

Kabir is believed to be the child of a Brahmin widow. He was born in AD 1398. He was brought up by Neeru, a Muslim weaver. He adopted his father's profession. He was the disciple of the famous saint Ramanand.

Some of Kabir's teachings are as follows:

1. He emphasised the equality of all religions. He said, "the Hindus and the Muslims are like pots made out of the same clay."
2. He denounced idol worship and believed in a formless (*nirakar*) God. He said, "If by worshipping stone, one can reach God, I am ready to worship a mountain."
3. He did not believe in meaningless rituals, such as pilgrimages to holy places.



Sant Kabir

4. He condemned caste distinctions and the supremacy of the priestly class, i.e. the *Maulvi* and the *Pandits*.
5. Devotion to God was regarded as an effective means of salvation.
6. One must have a pure heart, free from dishonesty, insincerity and hypocrisy to reach God.

Kabir's teachings are recorded in *Bijak* (the seed book). He is regarded as a great mystic saint and his *dohas* are recited by his followers till today. His followers are called *Kabirpanthis*. The Sikhs have a feeling of great respect and admiration for Kabir. Many of his *dohas* have been included in the *Adigranth* of the Sikhs.

### **Bauls from Bengal**

*Bauls* are a group of mystic mistrels from Bengal. *Bauls* constitute both a religious sect and a musical tradition. They have considerably influenced the culture of Bengal.

The term '*Baul*' first appeared in Bangla text, as early as fifteenth century. *Baul* thoughts are a broad mix of Sufism, Islam, Vaishnavism, Buddhism and Tantric cult. They practise celestial love. Some of the songs of Rabindranath Tagore are greatly influenced by the *Baul* theme.

In 2005 *Baul* tradition was included in the Master Pieces of Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO.

## **CONTRIBUTION OF THE BHAKTI SAINTS**

1. The Bhakti Movement tried to reform Hinduism. It also brought peace and goodwill between the Hindus and the Muslims.
2. The Bhakti saints offered a simple religion which required only devotion to God. This religion was free from rituals and superstitions.
3. The Bhakti saints gave a new dignity to the people of the so-called lower castes. Thus, the Bhakti movement brought about change and reform in society.
4. The Bhakti saints preached in people's mother tongue. Therefore, a lot of devotional literature developed in various regional languages such as Hindi, Marathi, Punjabi, Bangla and Gujarati.

## Summary of the Lesson

- Islamic faith was brought to India by the Arabs. According to Prophet Muhammed, "There is but one God." The followers of Islam believe in *Namaz*, *Rozas* and pilgrimage to Mecca.
- Sufi saints came to India from Persia. The most famous of the Sufi saints in India was Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti who founded the Chisti Order (*Silsila*). Another Order or *Silsila* of the Sufi saints was called the Suhrawardi Order.
- The Bhakti saints of south India were Alvars and Nayanars. Bhakti spread to other parts of India. Some of the Bhakti saints were Ramanuja, Madhavacharya, Sant Dhyaneswar, Namdev, Ekanath, Tukaram, Guru Nanak, Chaitanya Mahaprabhu, Mirabai and Kabir.
- Guru Nanak was a great Bhakti reformer. There were 10 Sikh gurus. Guru Gobind Singh founded the Khalsa Panth. He announced the end of personal guruship. Guru Granth Sahib was to be their guru.
- Kabir was the disciple of the famous saint Ramananda. He emphasised the equality of all religions. He believed in a formless (*nirakar*) God. He condemned the caste distinctions. His teachings are contained in *Bijak* (the seed book).

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Islam was introduced in India by the  
(a) Mughals.            (b) Arabs.            (c) Persians.            (d) Mongols.
2. Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti's tomb is at  
(a) Ajmer.            (b) Delhi.            (c) Agra.            (d) Lucknow.
3. In Karnataka, Basavanna (or Basava) became an advocate of  
(a) Krishna cult.            (b) Jain faith.  
(c) Vir Shaivism.            (d) Vaishnava or Vishnu cult.
4. A great saint of the Bhakti tradition in Maharashtra was  
(a) Shri Ramanujacharya.            (b) Sant Dhyaneswar.  
(c) Chaitanya Mahaprabhu.            (d) Sant Ramananda.
5. Sant Kabir by profession was  
(a) a potter            (b) a goldsmith.            (c) a weaver.            (d) a carpenter.

### II. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Sufi saints
2. Nayanars
3. Guru Nanak
4. Guru Gobind Singh
5. Mirabai

#### Column B

- (a) Talwandi
- (b) Devotee of Lord Krishna
- (c) Khalsa Panth
- (d) Chisti Order and Suhrawardi Order
- (e) Worship of Lord Shiva

### III. Give short answers for the following questions.

1. Mention the two main teachings of Islam.
2. Mention the two main teachings of the Sufis.
3. Name the Sikh Guru
  - (a) who founded the holy city of Amritsar.
  - (b) who compiled the *Adi Granth*.
4. Who popularised the Krishna cult in Bengal?
5. Who was Mirabai? Whom did she accept as her guru?
6. Mention the two main teachings of Guru Nanak.

### IV. Answer the following questions.

1. Mention four major teachings of Kabir.
2. What was the contribution of the Bhakti saints to the Indian society?
3. Give a brief account of the life and teachings of Guru Nanak.
4. The impact of Bhakti and Sufi movements is best visible during Akbar's reign. Explain.

### V. Projects and Activities

1. Visit any *dargah* or a famous Gurudwara or any other place of worship. Write a few sentences describing what you saw there and how you felt.
2. Draw or paste pictures of any two Bhakti saints in your project file. Also mention some of their main teachings.
3. Hold a general discussion in class on how the teachings of the Bhakti saints could promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst people of India.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

*Pothi Padhi Padhi Jag Mua, Pandit Bhayo Na Koye,  
Dhai Aakhar Prem Ka, Padhe so Pandit Hoye.*

This is Kabir's one of the best known couplets. Find out what it means. How relevant is it even today?

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

How is Akbar's religious policy and his Din-i-Ilahi relevant today?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 7–9)

### I. Project Work

Divide the class into three groups. Each group has to present a project report on one of the topics mentioned below.

- (a) Bhakti Movement
- (b) Sufi Movement
- (c) Din-i-Ilahi

### II. Map Work

On an outline Map of India, mark different Centres of Pilgrimages of different religious communities (especially those of Hindus, Muslims and Sikhs) established during the Medieval period.

### III. Picture Study

Masulipatnam has been famous for its Kalamkari fabrics.

- (a) Describe this Kalamkari art on fabrics.
- (b) Why was this place the centre of trade rivalry between the Dutch, the British and the French?
- (c) In which State is it located at present?



### IV. Recitation

Kabir's *dohas* or couplets are found in spoken Hindi. Learn some of these couplets and recite them in class.

Some of them are given below.

- (a) *Kaal kare so aaj kar, aaj kare so ab;*  
*Pal mein pralay hoyega, bahuri karoge kab.*
- (b) *Jaise til mein tel hai, jyon chakmak mein aag,*  
*Tera sayeen tujh mei hai, tu jaag sake to jaag.*



# 10

## Flowering of Regional Cultures

### New Words to Remember

**Gharanas:** Styles of music/dance peculiar to a particular school

**Murals:** Wall paintings

**Raga system:** System of melodies

**Charyapada:** Verses written by mystic saints or Siddhacharyas associated with the Mahayana form of Buddhism in Bengal.

**Regional languages:** Languages spoken in a particular region or state

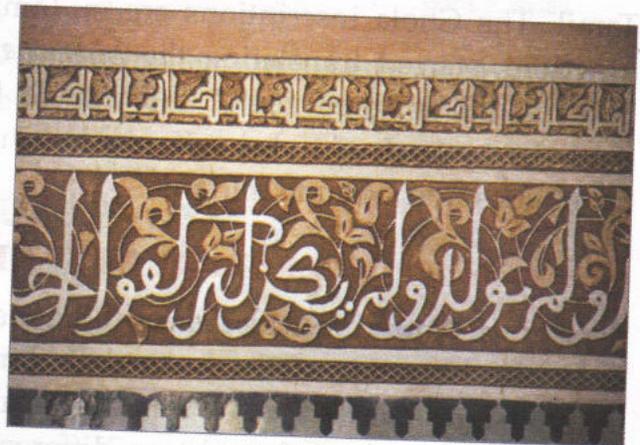
**Folk music:** Music which represents the culture and feelings of the ordinary people.

### LITERATURE

During the medieval period, there was much flowering of regional cultures. Sanskrit had established its unchallenged authority in the literature of the ancient period. It continued its hold in the medieval period. At the same time, there was much growth of the regional languages such as Hindi, Marathi, Bangla, Oriya and Gujarati. In south India, Tamil thrived. Kannada, Telugu and Malayalam languages also witnessed much growth and came to have a rich literature.

With the coming of Turko-Afghans, two new languages developed in India — the Arabic and Persian. Though Arabic was the religious language of the Muslims, Persian was adopted as the court language. Soon Persian came to have a rich literature, both original and translated.

The Bhakti Movement gave great impetus to the development of Hindi. Its two dialects—Braj and Awadhi—began to be patronised by the Mughal emperors and the Hindu rulers. Due to the writings of the Sikh Gurus, Punjabi got a new life.



Arabic Script

One of the most important developments during the medieval period was the emergence of a new language called Urdu. The word Urdu means 'camp'. It grew due to the interaction between the Hindu and the Muslim soldiers in the 'army camp'. Much of its vocabulary has been drawn from Persian and Arabic words. The Persian script is used for writing Urdu. This new language came to have a very rich literature due to the patronage of the Mughal emperors. The Bahamani Sultans in Deccan also patronised it.

### **LITERATURE UNDER THE RAJPUT RULERS (AD 700 - AD 1200)**

Some of the great scholars and poets of the period are as follows:

**Jaideva:** Jaideva was a distinguished poet. In his *Gita Govinda* he described the divine love of Radha and Krishna.

**Bhavabhuti:** Bhavabhuti was a famous poet ranked next to Kalidasa. He wrote *Uttar Ramacharita*.

**Kalhana:** Kalhana wrote the famous historical work *Rajatarangini* describing the history of Kashmir up to AD 1140.

**Chandbardai:** Chandbardai wrote *Prithvi Raj Raso*. It described the achievements of the Chauhan ruler of Delhi and Ajmer.

**Bilhana:** Bilhana wrote *Vikramdeva Charita*, a biography of the Chalukya ruler Vikramaditya VI.

### **DEVELOPMENT OF LITERATURE IN SOUTH INDIA (AD 700-AD 1200)**

Under the Chola rulers, much literature was created in the Dravidian languages like Tamil, Telugu and Kannada. Kamban translated the Sanskrit epic *Ramayana* into Tamil. The Chola inscriptions are in Tamil and Sanskrit. Nannaya, of the Chalukya kingdom, started translating the *Mahabharata* into Telugu and it was completed by Tikkanna. The 'three gems' of Kannada literature were Pampa, Ponna and Ranna. Amoghavarsha I was also a Kannada scholar who wrote *Kavirajamarga*. It is a work on politics and administration.

### **GROWTH OF LITERATURE BETWEEN AD 1200 AND AD 1526**

Persian was introduced as the court language by the Turks in India. Sanskrit continued to be the language of the learned Brahmins. Many Sanskrit works were translated into Persian. Amir Khusrau was the greatest Persian writer of this time. He was the author of a number of works on different subjects. He wrote mainly in Persian, but he also contributed to the growth of Urdu and Hindi literature. His style of writing was called *Hindawi*. Zia-ud-din Barani wrote *Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi*.

## LITERATURE IN HINDI AND OTHER REGIONAL LANGUAGES

Jagnayaka was a great poet who wrote *Alhakhanda*, describing the deeds of two brave warriors of Mahoba. Malik Muhammad Jayasi wrote *Padmavat*.

The *Bhakti* reformers and saints enriched Hindi and other regional languages. Gorakhnath composed *bhajans* in Hindi. The compositions of Kabir and Mirabai became famous and popular. Narsi Mehta's compositions are in Gujarati. The teachings of Chaitanya are contained in *Chaitanya Charitamrita*.



Malik Muhammad Jayasi



Padmavat epic poem written in AD 1540 in Awadhi language

## LITERATURE UNDER THE MUGHALS

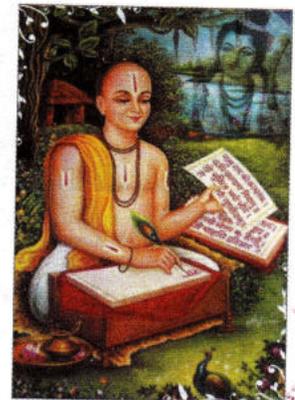
The Mughals patronised the Persian scholars. Abul Fazl was the court historian of Akbar. He was the author of *Akbarnama*, of which *Ain-i-Akbari* is a part.

**Hindi literature:** Tulsidas wrote *Ramcharitamanas*, singing the noble deeds of Lord Rama. It is a masterpiece of Hindi literature. *Sursagar* contains the compositions of Surdas. Abdur Rahim's *Khan-i-Khana* was a famous Hindi poet to receive Akbar's patronage. His *dohas* are read with much interest.



Mirza Ghalib

**Urdu Literature:** The Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah patronised Urdu. Delhi and Lucknow became the centres of Urdu literary activity. A number of poets, such as Mirza Ghalib and Iqbal contributed a great deal to the development of Urdu literature. Urdu received great encouragement from the Nizam (the ruler) of Hyderabad.



Sant Tulsidas

## HOW TEXTS IN REGIONAL LANGUAGES ARE OF HELP IN RECONSTRUCTING HISTORY?

Literature is the mirror that reflects the society, polity and economic life of the people of the period in which it is written. For example, the *Charyapadas* of Bengal provide a realistic picture of the Bengali society. They speak about the economic life of people, the musical instruments used by them, their social customs such as dowry and the manner in which the girls adorned themselves.

Sometimes even religious literature may contain information about the rulers, the political conditions then prevailing and the day-to-day life of the people.

## THE MINIATURE PAINTINGS

The art of miniature paintings originated during the Rajput period. It influenced the Mughal miniature paintings. Rajput paintings can be divided into two major schools — the Rajasthani School and the Pahari School. The Rajasthani School of art flourished in Rajasthan and central India. The rulers of the Himalayan states of Kulu, Mandi, Jammu and Garhwal were patrons of the Pahari School. It is also known as the Kangra School of Painting.

The early Turkish rulers did not patronise arts such as painting. With the commencement of the Lodi rule, miniature painting in the Persian style was used to illustrate books. During the Sultanate period we find a synthesis of the Persian style and Indian ideas of painting.



Miniature painting



Rajasthani painting

**The Mughal Paintings:** The prominent painters at Akbar's court were Daswanth and Abdus Samad. The artists specialised in book illustration. Abdus Samad, a Persian artist decorated the walls of Akbar's new capital at Fatehpur Sikri.

Jahangir was a great lover of paintings. Some of the artists of his court were Mansur, Bishan Das and Murad. Aurangzeb disliked paintings, but the painters still practised their art during his reign.

## MUSIC

Music developed during the medieval period. Amir Khusrau developed a new musical style called the *Qawwali*. It later influenced the style of singing called *khayal*. He is credited to have introduced some musical instruments like sitar. Hindustani music was promoted by different *gharanas*, such as Gwalior *gharana*, Agra *gharana* and Delhi *gharana*. Each *gharana* had its own style. Akbar patronised some 30 musicians of whom the most well-known was Tansen. *Thumri*, *khayal* and *tappa* were different styles of Hindustani music.



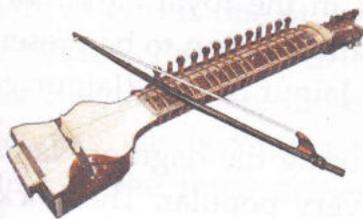
Amir Khusrau

In south India Carnatic music was popular. Purandaradasa is considered as the founder of Carnatic music. Another great composer was Thyagaraja. The temples in south India became the centres of various cultural activities like music recitals and dance performances.

Apart from the classical music, we have a rich tradition of folk music and dance. A number of musical instruments like *sitar*, *sarangi* and *tabla* became popular in course of time.



Tabla



Sarangi



Sitar

Musical instruments

## DANCE FORMS

Classical dance forms in India are many, such as Bharatnatyam, Kuchipudi, Kathakali, Kathak, Odissi and Manipuri.

**Bharatnatyam:** Bharatnatyam originated in Tamil Nadu. It is the oldest dance form of India. The costume used in this dance is colourful and rich. The hand gestures called *mudras*, foot work and facial expressions are vital for this dance form. The Chola rulers patronised this dance form.



Bharatnatyam



Kuchipudi

**Kuchipudi:** Kuchipudi is a famous dance form of Andhra Pradesh. It is in fact the 'dance drama' which derives its themes from epics and mythology. The dancer dances to the tune of Carnatic music.

**Kathakali:** Kathakali is the famous dance-drama of Kerala. Its themes are taken from the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata*. It is a dance form in which heavy facial make up is required. The body and foot movements are very rigorous.



Kathakali

**Kathak:** Kathak is the famous dance style of north India. The term *Kathak* is derived from *Katha*, which means 'a story'. This dance form was popular in Uttar Pradesh. From there it spread to many parts of India — Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Bihar and Jammu & Kashmir. In Uttar Pradesh, Kathak developed because of the legend of the divine love of Radha and Krishna. Their *raas-leela* was a combination of music, dance and narration of a story.

The temple used to be the most popular place for Kathak. Under the Mughal rulers Kathak began to be performed in the royal *darbar* or court. The Mughal emperors patronised music and dance. Kathak began to be presented in two forms — Lucknow School (Lucknow *gharana*) and Jaipur School (Jaipur *gharana*).

In the nineteenth century, during the reign of Nawab Wajid Ali Shah (of Awadh), the Lucknow *gharana* became very popular. The Lucknow *gharana* is known for its grace and facial expressions. The Jaipur *gharana* is known for its fast rhythms.

**Odissi:** Odissi is the classical dance of Odisha. Devadasis performed this dance in temples. The dancers perform to the renderings of Jayadeva's *Gita Govinda*.

**Manipuri:** Manipuri is a classical dance of North-eastern region. The dancers use a costume which is unique and rich. The theme of the dance is '*Raas Leela*' or the stories of Shiva and Parvati.



Odissi



Manipuri

**Folk Dances:** Folk dances represent the feelings and culture of the ordinary people of a particular region. Some of the folk dances are — *Bihu* of Assam, *Dandiya* of Gujarat and *Bhangra* and *Gidda* of Punjab.



Bihu



Bhangra

## THE JAGANNATHA CULT

There are some very special regions in India and Odisha is definitely one of them. It is filled with extraordinary temples and beaches of delightful beauty. Odisha has long been famous for the Sun Temple at Konark, Lord Jagannath Temple at Puri and the glorious temples of Bhubaneswar. These temples present a grand museum of India's cultural and artistic heritage. The word Jagannatha means 'Lord of the World'. The cult of Lord Jagannatha is spread throughout Odisha.

The temple of Lord Jagannath at Puri is one of the most sacred pilgrimage places in India. The temple has three deities. The main deity is that of Lord Jagannatha, a form of Lord Vishnu. The other two deities are those of his brother Balabhadra and his sister Subhadra. Lord Jagannath has become a truly statewide god in Odisha. We can see the wooden figures of the three deities, painted in brilliant colours, everywhere in Odisha.

Each year the deities are brought out for public viewing. After the bathing festival the deities are repainted and prepared for the famous car festival or *Rath Yatra*. The chariots for the deities are constructed anew every year. The car festival is one of the world's most wonderful spectacles.

The temple of Lord Jagannath was constructed in the twelfth century by the ruler of the Ganga dynasty of Kalinga.

**A Sacred Dham (Centre of Religion and Pilgrimage):** Puri is regarded as one of the four *dham*s of India, the other three being Badrinath, Dwarka and Shringeri. It is always full of life and draws pilgrims from all over India. In course of time, the temple's authority in social and political affairs of Odisha also increased. Therefore, the Mughal rulers attempted to gain control over the temple. They thought that the conquest of Odisha would be acceptable to the people. The East India Company also behaved in the same way.



Lord Jagannath, Balabhadra and Subhadra



## Bengal

The Palas ruled over the regions of Bengal and Bihar for nearly four centuries from eighth to twelfth century. During the long period of their rule, they patronised education, literature, art and architecture.

The earliest form of the Bangla language could be seen in *Charyapadas*. It has 47 verses written by 23 poets, who lived between ninth and eleventh centuries. The *Charyapadas* songs are associated with the later forms of the Mahayana Buddhism and highlight the Buddhist ideas and tradition.

During the rule of the Palas, books were written on all aspects of knowledge — religion, philosophy, medicine, etc. Atisha compiled nearly 280 books. *Ramacharitam* written by Sandhyakar Nandi is considered as a masterpiece of the Pala literature. King Lakshmansan patronised poets. Jayadeva who wrote *Gita Govinda*, a classic, lived in his court.

*Sri Krishna Kirtana Kavya* was written by Boru Chandidas. He wrote some 1250 poems describing the divine love of Radha and Krishna in Bangla.

The Sanskrit Ramayana was translated into Bangla by Krittivasa Ojha in AD 1498. Under Nusrat Shah's instructions the Bangla version of the *Mahabharata* was prepared.

Chaitanya Mahaprabhu was a great Bhakti saint of Bengal. Through dance and music, he popularised the cult of Bhakti.

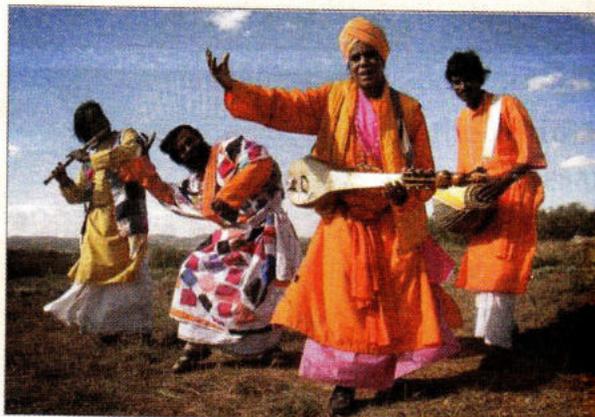
Krishnadasa Kaviraja wrote a biography called *Chaitanya Charitamrita* in Bangla mixed with Sanskrit.

The rulers of Bengal were great builders. Adina Masjid at Pandua is a classic example of the art and architecture of the period.

The Pala rulers patronised painters. Huge murals or wall paintings were made during this period. A number of books contain paintings illustrating events of those days.

Bengal's contribution to music was also quite significant. Jaydeva's *Gita Govinda* is set to various *ragas*. Baul singing developed around fifteenth century. It presents a rich oral tradition which gained much popularity.

**Temples:** Many temples were built in Bengal from the late fifteenth century onwards. Dance, music and other ceremonies were conducted in the temples. Many temples were made with the support of people belonging to the lower social groups, such as the **Kolus** (operating oil crushers) and **Kansaris** (metal workers). Later, many splendid temple structures came up having as many as four storeys.



Baul singing

## Summary of the Lesson

- In the medieval period there was great development of Indian languages.
- With the coming of Turk-Afghans two new languages developed in India — Arabic and Persian.
- Hindi in local dialects Braj and Awadhi grew. All these languages came to have a rich literature.
- During the reign of Rajputs, miniature paintings developed. There were two schools of paintings—the Rajasthani School and the Pahari School. Akbar and Jahangir patronised many painters.
- The Hindustani music developed in north India. In south India, Carnatic music developed. Amir Khusrau developed a new musical style called *Qawwali*.
- Bharatnatyam, Kathakali, Kuchipudi, Kathak, Manipuri and Odissi were the major classical dance forms.
- **The Jagannath Cult.** We see the deities of Lord Jagannatha, Balabhadra and Subhadra, painted in brilliant colours, throughout Odisha.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The script used for writing Urdu is  
(a) Arabic.                      (b) Persian.                      (c) Roman.                      (d) Turkish.
2. Who wrote the famous historical work *Rajatarangini*?  
(a) Chand Bardai    (b) Bilhana                      (c) Kalhana                      (d) Bhavabhuti
3. Amir Khusrau developed the new style of writing called  
(a) *Hindawi*.                      (b) Hindustani.                      (c) Hindi.                      (d) Urdu.
4. The *Ramcharitamanas* was written by  
(a) Kabir.                      (b) Surdas.                      (c) Tulsidas.                      (d) Mirabai.

### II. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Jaideva
2. Abdus Samad
3. Kathakali
4. Jagannatha Cult
5. *Charyapadas*

#### Column B

- (a) Odisha
- (b) Bangla
- (c) *Gita Govinda*
- (d) Kerala
- (e) Persian artist who decorated walls

### III. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. Who wrote the following:  
(a) *Prithviraj Raso*                      (b) *Uttar Ramcharita*

2. Who were the 'Three Gems' of Kannada literature?
3. Name the two poets who contributed a great deal to the development of Urdu literature under the Mughals.
4. The temple of Lord Jagannatha has three deities. Name them.
5. What do the folk dances represent?

#### IV. Answer the following questions.

1. Why did the conquerors try to gain control over the temple of Lord Jagannatha at Puri?
2. What do you know about the growth of the art of painting and music in Bengal in the medieval period?
3. Who wrote *Sri Krishna Kirtana Kavya* in Bangla? What does this work describe?
4. Mention the two major schools of Rajput paintings.
5. Name the two famous Kathak *gharanas*. Under which ruler of Awadh did one of these *gharanas* become very popular?

#### V. Projects and Activities

1. Learn a few *dohas* of Rahim and Kabir and with the permission of your teacher recite these verses in the classroom. Request your teacher to explain the meaning of these *dohas*.
2. Do a project on Bengal with reference to the following:
  - (a) Chaitanya's Krishna Bhakti
  - (b) Temples in Bengal in medieval period

#### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

The Hindus in India celebrate *Diwali* and strict fasting is observed by Muslims during the month of *Ramzan*. Write a slogan that represents India's secular tradition.

# 11

## New Political Formations in Eighteenth Century

### New Words to Remember

**East India Company:** The Company registered as a joint stock company in England in AD 1600. It began to rule India after AD 1750 which continued until AD 1857.

**Pink City:** Jaipur

**Misls:** The twelve Sikh chiefdoms each led by an army chief

**Chauth:** One-fourth of land revenue from conquered territories but not ruled directly by the Marathas.

**Sardeshmukhi:** One-tenth of land revenue collected by the Marathas from areas directly ruled by them.

**Coup:** Overthrow of a government by army officers or by any other group of people.

The Mughal empire declined rapidly after the death of Aurangzeb. The Rajputs, the Marathas under Peshwa Balaji Viswanath and the Sikhs under Banda Bahadur soon asserted their supremacy.

### CAUSES OF DECLINE OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

- (i) **Later Mughals:** Bahadur Shah, Aurangzeb's eldest son ascended the throne in AD 1707. He was already 65 years old and died in AD 1712. A bitter war of succession ensued in which *Sayyid brothers*, Husain Ali and Abdullah, the two powerful nobles had turned into king-makers. Their conspiracies weakened the empire. The later Mughals were incompetent and did not have the skills to rule over a vast empire. In AD 1719 the Sayyid brothers placed Muhammad Shah on the throne.

Under Muhammad Shah (AD 1719 – AD 1748) province after province (the Deccan, Awadh, Bengal and Rohilkhand) slipped out of the Mughal control. The governors of these provinces became independent rulers.

The Mughal empire shrunk in size. It comprised only a few areas around Delhi.

(ii) **Foreign Invasions:** In AD 1739 Nadir Shah, the ruler of Persia (Iran) defeated the Mughal army at Karnal. He then proceeded to Delhi. The incompetent Mughal emperor offered his entire treasure to the invader. Nadir Shah's occupation of Delhi resulted into a slaughter of thousands of innocent people of Delhi. Nadir Shah returned home laden with immense treasure including the famous Peacock Throne and the Kohinoor diamond.



Nadir Shah

Nadir Shah's invasion had exposed the weakness of the Mughals. It encouraged Ahmad Shah Abdali to invade India. Ahmad Shah Abdali was the ruler of

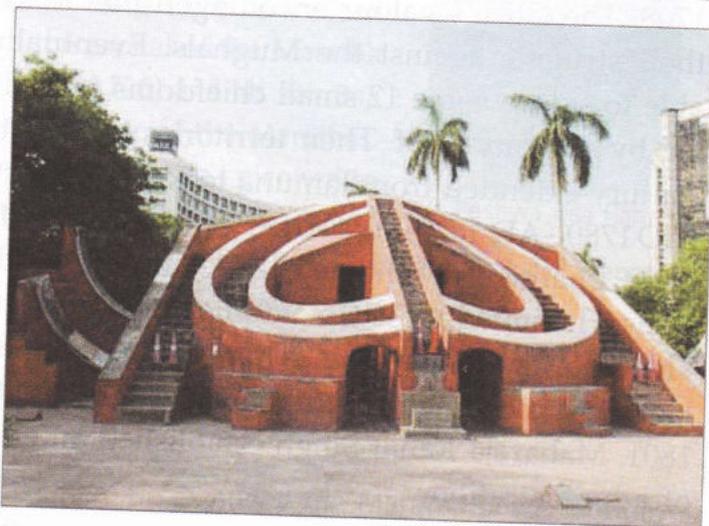


India in the eighteenth century

Afghanistan. In AD 1757 he advanced into India as far as Delhi. In AD 1759 he finally conquered Punjab. The Mughals were forced to seek the help of the Marathas against the Mughals. Therefore, a battle between Ahmad Shah Abdali and the Marathas was inevitable.

Ahmad Shah Abdali defeated the Maratha army at the Battle of Panipat in AD 1761. This defeat not only checked the power of the Marathas, it also hastened the decline of the Mughal empire.

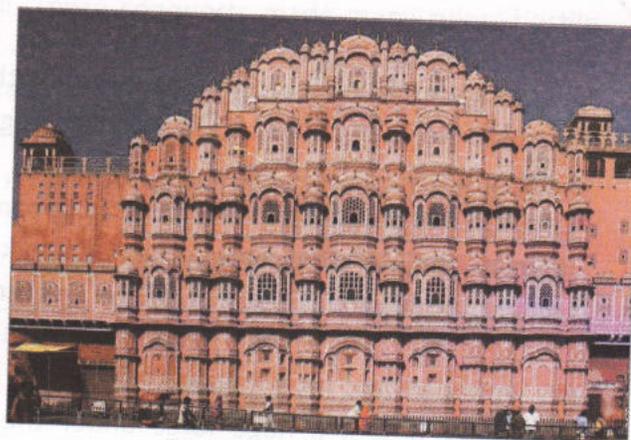
- (iii) **Aurangzeb's Religious Policy:** Aurangzeb's religious policy had damaging effects on the stability of the empire. He lost the sympathy of the Sikhs, the Marathas and the Rajputs. He had to spend the last 25 years of his life in an attempt to suppress rebellions.
- (iv) **Revival of the Rajputs, the Sikhs and the Marathas:** The Rajputs, the Marathas and the Sikhs were known for their bravery. Their revival led to the decay and fall of the Mughal empire.



The Jantar Mantar at Delhi

## THE RAJPUTS

Aurangzeb's relations with the Rajputs were never cordial. Raja Jaswant Singh Rathore of Marwar had fought against Aurangzeb in the war of succession that broke out among the four brothers. On Jaswant Singh's death in AD 1678, Aurangzeb did not allow his child to inherit the throne. Therefore, the Rajputs of Marwar and Mewar joined hands. They declared their independence and fought against the Mughals. Later, Aurangzeb tried to patch up the quarrel with the Rajputs of Mewar.



The Hawa Mahal, Jaipur

Raja Jai Singh built the city of Jaipur, which was called the Pink City. He also built astronomical observatories at Jaipur, Delhi, Varanasi and Ujjain.

## THE SIKHS

Aurangzeb's religious policy caused discontent among the Sikhs. Guru Teg Bahadur was beheaded. The Mughals attacked the Fort of Anandpur in AD 1704.

Guru Gobind Singh fought heroically. His two sons Zorawar Singh and Fateh Singh were bricked up alive when they refused to embrace Islam.

Guru Gobind Singh was stabbed by two young Pathans in Maharashtra. The guru left this mortal world on 7 October 1708. The Guru's valour encouraged the Sikhs to continue their struggle against the Mughals. Eventually they were able to set up some 12 small chiefdoms (called *Misls*), each led by an army chief. Their territories in the late eighteenth century extended from Jamuna to Rawalpindi. Ranjit Singh (AD 1780–AD 1839), the Chief of one of the Misls, showed great qualities of military leadership and administrative skills. He united these Chiefdoms into a powerful kingdom. The state of Punjab under him had Lahore as its capital. He was proclaimed the Maharaja or the great king in AD 1801. Maharaja Ranjit Singh established an efficient system of administration.



Maharaja Ranjit Singh

### Case Study

#### The Marathas

The Marathas had become sufficiently powerful by the early 1630s. It was Shivaji (AD 1627–AD 1680) under whom the Marathas could find their best leader.

#### Shivaji

Shivaji captured several fortresses including those of Torna, Chakan and Purandar. He then turned to the Konkan region between the Western Ghats and the Arabian Sea.

In AD 1659 the Sultan of Bijapur had to send his general Afzal Khan to subjugate the Marathas. Shivaji trapped and killed Afzal Khan. Aurangzeb directed the Mughal Governor of the Deccan, Shaista Khan, to subdue Shivaji. In AD 1663 Shivaji raided the Governor's camp. Shaista Khan was wounded and his son was killed.

Aurangzeb sent a huge force under the command of Raja Jai Singh of Mewar to deal with Shivaji. In AD 1666 Shivaji was persuaded by Raja Jai Singh to visit the Imperial Court where he was made to feel humiliated. He, along with his son Sambhaji, remained under house arrest for about nine months. He escaped custody and returned to the Deccan.

In AD 1674 Shivaji was crowned as an independent king. He was glorified as *Chhatrapati* and *Deva Raja*. He took the vow to protect Brahmins and cows and to uphold *dharma*. By



Shivaji

the time of his death in AD 1680, he had carved out a large kingdom. He was not only a successful military leader, but an able administrator. He had a council of eight ministers called *Ashtapradhan*. The most important among the ministers was the Peshwa or the Prime Minister.

### The Peshwas

Shivaji was succeeded by his elder son Sambhaji. Aurangzeb reached Deccan in AD 1681. He sought to crush the Marathas, but his efforts failed.

By AD 1713 all the powers of the Maratha state were centralised in the hands of the Peshwa. Poona became the capital of the Maratha state. Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath (AD 1714 – AD 1720) and his son Baji Rao I (AD 1720 – AD 1740) consolidated the power of the Marathas. Seeing the weak condition of the Mughal empire, Baji Rao I planned to extend his rule to north India. The powerful among the Maratha ruling chiefs of this time were Bhonsle, Sindhia and Holkar, who all helped Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath in extending his empire. They also formed the Maratha Confederacy.

Baji Rao died in AD 1740. He was a bold commander. He collected *Chauth* and *Sardeshmukhi* from the rulers of most of the states.



Peshwa Baji Rao

### The Maratha Conquests

Baji Rao I was succeeded by his son Balaji Baji Rao. He extended the Maratha power both in the north and south. He consolidated Maratha control over Malwa, Gujarat and Bundelkhand. He realised tribute from the rulers of Jaipur, Kota, Bundi and other states of Rajasthan. The Marathas became the real power behind the Mughal throne.

### Third Battle of Panipat, AD 1761

The Marathas went on capturing territory after territory. They even reached Punjab which they seized from the son of Ahmad Shah Abdali. These conquests made many rulers hostile towards the Marathas. In AD 1761 the forces of Ahmad Shah Abdali completely defeated the Marathas at the Third Battle of Panipat. The Maratha Confederacy received a severe jolt to their power. It broke up into five independent Maratha kingdoms.

The Marathas commanded large armies. They were great warriors. Some of the Maratha Chiefs, like Sindhia of Gwalior, Gaekwad of Baroda and Bhonsle of Nagpur, could set up an efficient system of administration. Agriculture and trade developed under their regime. But they lacked unity and ultimately failed to protect their territories in the Third Maratha War (AD 1817 – AD 1818) against the British.

## OTHER INDEPENDENT STATES

### BENGAL

Murshid Quli Khan was appointed *Subahdar* of Bengal in AD 1717, where he ruled as an independent ruler till his death in AD 1727. His successors Shujauddin Khan (AD 1727–AD 1739) and Alivardi Khan (AD 1740 – AD 1756) added to the power of

Bengal and made it practically independent of the Mughal empire. But in AD 1751 he concluded a treaty with the Marathas by which Odisha was ceded to them and a tribute of 12 lakh rupees from Bengal was to be paid as *chauth*. Alivardi Khan, though an able administrator, had failed to realise the growing strength of the British East India Company.

Alivardi Khan's successor Sirajuddaulah was from the very beginning mindful of the growing British ambitions and was determined to keep them in check. The British also were equally determined. As a result, the Battle of Plassey took place in AD 1757 in which Sirajuddaulah was defeated and killed. The British power and hold in Bengal increased.

### AWADH

Saadat Khan was the founder of the independent state of Awadh. He was succeeded by his nephew Safdar Jang. Due to his capability he was appointed the *wazir* of the Mughal empire.

Safdar Jang was succeeded by his son Shujauddaulah in AD 1754. He, along with Mir Qasim, the Nawab of Bengal and the Mughal emperor Shah Alam II, fought against the British in the Battle of Buxar in AD 1764. After the defeat, he lost Awadh which was restored to him by the British through the Treaty of Allahabad in AD 1765. He practically sold his independence to the British.

### MYSORE

A Hindu king ruled over Mysore. Haider Ali, one of the officers of the army, staged a coup in AD 1761 and captured the throne of Mysore. He conquered many territories and consolidated the empire. He led many campaigns and fought against the Marathas, the Nizam and the British. Although he was illiterate, he was an efficient administrator.



Tipu Sultan

Haider Ali was succeeded by his son Tipu Sultan, who was a capable general. He modernised his army and also built a modern navy. The British looked upon him as their most dangerous enemy.

### THE JATS

The Jats were agriculturists and lived around Delhi, Agra and Mathura. They revolted several times during the rule of Aurangzeb because of the emperor's policy of persecution or against the high-handedness of the Mughal officials. After the death of Aurangzeb, the Jats emerged as a strong power under their leader Churaman.

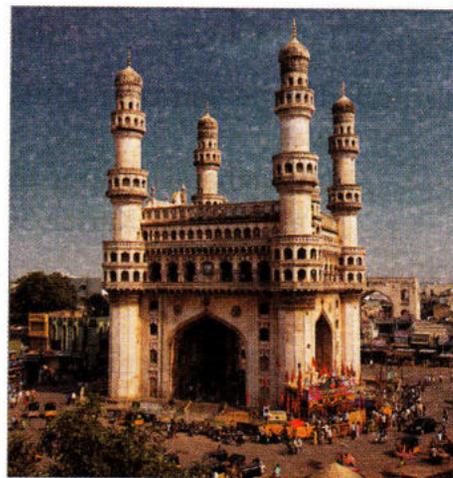
The Jat state was set up by Churaman and his nephew, Badan Singh. They made the Jat kingdom very strong. Suraj Mal (AD 1756 – AD 1763) made the Jats a very formidable power and it was under him that the jat power reached its brightest glory.

Bharatpur was the capital of this kingdom. He was an extremely able administrator, soldier and a very wise statesman. He extended his authority over a large area. After Suraj Mal's death, the Jat power began to decline.

## HYDERABAD

The founder of the independent state of Hyderabad was Nizam-ul-mulk Asaf Jah. He had served under different Mughal emperors and had proved his worth.

Asaf Jah had been the governor of the six Mughal subahs of Deccan and was given the title of *Khan-i-Khana*. He had crushed the power of the nobles at Delhi. He strengthened his position in the Deccan by capturing forts of Asirgarh and Burhanpur. The Mughal Emperor Muhammad Shah appointed him wazir of the Mughal empire in AD 1722. But since he did not have a free hand in the administration, he finally came to Deccan to maintain supremacy and laid the foundation of independent Hyderabad state. By the time of his death in AD 1748, he had been able to establish efficient administration and revenue system. His successors came to be known as the Nizams of Hyderabad.



The Charminar at Hyderabad

## Summary of the Lesson

- The Rajputs, the Sikhs and the Marathas asserted their independence soon after the death of Aurangzeb.
- The two powerful nobles known as the Sayyid brothers became the king-makers.
- Nadir Shah, king of Persia, invaded India in AD 1739.
- Aurangzeb's relation with the Rajputs were never cordial.
- The power of the Sikhs in the late eighteenth century extended from Jamuna to Rawalpindi. Maharaja Ranjit Singh united the 12 Sikh Misls into a powerful kingdom.
- It was Shivaji in whom the Marathas could find their best leader.
- After Shivaji the powers of the Maratha state were centralised in the hands of the Peshwa.
- Baji Rao (AD 1720 – AD 1740) consolidated the power of the Marathas.
- In AD 1761 the forces of Ahmad Shah Abdali defeated the Marathas.
- Other independent states emerged in Bengal (under Murshid Quli Khan and later Alivardi Khan), Awadh (under Saadat Khan) and Mysore (under Haider Ali).
- The Jats emerged as a strong power under their leader Churaman and later Suraj Mal.
- The founder of independent state of Hyderabad was Asaf Jah.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- The two powerful nobles (Sayyid brothers) who had become the king-makers after Aurangzeb's death were  
(a) Muazzam and Azam. (b) Rafid and Akhtar.  
(c) Husain Ali and Abdullah. (d) Ghaziuddin and Azizuddin.
- Nadir Shah, the ruler of Persia (Iran) defeated the Mughal army in AD 1739 and returned home with huge treasure, including the famous diamond called  
(a) Mongol. (b) Angel. (c) Kohinoor. (d) Dholpur.
- The person who united the 12 Sikh *Misls* (small states) into a powerful kingdom was  
(a) Maharaja Kapur Singh. (b) Maharaja Ranjit Singh.  
(c) Maharaja Kartar Singh. (d) Maharaja Gurdas Singh.
- After the death of Aurangzeb the Jats emerged as a strong power under their leader  
(a) Badan Singh. (b) Suraj Mal. (c) Churaman. (d) Bharat Singh.

### II. Write true or false.

- Ahmad Shah Abdali was the ruler of Persia (Iran).
- Raja Jai Singh built astronomical observatories at Jaipur, Delhi, Varanasi and Ujjain.
- Guru Gobind Singh's two sons were bricked up alive when they refused to embrace Islam.
- The Marathas defeated Ahmad Shah Abdali's forces at Panipat in AD 1761.
- The British looked upon Tipu Sultan of Mysore as their most dangerous enemy.

### III. Match the columns:

Column A	Column B
1. Shivaji's ministers	(a) Mysore
2. Chauth	(b) Bharatpur
3. Haider Ali	(c) Bengal
4. Jat kingdom	(d) Ashtapradhan
5. Alivardi Khan	(e) Tax collected by the Marathas

### IV. Give short answers for the following questions.

- What was the impact of Aurangzeb's religious policy on the stability of the Mughal empire?
- Name the capital city of Punjab under Maharaja Ranjit Singh.

3. Name the two Peshwas who consolidated and strengthened the power of the Marathas.
4. Who was Saadat Khan? Who succeeded him?
5. Name any two of the fortresses that Shivaji had captured.
6. Name the Rajput Chief who was sent by Aurangzeb to deal with Shivaji.

#### V. Answer the following questions.

1. Mention the achievements of Peshwa Baji Rao I.
2. Mention the achievements of Haider Ali and his son Tipu Sultan.
3. What were the main achievements of Asaf Jah?
4. What was the effect of the Battle of Plassey (AD 1757) on the power of the British in Bengal?
5. What was the extent or expansion of the Sikh territories in the late eighteenth century?

#### VI. Projects and Activities

1. Collect pictures of any two astronomical observatories built by Raja Jai Singh of Jaipur and paste them on your scrapbook. What is meant by astronomical observations?
2. Prepare a project report on Shivaji under the following headlines.
  - (a) Shivaji's encounters with Afzal Khan and Shaista Khan
  - (b) Shivaji's achievements as an independent king
3. Collect pictures and information about Guru Gobind Singh and paste them in the form of a chart.

#### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Chhatrapati Shivaji and Guru Gobind Singh had fought for the honour of our country. Can you name some of our soldiers who died fighting for our country in the Kargil War against Pakistan?

#### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Shivaji was adept in the art of *guerrilla warfare*. What kind of warfare was it?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 10–11)

### I. Presentation

Collect pictures and information on Maharana Pratap and Shivaji. Make a PowerPoint presentation on the two brave sons of India, describing the stories of their bravery and achievements.



### II. Diary Entry

Suppose you had visited the Kingdom of Mysore during the reign of Tipu Sultan and you got the opportunity to see the king. Write down your experiences and feelings in a diary.



### III. Picture Description

- Identify this dance form
- How did it evolve?
- Name the region where it became famous
- Name a famous artist of this dance form



### IV. Timeline

Make a genealogical timetable of the Mughal kings starting from Babur till Bahadur Shah Jafar. Also mention the period of time during which they reigned.



## TEST PAPER

(Based on Chapters 7–11)

Total Marks: 50

Time: 2 Hours

### I. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1 × 8 = 8

- Which city was the capital of Akbar from AD 1585 to AD 1598?  
(a) Delhi (b) Agra (c) Lahore (d) Sikandarabad
- Where is Hampi located?  
(a) Andhra Pradesh (b) Tamil Nadu  
(c) Karnataka (d) Maharashtra
- Who was the first prominent Ahom ruler?  
(a) Mao-Shan (b) Sukhapha (c) Baradeo (d) Gonds
- Guru Angad started the practice of common kitchens called  
(a) langar. (b) bhoj. (c) dhaba. (d) silsila.
- Amir Khusrau developed a new musical style called  
(a) *Khayal*. (b) *Qawwali*. (c) *Shahi Rag*. (d) *Rag Sahi*.
- Shivaji captured many forts using ..... warfare.  
(a) naval (b) guerilla (c) aerial (d) cavalry
- Who was the guru of Mirabai?  
(a) Sant Kabir (b) Guru Sain (c) Guru Ravidas (d) Guru Ramdas
- Kuchipudi is a famous dance form of .....  
(a) Tamil Nadu. (b) Kerala.  
(c) Andhra Pradesh. (d) Assam.

### II. Fill in the blanks.

1 × 6 = 6

- Shivaji was succeeded by his elder son .....
- ..... looted the Peacock Throne and Kohinoor diamond.
- Geet Govinda* was written by .....
- The Natha religious sect was founded by .....
- The Ahom rulers believed in a system of .....
- Akbar married a number of ..... princesses.

### III. Write true or false.

1 × 6 = 6

- Mirza Ghalib was an Urdu poet.
- Raja Jai Singh built the city of Jodhpur.

3. Nadir Shah was a ruler of Persia.
4. Shankaracharya was a famous musician.
5. Nizamuddin Aulia's tomb is located in Agra.
6. Krishnadeva Raya was the greatest king of Vijaynagar Empire.

**IV. Give short answers in about 30 words.**

**2 × 5 = 10**

1. Who was the tenth Guru of the Sikhs? Mention the 5 Ks that he asked his followers to adopt.
2. What were the major contributions of Amir Khusrau to music?
3. What was Chaitanya Mahaprabhu famous for?
4. From which word is Kathak derived? What does it mean?
5. Who founded the independent kingdom of Awadh?

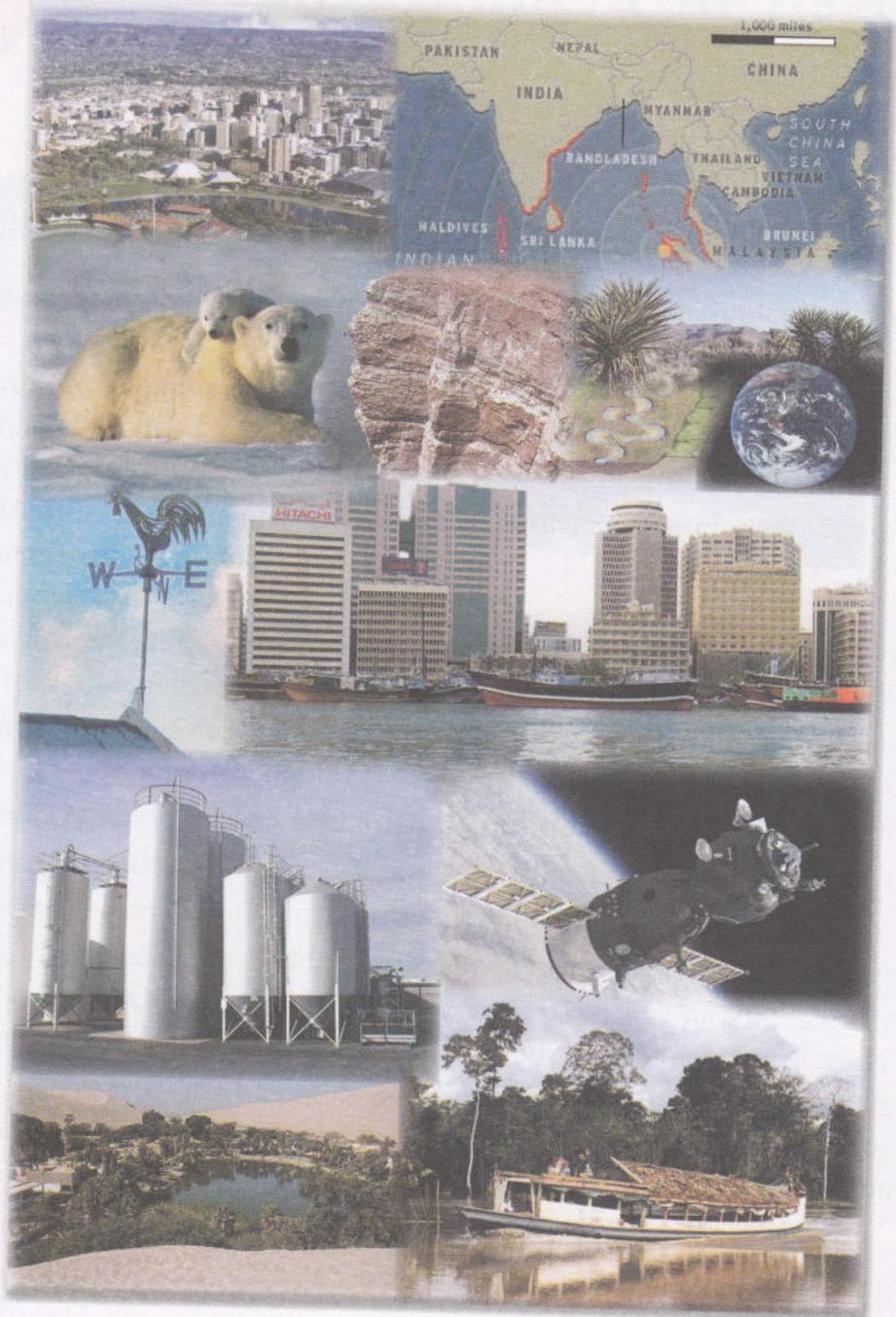
**V. Give long answers in about 60 words.**

**4 × 5 = 20**

1. Name any two places which developed as trading centres because of their proximity to seashore in medieval times. Also name the two main trading communities of those times.
2. Who were the Gonds? Explain their religious beliefs.
3. How did Bhakti and Sufi movements influence the Indian society?
4. Who were the Peshwas? How did they strengthen the Maratha power?
5. Discuss the main features of the Mughal painting.

5=10  
d his

5=20  
their  
ading



## Our Environment



# 1

## Environment in Its Totality

### New Words to Remember

**Environment:** Everything that exists around us in human/biological and physical form.

**Physical/Abiotic components:** Non-living elements of the environment like soil, oxygen, rocks, rivers etc. The elements of land, water and air which exist at a given place are the components of the physical environment.

**Biological/Biotic components:** Living elements of the environment. The elements of biosphere, namely, plants, animals and man which exist at a given place are the components of the biological environment.

**Natural Environment:** Environment that consists of elements provided by nature like relief, rocks, climate, soil, natural vegetation, wildlife etc.

**Human environment:** Environment that is created by man using the natural resources like, roads, buildings, technology, etc.

**Lithosphere:** Uppermost layer of the Earth consisting of rocks and soils.

**Hydrosphere:** Includes all the water bodies on the Earth's surface.

**Atmosphere:** Envelope of air that surrounds the Earth.

**Biosphere:** Plant and animal kingdom together make biosphere.

**Ecological system:** A composite form of physical, biological and human environments in which all elements are interdependent and complementary of each other.

**Ecological balance:** Mutual coordination among elements of the physical and the biological environment existing in an ecosystem to maintain balance. This can get disturbed by the slightest change and may also affect the environment.

### ENVIRONMENT AND ITS COMPONENTS

The term 'environment' has been derived from the word 'environ' which means 'to surround'. Thus, 'environ' literally means surroundings or the things that surround us. Thus, the term 'environment' of a place may be defined as the surroundings and conditions that influence or affect the existence and growth of plants, animals or human beings of that place. For example, if a plant exists and grows somewhere, its environment will comprise soil, air, water, heat and light from the Sun and all

living things existing in its surroundings like other plants, trees, animals and human beings. All these are the elements of the environment of a plant. Hence, we can say that both natural and human environment combine to form the environment in its totality.

## NATURAL ENVIRONMENT

Natural environment of an organism consists of those elements that are provided by nature. It includes relief, rocks, climate, soil, natural vegetation, wildlife, etc.

Natural environment is made up of two kinds of components:

- (i) **Non-living or abiotic components** which include soil, rocks, sunlight, temperature, air, water, etc. These comprise the **physical environment**.
- (ii) **Living or biotic components** which include plants, animals and human beings. These comprise the **biological environment**.



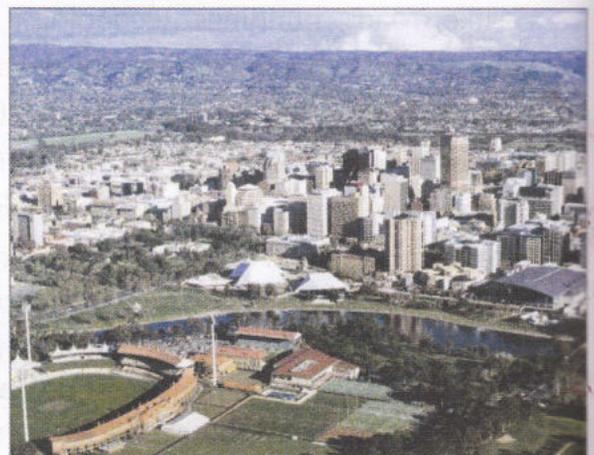
Natural environment



Which day is celebrated as the World Environment Day?

## HUMAN ENVIRONMENT

The Environment created by man for his better existence and growth is known as human environment. It includes his settlements, means of transportation and communication and the development of all other facilities.



Human environment

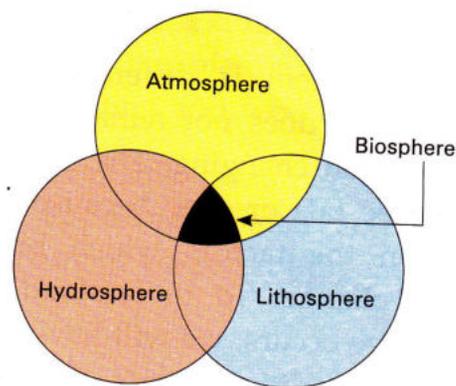
## EARTH IS A PLANET WITH A UNIQUE ENVIRONMENT

Human beings and other forms of life exist on Earth. This has been possible because only the Earth, among all the other planets, has an environment that is favourable for the existence and growth of various forms of life. Temperature on Earth is neither too high as on Mercury and Venus, nor too low as on Jupiter, Saturn and other distant planets.



Earth

Broadly, we can divide the Earth's environment into four spheres — atmosphere, lithosphere, hydrosphere and biosphere. The layer of air surrounding the Earth is called the **atmosphere**. The atmosphere contains many essential gases like oxygen, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, etc. Oxygen is a life-giving gas for humans and animals. Plants need carbon dioxide to prepare their food. The atmosphere helps in maintaining a moderate temperature on Earth which enables life to exist on it. The atmosphere has the ozone layer that prevents the ultraviolet rays of the sun from reaching the Earth's surface. The changes in weather and climatic conditions are also due to the presence of the atmosphere.



The four spheres of environment

The realm of water on the Earth's surface is the **hydrosphere** which includes rivers, lakes, seas and oceans. Water favours the growth and the evolution of life on the Earth. It is available on Earth in three states: solid (ice), liquid (water) and gas (water vapour). Freshwater on Earth is available through the process of water cycle.

The realm of rocks and soil forms the **lithosphere** which supports life on Earth and provides a dwelling place for man. The lithosphere mainly consists of an outermost rocky layer of the Earth called the **crust**. The average thickness of the lithosphere is about 100 km. The uppermost part of it is covered by a thin layer of soil. It includes a variety of landforms, such as mountains, plateaus, plains, valleys, etc.

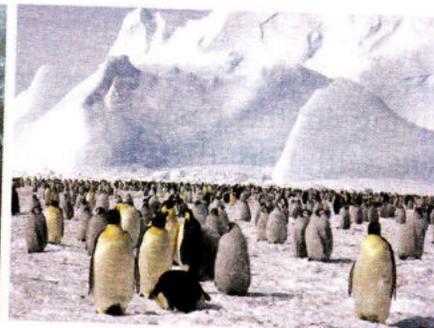
The **biosphere** is the regions of surface and atmosphere where life exists. Plant and animal kingdom together make biosphere. In this zone the lithosphere, hydrosphere, and the atmosphere meet and interact with each other to support life. Biosphere provides nutrients and resources to 15 lakh different species of organisms living in it.

### DIFFERENT ENVIRONMENT AT DIFFERENT PLACES

Physical and biological conditions are not the same everywhere and therefore, the environment cannot be the same at all places or zones of the Earth. For example, the relief, climate, vegetation, wildlife and natural resources that form the natural environment of a desert region will be different from the natural environment of an equatorial region, which again will be different from the natural environment of the Tundra region.



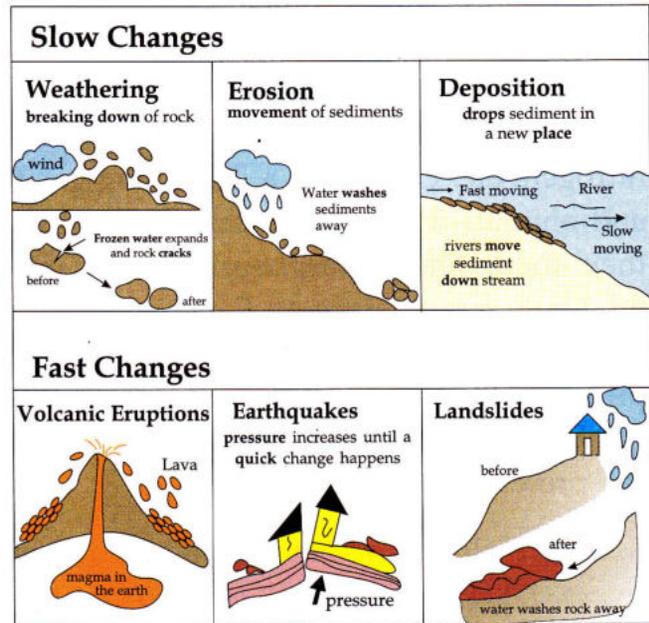
An equatorial region



Frozen land of Tundra region

## ENVIRONMENT KEEPS ON CHANGING WITH TIME

Environment is different at different times. It does not remain stable *i.e.*, it keeps on changing. The rate of change can be fast or slow because it depends upon the factors which bring about the change. To understand why this change occurs, we will have to consider whether the elements of the physical or biological environment are stable or variable. The answer to this question is that they are variable. Changes can be seen everywhere. For example, rocks disintegrate and convert into soil. Surface features of the Earth are ever-changing, and weather and seasons never remain the same. Therefore, the environment keeps on changing with the passage of time as a result of the dynamic nature of its physical and biological elements.



Changing environment

The internal movements of the Earth cause earthquakes and volcanoes which bring about major changes in the landforms in a short span of time.

On the other hand, action of natural agents, like soil erosion by flowing water, action of wind, effect of sea waves, etc. is slow and causes gradual changes in the surface features of the land. These slow or fast changes are responsible for the gradual or rapid changes of the environment. In the Himalayan region, oceanic sedimentary rocks and remains of marine animals have been found. Such evidences have led scientists to conclude that Himalayan mountains were formed millions of years back due to gradual changes in the nature. At one time, there used to be a sea called the **Tethys Sea** at this place and marine life existed there. This is an example of a variable environment.

## PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL ENVIRONMENT—MUTUAL RELATIONSHIP

If we study the life of the Pygmy tribe living in the basin of the Congo river, we will find that their body structure and lifestyle is governed by the physical environment, while their food habits and economic activities are governed by the biological environment. Their life is



Life of the Pygmy tribe depends on the environment

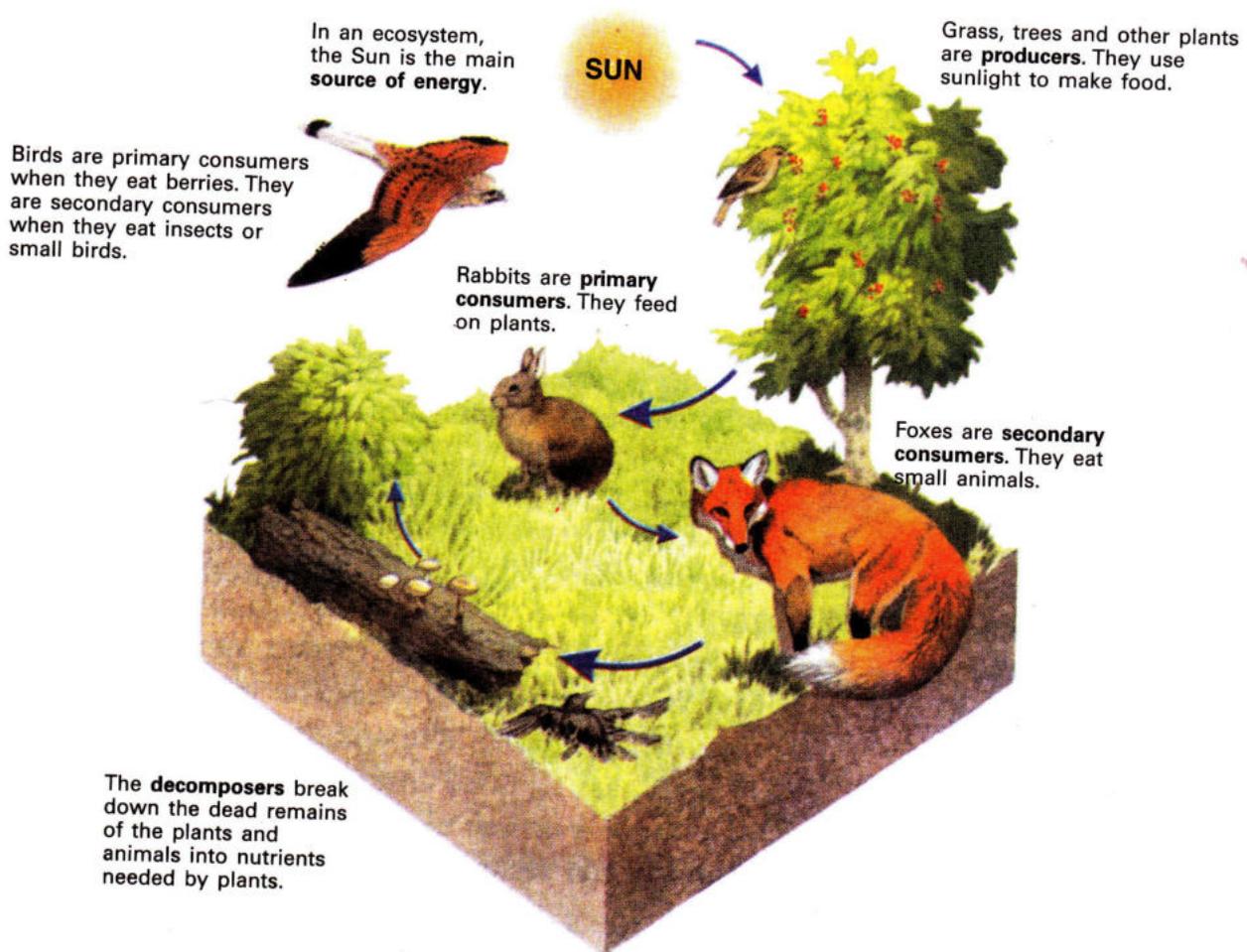
fully dependent on both of them. Factors like excessive rain, dense forests and high temperature force them to live on trees. Lack of arable land but plenty of animals and dense trees inspire them to adopt the profession of hunting and wood-cutting.

Man fulfils his basic necessities from the naturally available resources. As he exploits the resources, circumstances change, physical appearances alter and the physical environment also varies. Thus, biological environment keeps on influencing the physical environment.

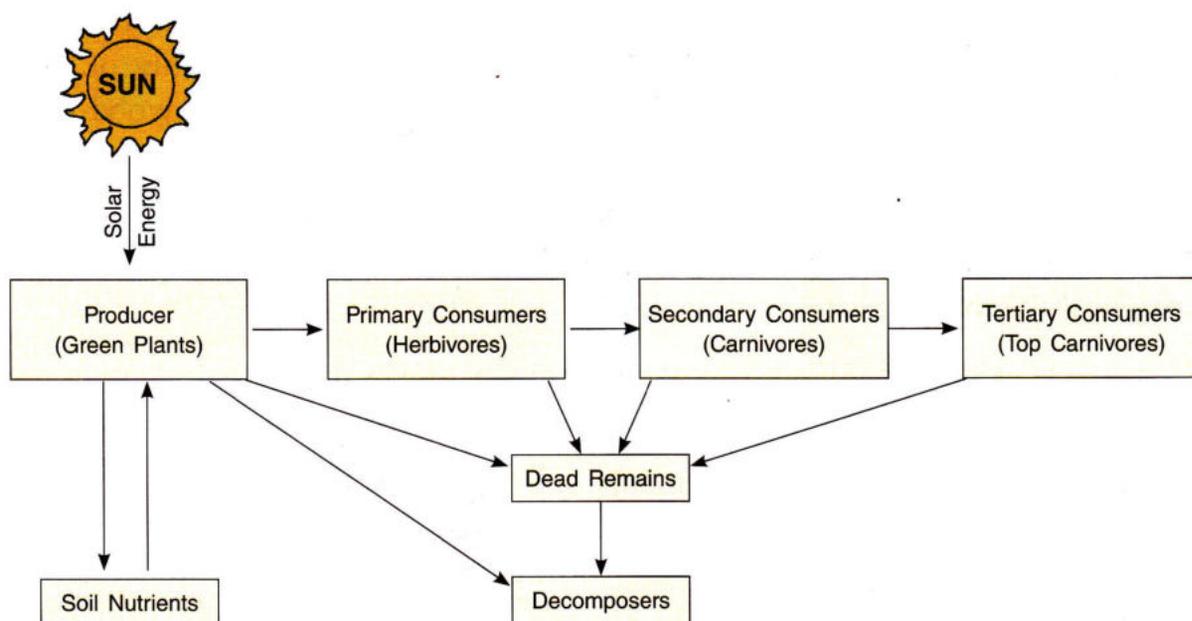
Hence, it is evident that the physical environment affects the biological environment and the biological environment gradually affects the physical environment.

**Ecological System:** Plants and animals and the environment in which they live form an ecosystem or ecological system. Ecosystems are units of the biosphere. Millions of different ecosystems together form earth's biosphere. An ecosystem may be as small as a pond or woodland or as large as an ocean or an equatorial forest.

All ecosystems consist of abiotic and biotic components in their environment. The abiotic components are non-living parts of an ecosystem while the biotic components



Ecosystem in a woodland



Structure of the ecosystem

are living parts of the ecosystems. Within an ecosystem, living organisms are more or less self-sufficient as almost all their food and energy requirements are found within the ecosystem. For example, plants, also called the **producers**, manufacture their own food with the help of energy trapped from the Sun. These plants then become the food for plant-eating birds and animals called the **primary consumers**. The **secondary consumers** are the birds and animals that feed on other birds and animals. The dead remains of plants and animals are then broken down or decomposed by fungi, bacteria, etc. called the **decomposers**, into materials which plants can take up from the soil as nutrients.

An ecological system acquires its shape in different forms at different places and at different times. The local topographical structure, climate, flora, fauna, soil, etc. are combined together in an ecosystem. They are interdependent but they influence each other.

**Ecological Balance:** The elements of an ecological system maintain a state of equilibrium which is known as the ecological balance. Any change or disturbance in this equilibrium gives birth to a new ecological system. The environment affects the living organisms in many ways. For example, temperature, light, wind and soil affect the rate of growth of plants which are food for animals. If the growth of plants gets abnormally reduced, it will affect the number of herbivores which in turn will affect the number of carnivores. Thus, one change leads to a series of changes which further disturb the ecological balance. The changed environment due to a disturbed ecological balance can create circumstances which may be favourable or unfavourable for man.

## STUDY OF ENVIRONMENT—A NECESSITY

For the development of human life, it is essential to study the environment. We are an integral part of the biological environment and our life is very much dependent on the circumstances of the physical environment. Whatever man needs for the development of his life, he gets it from the nature or the environment. Man has changed the environment of many places to satisfy his needs, for example, to build houses, set up factories, etc. It is true that, those changes were essential to fulfil human needs but his actions have adversely affected the environment of those places.

Wherever man lives, direct and indirect changes in the environment occur, the ecological balance gets disturbed and the problems of life emerge. For example, excessive burning of fossil fuels has caused air pollution. Deforestation *i.e.*, cutting and clearing of forests, has caused soil erosion and floods in many places. Problems of pollution, global warming, waste disposal, e-waste, loss of biodiversity have become global issues.

Hence, it has become inevitable to conduct a thorough study of the environment. Man should be careful to see that his actions do not create imbalance in the environment. It has become critical to understand these problems and take action to conserve the environment. Otherwise, it is feared that life may be wiped out on Earth. That is the only way to save his existence on Earth, otherwise, there are chances of man becoming extinct in the dynamic environment.

### Summary of the Lesson

- The environment of a place means the surroundings and conditions that influence the existence and growth of plants, animals and human beings.
- There are two main forms of environment — physical environment and biological environment.
- The Earth is a unique planet because both physical and biological environments are available on it. The existence of a biological environment has not been confirmed on any other planet so far.
- Environment is broadly divided into four spheres: (a) atmosphere (b) lithosphere (c) hydrosphere (d) biosphere.
- Physical and biological environments are mutually related, interdependent and complementary to each other. The study of one without the other is meaningless.
- Plants, animals and the environment in which they live together form an ecosystem and all are interdependent on each other.
- There exists an equilibrium between the physical environment and the biological environment which is known as the ecological balance. Changes can disturb this balance. To maintain an ecological system, it is necessary to protect the ecological balance from any type of disturbance.
- For proper development of human life and sustenance of the ecosystem, it is necessary to study the environment.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- The biotic environment consists of:  
(a) non-living things.                      (b) living things.                      (c) plants.
- The layer of air surrounding the Earth is called the:  
(a) biosphere.                      (b) lithosphere.                      (c) atmosphere.
- The interrelationship between plants, animals and human beings with the physical environment is called the:  
(a) ecology.                      (b) ecosystem.                      (c) biosphere.
- The dead remains of plants and animals are broken by organisms called:  
(a) producers.                      (b) decomposers.                      (c) consumers.
- The average thickness of the lithosphere is:  
(a) 100 km.                      (b) 200 km.                      (c) 300 km.

### II. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.

- Environment is dynamic in nature. \_\_\_\_\_
- The lithosphere refers to large bodies of oceans and seas. \_\_\_\_\_
- The unique feature of the planet Earth is that it does not support life. \_\_\_\_\_
- Man has changed the environment of many places to make it fit for human dwelling. \_\_\_\_\_
- Biosphere consists of the plant and animal kingdoms. \_\_\_\_\_

### III. Match the columns.

#### Column A

- Sunlight, air, water
- Plants and animals
- Technology
- Realms of water
- Envelope of air

#### Column B

- Atmosphere
- Physical environment
- Hydrosphere
- Biological environment
- Human environment

### IV. Short Answer Questions.

- What are the four spheres into which the environment can be divided?
- Why is the environment dynamic?
- What is an ecosystem?
- What is biosphere?
- Who is posing the greatest threat to the environment?

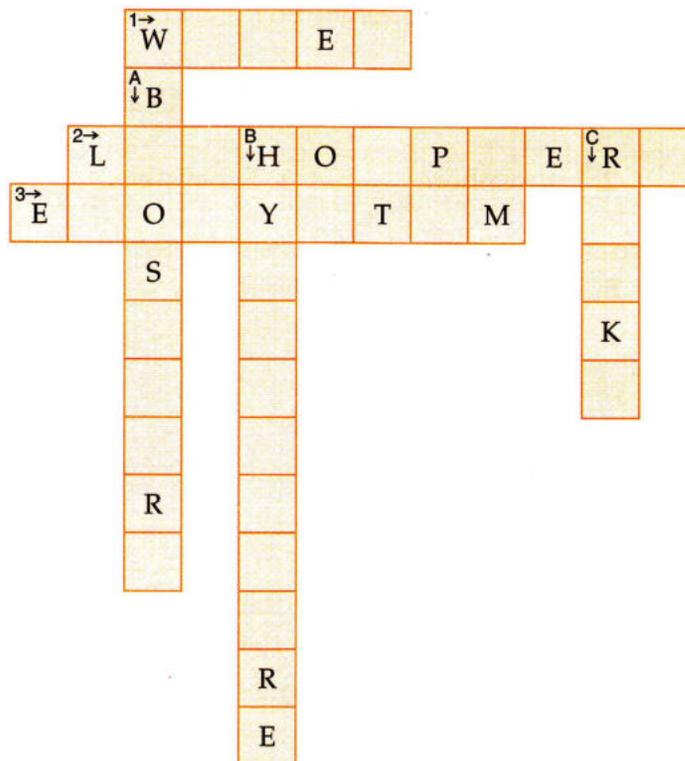
### V. Long Answer Questions.

- Differentiate between natural and human environment.

2. Why is it necessary for man to study the environment?
3. List the various human activities that cause degradation of the environment.
4. Why is the biosphere very important for the existence of human beings?
5. What is ecological balance?

**VI. Solve the crossword puzzle with the help of the clues given below.**

CLUES	
<p><b>Across</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An example of natural environment</li> <li>2. The realm of rocks and soils</li> <li>3. Interrelationship between plants and animals with the physical environment</li> </ol>	<p><b>Down</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. A narrow belt of living things</li> <li>B. The realm of water on the Earth's surface</li> <li>C. An example of abiotic environment</li> </ol>



**VII. Projects and Activities**

1. Write a report on how you can celebrate the World Environment Day in your school.
2. Prepare a model displaying the diversity in the environment of two different places. You can show comparison between the environment of mountains and plains, hot desert and cold desert, island and plains, etc.

3. Prepare a PowerPoint presentation to show how man has brought about positive changes in his environment. Students can work in groups of 4-5. They can trace the life of man from the Stone Age to the present age of skyscrapers, rockets and mobiles.
4. Prepare a poster to spread the message of 'Conservation of Environment'. The best five posters can be displayed on the class display board.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Suppose you are going for boating in a river or lake with your parents. While boating, you eat chips and biscuits. What will you do with the packets of the eatables? Tick (✓) your choice.

1. You will throw the packets in the river or lake.
2. You will keep them in a packet and throw them later in a dustbin.

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

How do humans interfere with the equilibrium of the ecosystem?

### ANSWERS TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE

#### Across

- |          |                |              |
|----------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. Water | 2. Lithosphere | 3. Ecosystem |
|----------|----------------|--------------|

#### Down

- |              |                |          |
|--------------|----------------|----------|
| A. Biosphere | B. Hydrosphere | C. Rocks |
|--------------|----------------|----------|

# 2

## Inside our Earth

### New Words to Remember

**Crust:** Outermost solid layer of the Earth which has continents and oceans. The average thickness of the earth's crust is about 100 km.

**Sima or Mantle:** The layer found up to a depth of about 2900 km below the earth's crust which is in a liquid state. Its density is more than that of the outer solid crust.

**Nife or Core:** Innermost layer of the Earth with a thickness of 3500 km. It is the centre of the Earth which is in the liquid form but possesses the properties of solids.

**Rock cycle:** Changing of one type of rock into another in a cyclic manner.

**Igneous rocks:** Rocks formed by the solidification of molten magma.

**Sedimentary rocks:** Rocks formed by the deposition and accumulation of sediments.

**Metamorphic rocks:** Rocks which have changed from their original structure when subjected to extreme heat and pressure.

**Weathering:** Breaking down of rocks into smaller particles

**Erosion:** Removal or washing away of the weathered rocks by various agents of gradation such as rivers, glaciers, winds and sea waves.

**Fossils:** Dead remains of plants and animals embedded between layers of rocks.

The Earth is the only planet in the solar system known to have life on it. It is believed that Earth is nearly 4600 million years old. In the beginning, it was in a molten form. Gradually, it cooled to form the solid outer crust. The Earth has reached its present form by passing through many phases. It consists of many concentric layers like the layers of an onion. A detailed study of the interior of the Earth is done by **geologists**. It is necessary to know the structure of the Earth as the nature of changes that take place on the surface depends upon the processes that take place inside the Earth.

**Interior of the Earth:** We can easily observe and understand the exterior of the Earth but it is practically impossible to study the Earth's interior in a similar way. It is because the temperature inside the Earth increases as the depth increases.

The distance from the crust to the centre of the Earth, which is called the radius of the earth, is about 6000 kilometres. The temperature at the centre of the Earth is estimated to be about 5000 °C.

Information about the internal structure of the Earth has been obtained by man on the basis of indirect evidences. Besides volcanoes and earthquakes, studies have been conducted on the basis of evidences provided by meteors. Accordingly, the Earth has been divided into three main layers:

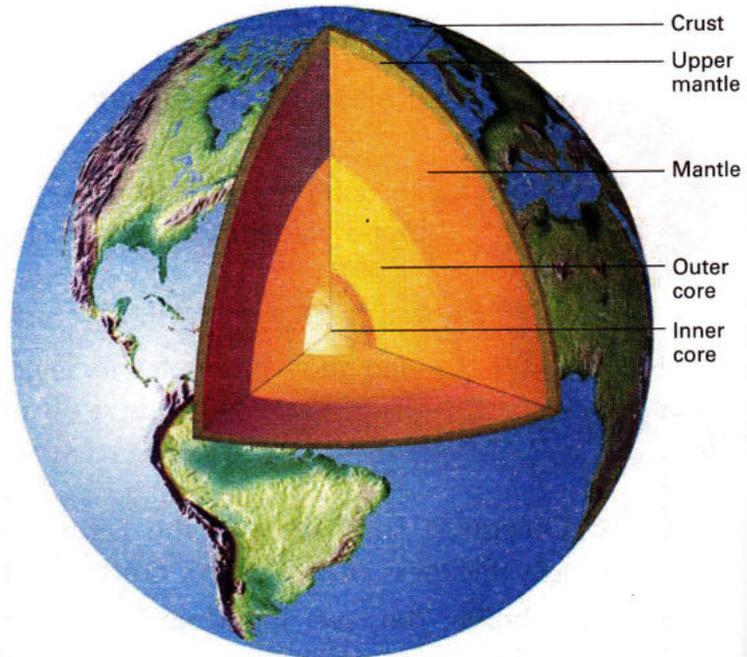
1. Crust
2. Mantle
3. Core

1. **Crust:** Crust is the outermost layer of the Earth and man lives on it. Its thickness is about 35 kilometres under the continents and 5 kilometres under the sea floor. The crust has two main parts—**Continental crust** and **Oceanic crust**.

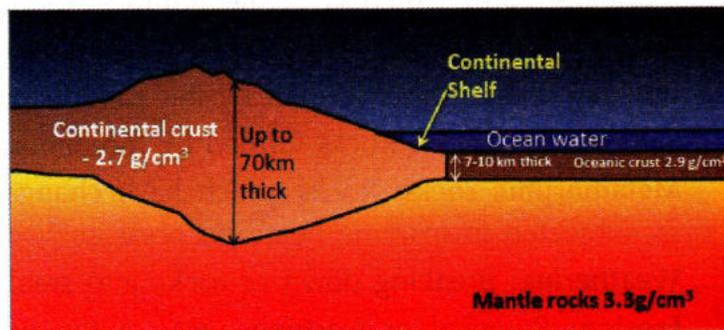
Continental crust has an average thickness of about 35 km, but can extend as far as 70 km beneath the mountains. The Continental crust is also known as **SIAL**. It is derived from the first two letters of the most abundantly found elements silicon (Si) and alumina (Al) found in this layer.

The part of the earth's crust under the oceans is Oceanic crust which is also known as **SIMA**. It is derived from the first two letters of the most abundant elements, Si(silicon) and Ma(magnesium), found in this layer. The Oceanic crust is much thinner than the Continental crust, varying from 5 km to 10 km in thickness.

2. **Mantle:** The next layer below the crust which extends upto a depth of about 2900 km, is the mantle. The rocky material of mantle is composed mainly of compounds of silica, magnesium and some iron. The uppermost part of the mantle which is rich in minerals and is solid alongwith the crust is called **lithosphere**. The average thickness of the lithosphere is about 100 km. From the base of lithosphere to a depth of about 400 km, there is a zone of soft,



Structure of the Earth



Comparing crust types

dense and highly viscous rock material called **asthenosphere**. The temperature and pressure of the asthenosphere is so high that rocks soften and partly melt. Mantle rocks of the asthenosphere flow and cause the lithospheric plates to move.

From a depth of about 400–600 km, there is the transition zone of mantle with higher density.

The lower mantle extends from about 600 km to 2900 km beneath the Earth's surface. The density and temperature increases with the increase in depth towards the centre of the Earth.

3. **Core:** Below the mantle, at the depth of about 2900 kilometres, there is a layer called core which is located in the centre of the Earth in the form of a sphere with a radius of about 3500 kilometres. It is composed mainly of metals. Heavy metals, in particular, are found in the core with the abundance of nickel (Ni) and iron (Fe). Hence, it is also known as **NIFE**. Due to heavy external pressure and internal heat, the temperature of this layer is estimated to be 5000 °C. No substance can remain in a solid state at this high temperature. Evidently, it is totally fluid, but due to external pressure, this fluid substance behaves like a solid.

It is clear from the above study, that the density of rocks increase as we go down from the surface to the core of the Earth.

## **ROCKS AND MINERALS**

The surface of the Earth is made up of rocks which are composed of mineral substances and are found in a solid state on the crust. A **rock** is a naturally occurring substance mostly made up of a mixture of minerals. **Minerals** are naturally occurring chemical compounds. The minerals feldspar and quartz (silica) are the common constituents of rocks. There are thousands of minerals but most of the rocks are made up of only a few of the specific minerals. Minerals of the silicate group are found in abundance on the surface of the Earth. We extract metals and non-metals from minerals. Rocks contain a mixture of minerals and the extraction of chemical elements from them makes them uneconomical. Hence, such rocks are used for other purposes like building houses and road construction.

Metals like iron, copper, gold, etc. are obtained from metallic ores, while substances like mica, carbon, sulphur, etc. are obtained from non-metallic minerals.

On the basis of their formation, rocks have been divided into the following three main categories:

1. Igneous rocks
2. Sedimentary rocks
3. Metamorphic rocks

1. **Igneous Rocks:** Igneous rocks are also known as **primary rocks** because they are believed to be the first rocks formed on Earth. All other rocks are ultimately derived from igneous rocks. They cover a large percentage of the Earth's crust. Before the formation of the crust, Earth was in a molten state. Its upper layer cooled and became the surface of the Earth which gave rise to these rocks. These rocks continue to be formed even today. Molten material in the interior of the Earth is known as **magma**. When it comes out of the cracks through volcanoes, it is called **lava**. On cooling, this lava forms igneous rocks. When igneous rocks are formed on the surface of the Earth, they are called **extrusive igneous rocks**. Examples of such rocks are basalt and rhyolite. **Intrusive igneous rocks** are those igneous rocks that solidify beneath the Earth's surface. Granite and gabbro are examples of such rocks. These rocks are very strong, hard, non-porous and valuable. Igneous rocks never contain fossils and are rarely layered. They have a crystalline structure.



Igneous rocks

2. **Sedimentary Rocks:** The igneous rocks were broken down into small fragments due to the action of flowing rivers, wind and sea waves. These small broken rock pieces were deposited into the river beds or along valleys. These deposits or sediments gradually accumulated into layers.



Sedimentary rocks

In due course of time, these layers were compressed and cemented to form stratified rocks called the sedimentary rocks. Some examples of the sedimentary rocks are sandstone, shale and gravel. Sometimes, fossils of plants and animals can also be found in the sedimentary rocks.

3. **Metamorphic Rocks:** When rocks are located very deep in the Earth, then due to excessive external pressure and internal heat of the Earth, partial or complete changes occur in their structure and chemical properties. Hence, rocks thus formed are different in appearance and characteristics from the original rocks and therefore, are known as metamorphic rocks. This process takes place at a depth of about 12 kilometres to 16 kilometres



Metamorphic rocks

below the Earth's surface where the temperature and pressure are very high. Both igneous and sedimentary rocks undergo metamorphosis. After being formed at such a depth, these rocks reach the upper surface of the Earth due to internal forces and become available to us. Limestone gets converted to marble which differs from limestone in properties and is also beautiful and precious. Metamorphised rocks are mostly beautiful, bright and precious. Some important metamorphic rocks are quartzite, slate, gneiss and marble. Graphite is also a rock of this type. These rocks are used for many important purposes.

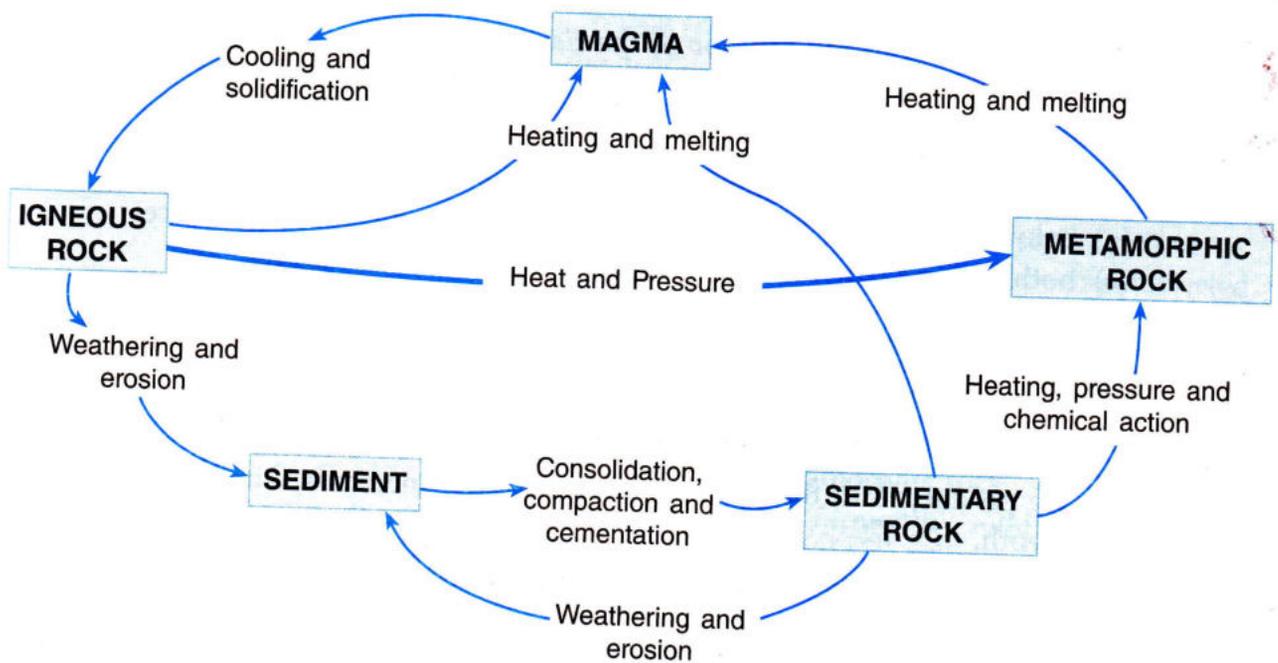
**Rock Cycle:** The change of one type of rock into another type under certain conditions in a cyclic manner is known as the rock cycle. Rocks of one type get converted to another type. Igneous rocks get weathered and eroded to form sedimentary rocks which further get transformed into metamorphic rocks under extreme heat and pressure. Igneous rocks themselves can get metamorphised. Sedimentary rocks are also formed by weathering and erosion of metamorphic rocks.

**Importance of Rocks:** Rocks are very useful to us for many purposes.

1. Rocks like granite, sandstone and marble are used as building materials.
2. They are the source of fossil fuels like coal and petroleum.
3. They are the source of metallic minerals, namely, iron, gold, copper and manganese.
4. They are the storehouse of fossils.
5. They are the source of many precious stones like gems and diamonds.

**DO YOU KNOW?** 

Petrology is the study of rocks.



Rock cycle and their formation



### III. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Surface layer of the Earth
2. Granite
3. Graphite
4. Rocks consisting of fossils
5. Natural substances consisting of one or more minerals

#### Column B

- (a) Rocks
- (b) Sedimentary rocks
- (c) Soil
- (d) Igneous rock
- (e) Metamorphic rock

### IV. Short Answers Questions.

1. What is meant by SIAL and SIMA?
2. Which rocks are called primary rocks? Why?
3. Why is the core of the Earth called NIFE?
4. Name the three layers of the Earth.
5. Name the two most common minerals found in rocks.

### V. Answer the following questions.

1. Explain the interior of the Earth with the help of a diagram.
2. With the help of a diagram, explain the rock cycle.
3. How are metamorphic rocks formed? Give examples.
4. State four points of importance of rocks to man.
5. Write a short note on igneous rocks.

### VI. With the help of the given clues, search the words vertically or horizontally in the given wordsearch.

S	T	U	V	W	X	M	M	I	W	V
A	M	O	C	D	B	A	R	N	E	T
A	Y	M	N	O	P	N	S	R	A	U
G	R	A	P	H	I	T	E	N	T	O
W	F	O	S	S	I	L	S	Y	H	Z
G	H	I	S	J	K	E	L	M	E	N
Z	Y	K	H	L	M	N	P	Q	R	S
M	E	T	A	M	O	R	P	H	I	C
C	D	E	L	F	G	Q	R	S	N	T
I	G	N	E	O	U	S	M	O	G	I

#### CLUES

1. Breaking down of rocks into smaller particles.
2. Dead remains of plants and animals buried between the layers of sediments.
3. Rocks which are formed when subjected to extreme heat and pressure.
4. The layer of the Earth rich in silicon and magnesium.
5. A sedimentary rock.
6. A metamorphic rock.
7. Rocks formed by solidification of molten material.

## VII. Projects and Activities

1. Make a chart/model of the interior of the Earth using thermocol.
2. Collect different types of rocks from your neighbourhood and classify them into igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

It took millions of years for the planet Earth to form. Write what activities you will and will not do to save the Earth.

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Name some minerals used by us in our daily lives?

### ANSWERS TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE

- |               |             |                |           |
|---------------|-------------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. Weathering | 2. Fossils  | 3. Metamorphic | 4. Mantle |
| 5. Shale      | 6. Graphite | 7. Igneous     |           |

# 3

## OUR CHANGING EARTH

### New Words to Remember

**Lithospheric plates:** Large and small plates in the Earth's crust which move around very slowly because of the movement of the molten magma inside the Earth in a circular manner. They carry continents and ocean basins.

**External forces or Exogenic forces:** Forces of nature which operate on the surface of the Earth like running water, winds, sea waves, etc.

**Internal forces or Endogenic forces:** Forces which operate in the interior of the Earth that bring about sudden changes in the Earth's crust like volcanoes, landslides and earthquakes.

**Seismic focus:** The point in the interior of the Earth from where the earthquake waves originate.

**Epicentre:** The point of disturbance on the Earth's crust which lies vertically above the seismic focus.

**Folding:** Horizontal movement of the Earth's crust caused due to compressional forces.

**Faulting:** Vertical movement of the Earth's crust caused due to tension.

**Meander:** S-shaped curves or loops formed in the river course.

**Delta:** A triangular shaped landform formed by sedimentation at the mouth of a river.

**Sand dunes:** Hills of sand deposited by the action of winds in deserts.

**Moraines:** Deposits of rocks, sand and silt dropped by glaciers.

The surface of Earth is not uniform. It consists of many irregularities in the form of mountains, plateaus and plains. Our Earth is dynamic in nature. The landforms that we see today are the result of changes that took place for millions of years. Scientists believe that millions of years ago, all the continents were joined together to form a supercontinent called the 'Pangaea'. Due to the internal forces of Earth, super continent drifted from each other. The Pangaea broke and there was horizontal displacement of the continents. This is called the **Continental Drift**. The theory of the continental drift was propounded by Alfred Wegener, a German meteorologist. Recently, the theory of **Plate Tectonics** replaced the theory of Continental Drift.

According to the Plate Tectonics theory the Earth's crust consists of several large and small, rigid plates known as lithospheric or **tectonic plates**. These plates float beneath the Earth's surface independently and cause many changes on the Earth's surface due to the internal movements of the Earth.

## FORCES OF THE EARTH

Based on their sources, the forces of the Earth are classified as—

- (i) Internal or Endogenic forces
- (ii) External or Exogenic forces

### INTERNAL OR ENDOGENIC FORCES

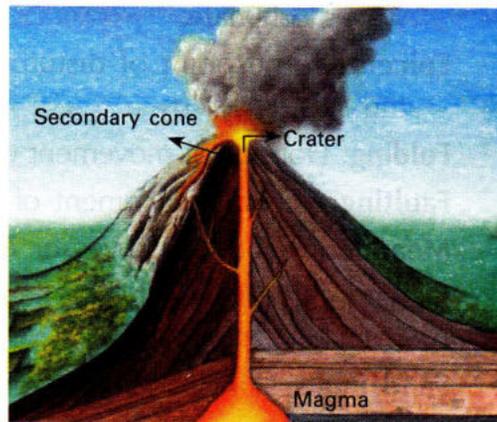
The forces generated in the interior of the Earth are called internal or endogenic forces. Endogenic forces sometimes produce sudden movements or at other times produce slow movements.

#### Sudden Endogenic Forces

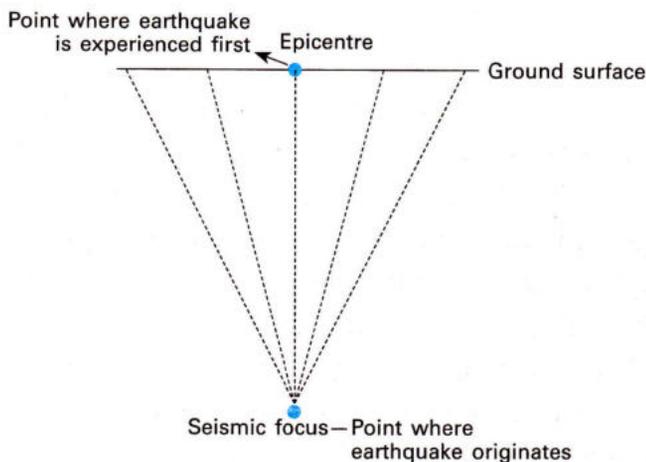
Sudden endogenic forces bring abrupt and sudden changes in the Earth's lithospheric plates. They cause mass destruction and changes over the Earth's surface. Sudden endogenic forces cause earthquakes, volcanoes, landslides which bring changes over the Earth's surface abruptly.

#### Volcano

A volcano is a vent (opening) in the Earth's crust through which molten magma comes out from the interior of the Earth. It gets solidified outside. Continuous eruption of magma results in the formation of a volcanic cone or mountain. A circular depression formed at the mouth of a volcano is called a **crater**.



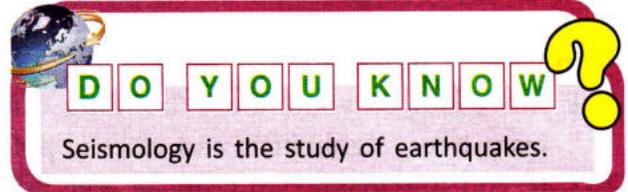
Volcano



#### Earthquake

Vibration or shaking of the lithospheric plates due to the internal forces of Earth is called earthquake. The point from where the earthquake originates in the interior is called the **seismic focus**. The point on the Earth's surface vertically above the seismic focus is called the **epicentre**. The intensity of an earthquake decreases as the

distance from the epicentre increases. The frequency of the earthquake is measured by an instrument called **seismograph** while the intensity of the earthquake is measured by the **Richter scale**.



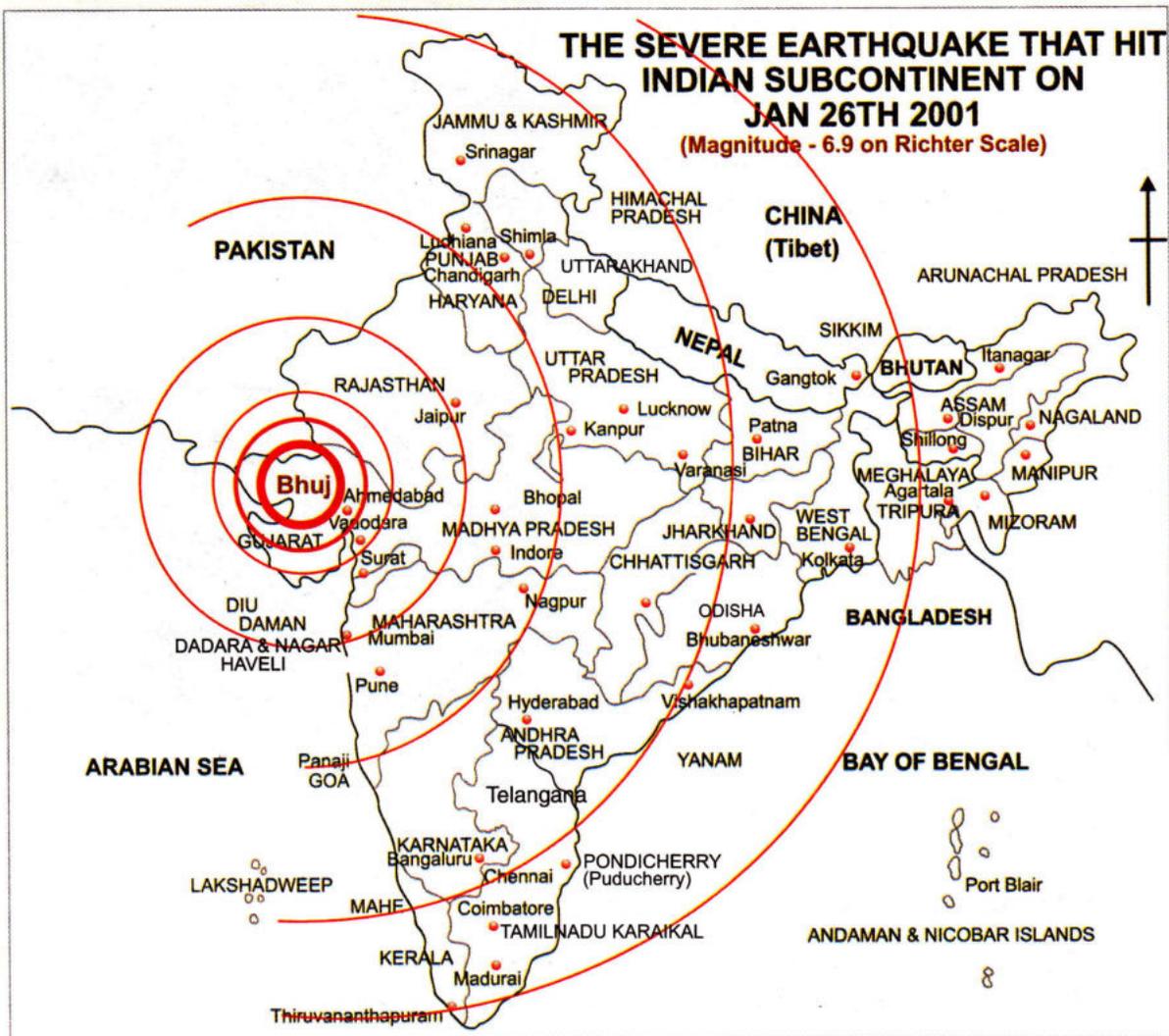
**DO YOU KNOW?**  
Seismology is the study of earthquakes.

### Case Study

#### Bhuj Earthquake

On 26 January 2001 at 8:46 a.m., an earthquake of magnitude 6.9 on the Richter scale rocked the seismically active area of the Kachchh district in Gujarat. The town of Bhuj is centrally located in the Kachchh district, hence, this earthquake is known as the Bhuj earthquake.

About 17,000 people were dead; 1,50,000 injured and 15,70,000 were affected by the earthquake. Around 2,58,000 houses were damaged or destroyed in Kachchh and about 8,39,000 houses were damaged or destroyed in the entire state. Most of these buildings were non-engineered buildings. However, there were also many instances of the collapse of engineered reinforced concrete structures.



Bhuj—Epicentre of the Earthquake

### Precautions needed in case of an Earthquake

In case of an earthquake, the following steps/rules should be followed:

1. Move out of your house/building into some open space. Be careful to stay away from trees, signboards and electric poles when out in the open.
2. If you are inside your house, get under a table or desk to protect yourself from falling objects.
3. Turn off the gas, electric heaters, etc.
4. Create awareness among your friends and the members of the family.

### Slow Endogenic Forces

Slow endogenic forces are responsible for the formation of mountains on the Earth's surface. The slow endogenic forces bring two types of movements:

- (i) Vertical movements                      (ii) Horizontal movements

(i) **Vertical movements** are related to the upliftment or subsidence of the Earth's crust and are known as **faulting**. When a part of the Earth's crust is uplifted between the two faults, it results in the formation of a **block mountain** or **horst**. In case of subsidence, it forms a **rift valley**.



Rift valley and horst

(ii) **Horizontal movements** are caused due to the compressional forces operating in the Earth's interior resulting in the folding of the rock strata. Folding of the Earth's crust is responsible for the formation of **fold mountains**.



Fold mountains

Fold mountains formed in the recent geological period are called **young fold mountains** while the mountains formed during the earlier geological period are called **old fold mountains**.

### EXTERNAL OR EXOGENIC FORCES

The forces operating on the Earth's surface are called external or exogenic forces. The actions of running water, winds, glaciers and sea waves bring about the changes on the surface of the Earth over millions of years, these forces modify the landforms by

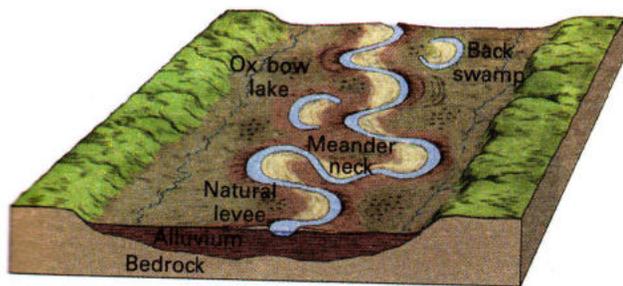
the processes of weathering, erosion and deposition. Some major landforms created due to the exogenic forces are discussed below.

## Major Landforms

External forces are responsible for changing the size and shape of the landforms. The two processes that are responsible for degrading the Earth's surface are weathering and erosion. **Weathering** is the breaking up of the rocks on the Earth's surface. **Erosion** is the removal or washing away of the weathered particles by water, wind, waves, ice, etc. which are deposited elsewhere.

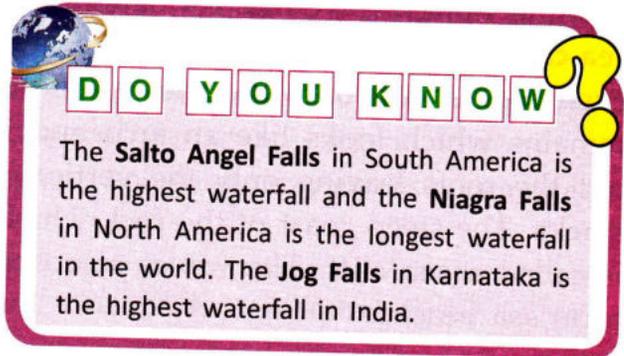
### Work of a River

The action of running water is one of the major agents of gradation. The work of a river varies from place to place depending on the volume of water and the speed of the river. When a river tumbles down over hard rocks or descends down steep slopes, it forms a **waterfall**.

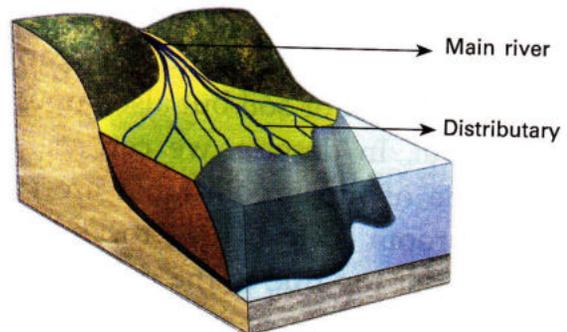
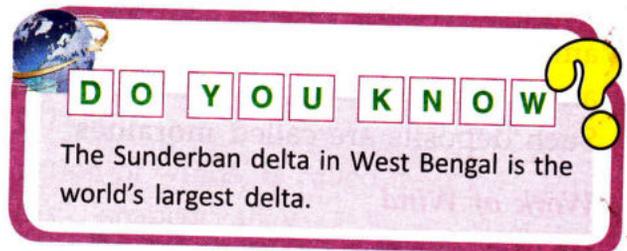


Features made by river in a plain

Sometimes, when a river gets flooded, it overflows its banks. Once the flood recedes, the materials get deposited along the sides of the meander to form a fertile plain called **flood plain**. The raised banks along the flood plains are called **natural levees**. As the river moves towards the sea, its speed becomes extremely slow and it branches off into numerous channels called **distributaries**. In between the distributaries, sediments deposit along the mouth of the river to form a **delta**. Some rivers do not form a delta but instead form **estuaries**.



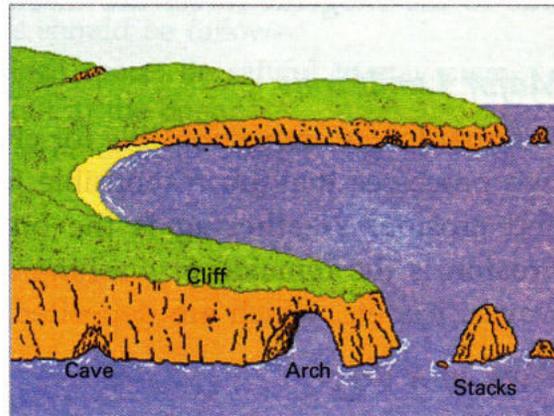
As a river descends to the plains, its speed becomes remarkably slow resulting in large bends (curves) known as **meanders**. Due to extensive erosion, a part of the meander gets cut off to form an **ox bow lake**.



Delta

### Work of Sea Waves

The action of sea waves is predominant along the coastal regions. The erosion and deposition caused by sea waves are responsible for the formation of coastal landforms. Sea waves constantly strike against the relief features and erode them. The striking sea waves develop cracks in rocks. With the passage of time, these cracks become larger and wider, forming hollow cave-like formations called **sea caves**. Further erosion makes the cavities even bigger and only the roof of the cave remains which looks like an arch and is called a **sea arch**. Further erosion wipes out the roofs leaving only the vertical walls. These wall-like structures are called **stacks**. The steep coast of the rock which stands almost vertical above the sea water is called a **sea cliff**. The waves also deposit sediments along the sea shores which form sea beaches.



Features made by sea waves

### Work of Glaciers

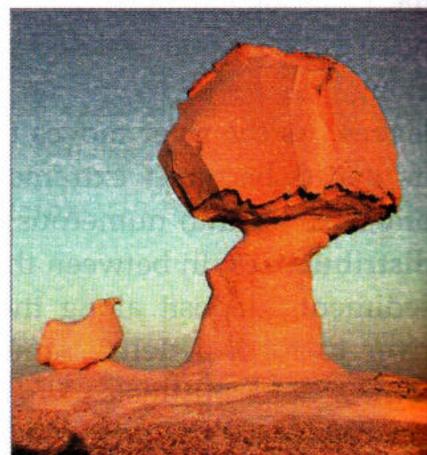
Glaciers are slow moving rivers of snow and ice. As a glacier moves, it erodes rocks and exposes the solid rock below. Therefore, the valleys made by glaciers have a flat bottom with steep sides and are called **U-shaped valleys**. As the ice melts, the depressions get filled up with water to form beautiful lakes in the mountains. Glaciers carry huge amounts of pieces of rocks of varying sizes along with sand and silt which get deposited. Such deposits are called **moraines**.



U-shaped valley

### Work of Wind

Wind is an important agent of gradation in desert regions. It is an important agent of erosion and deposition. A strong wind can carry not only fine particles of dust or soil but also larger particles of sand and gravel. In deserts, we can see rocks resembling the shape of mushrooms that are commonly known as **mushroom rocks**. These rocks have a narrow base and a wider top due to the differential rate of erosion. When the wind blows, it lifts and transports sand from one place to another. When the velocity of the wind



Mushroom rocks

decreases or there is an obstruction in the form of hills, the sand gets deposited to form **sand dunes**. The fine particles of sand and dust carried away by wind from great distances get deposited to form **loess**. The Hwang Ho Valley in China is famous for such deposits.

### Summary of the Lesson

- The surface of the Earth is not uniform and consists of different landforms such as mountains, plains and plateaus.
- The landforms that we see on the Earth have been formed as a result of changes that took place for millions of years.
- The Earth's crust consists of plates known as lithospheric or tectonic plates. The large-scale movement of these plates are caused by endogenic and exogenic forces.
- The internal forces of the Earth cause earthquakes and volcanic eruptions which bring abrupt changes over the Earth's surface.
- The external forces of the Earth like the action of rivers, sea waves, ice and winds are responsible for changing the shapes and sizes of the landforms on the surface of the Earth.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Waterfalls are formed by the action of—  
(a) rivers (b) winds  
(c) waves (d) glaciers
2. Which of the following is a depositional feature of a river?  
(a) Levees (b) Moraines  
(c) Delta (d) Cliff
3. The erosional landform, formed by the action of winds, is called a—  
(a) meander (b) U-shaped valley  
(c) mushroom rocks (d) sand bars
4. Beaches are depositional features formed by—  
(a) glaciers (b) rivers  
(c) moving ice (d) sea waves
5. Fine deposits of sand transported and deposited by winds along great distances are called—  
(a) alluvium (b) levees  
(c) sand dune (d) flood plains

**II. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.**

1. Exogenic forces operate from within the interior of the Earth. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Folding refers to the horizontal movement of the Earth's crust caused due to compressional forces. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The steep crust of the rock which stands vertically above sea water is called a sea arch. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Hills of sands are called beaches. \_\_\_\_\_

**III. Match the columns.**

**Column A**

1. S-shaped curves along river course
2. Sediments deposited along sea coast
3. Sudden vibrations on the Earth's crust
4. Branches of a river
5. Cut-off portion of a meander

**Column B**

- (a) Ox bow lake
- (b) Distributaries
- (c) Meanders
- (d) Beach
- (e) Earthquake

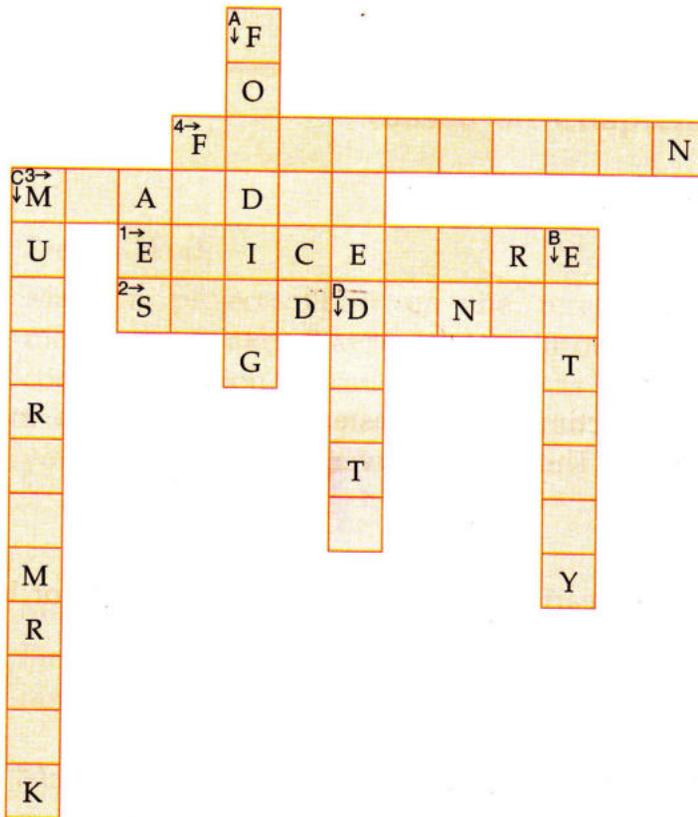
**IV. Short Answers Questions.**

1. What is Pangaea?
2. What are tectonic or lithospheric plates?
3. What is the study of earthquakes called?
4. What is meant by exogenic and endogenic forces?
5. What are flood plains?
6. What is a volcano?

**V. Long Answer Questions.**

1. Differentiate between block mountains and fold mountains.
2. Explain the two types of Earth movements.
3. Describe the major landforms formed by the action of a river.
4. How are major landforms formed by the action of glaciers?
5. Write a short note on how coastal landforms are formed by the work of sea waves.

**VI. Solve the crossword puzzle with the help of the clues given below.**



CLUES	
<b>Across</b>	
1.	A point on the Earth's surface vertically above the seismic zone.
2.	Hills of sand deposited by winds.
3.	S-shaped curves of the river.
4.	Fertile plain formed along the meander due to floods.
<b>Down</b>	
A.	Horizontal movement of the Earth's crust.
B.	Deep narrow river channel formed at the mouth of a river
C.	An erosional landform with narrow base
D.	A triangular piece of land of alluvial deposits

**VII. Projects and Activities**

1. Prepare a model of a volcano.
2. Make a model of the following geographical features using thermocol or any other ecofriendly material:  
 (1) Meander (2) Delta (3) Waterfall (4) Mushroom rock (5) Sand dune
3. Organise a mock drill in your school to make students aware of the things that they should do in case of occurrence of an earthquake.
4. With the help of the following points, write a paragraph on the Richter Scale.
  - Charles Francis Richter (1900–1985)
  - An American Seismologist
  - Invention of Richter Scale
  - Functions of Richter Scale



### VIII. Map Work

On an outline map of India, locate the following:

- (a) Sunderban delta
- (b) Narmada estuary
- (c) Jog falls
- (d) Marina beach
- (e) Dal lake

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Suppose a camp for people, who are victims of a disaster, has been set up in your neighbourhood. How can you help them? Think and answer.

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

What kind of houses should we build in earthquake-prone areas to avoid major loss of lives and properties?

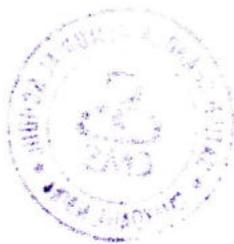
### ANSWERS TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE

#### Across

1. Epicentre                      2. Sand dunes                      3. Meander                      4. Flood plain

#### Down

- A. Folding                      B. Estuary                      C. Mushroom rock                      D. Delta





## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 1–3)

### I. Project Work

Make a project report on the recent major earthquakes that took place in our country. Mention the causes and effects of the earthquakes in it. Include pictures in your report to make it look interesting.



An earthquake-hit area

### II. Map Work

Find out the names of some famous deltas in the world and mark them on an outline map of the world.

### III. Make a Model

Divide the class into four groups. Assign each group a task to make a model on action of sea waves, rivers, glaciers and winds. The model should depict the various landforms made as a result of the changes.

### IV. Assignment

How would you suggest people to celebrate World Environment Day? Write an essay on the importance of this day.

### New Words to Remember

**Global warming:** Rise in the temperature on Earth due to increase in the level of carbon dioxide content.

**Troposphere:** The lowest layer of the atmosphere where all weather changes take place.

**Stratosphere:** The second layer of the atmosphere which is rich in ozone gas.

**Ionosphere:** A part of the thermosphere consisting of electrically charged particles called ions which help in reflecting radio waves back to the Earth.

**Weather:** Condition of atmosphere recorded over a small area for a short period of time.

**Climate:** Average weather conditions recorded over a large area for a long period of time.

**Insolation:** The incoming solar radiation received by Earth.

**Atmospheric pressure:** The pressure exerted by the atmosphere on the Earth's surface.

**Cyclone:** A low pressure centre surrounded by high pressure.

**Humidity:** Amount of water vapour present in the air.

**Mesosphere:** The third layer of the atmosphere where meteorites burn up.

**Exosphere:** The uppermost layer of the atmosphere where the density of air is very thin.

**Temperature:** The degree of hotness or coolness of air.

**Isobars:** Imaginary lines drawn on maps that join places of equal atmospheric pressure.

**Wind:** The horizontal movement of air from regions of high pressure to regions of low pressure.

**Precipitation:** The coming down of moisture from the clouds in the form of rain, snowfall, hail or sleet.

## ATMOSPHERE

Earth is surrounded by an envelope of air called the **atmosphere**. It is an important and integral realm of the natural environment. The atmosphere consists of essential gases that help to sustain life on Earth. It acts as a blanket by preventing the ultra-violet rays of the Sun from reaching Earth. The atmosphere plays a significant role in maintaining the temperature on Earth.

### COMPOSITION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

The atmosphere is a mixture of different gases, dust particles and water vapour. Nitrogen (78 per cent) and oxygen (21 per cent) are the two predominant gases present in the atmosphere. Other gases, water vapour and dust particles together make up the remaining one per cent of the atmosphere.

Although carbon dioxide makes up only 0.03 per cent of the air, it is a vital component of the air. It plays an important role by trapping solar energy. This phenomenon is called the **Greenhouse Effect**.

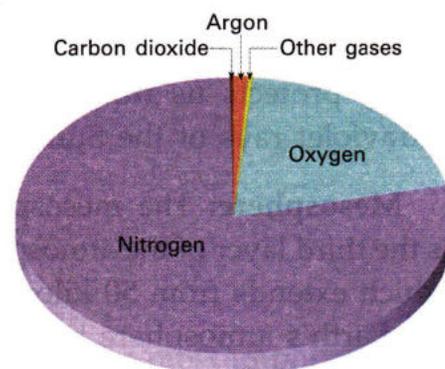
In the modern times, burning of fossil fuels, emissions from automobiles and smoke from industries contribute to an increase in the proportion of carbon dioxide resulting in **global warming**. The rise in temperature will result in the melting of the polar ice caps, thus raising the sea level and causing floods in coastal regions. This would lead to the submergence of the coastal regions, the wiping out of huge populations and the extinction of plants and animals.

The ozone gas found in the stratosphere protects us from the harmful ultraviolet radiation of the Sun. Chlorofluorocarbons used in refrigerators and air conditioners are the main cause of the depletion of the ozone layer. Depletion of the ozone layer will allow harmful ultraviolet rays to reach the Earth, causing skin cancer and other health hazards.

### STRUCTURE OF THE ATMOSPHERE

The atmosphere extends roughly up to 1600 kilometres above the Earth. It is divided into five layers, namely, troposphere, stratosphere, mesosphere, thermosphere and exosphere.

**Troposphere:** The troposphere is the lowest but the most important layer of the atmosphere. It extends up to 18 kilometres over the equator and 8 kilometres over the poles. All weather phenomena like rain, fog, etc. occur in this layer. Both temperature and pressure decrease with height in this layer.



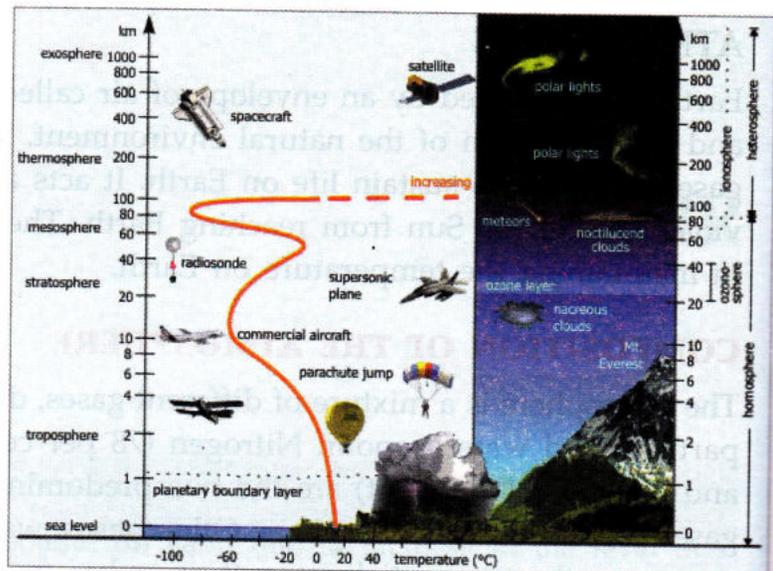
Composition of atmosphere

**Stratosphere:** The stratosphere lies above the troposphere and extends up to a height of 50 kilometres above the Earth's surface. This layer is free from weather phenomena like formation of clouds, rain, etc. thus, providing ideal conditions for flying of jet planes. This layer is rich in the ozone gas which protects us from harmful ultraviolet rays of the Sun.

**Mesosphere:** The mesosphere is the third layer of the atmosphere which extends from 50 kilometres to 80 kilometres in height. Meteorites which enter the Earth's atmosphere burn up in this layer.

**Thermosphere:** In the thermosphere, temperature increases rapidly with increasing height. Ionosphere is a part of this layer that extends from 80 kilometres to 400 kilometres. The presence of electrically charged particles called ions reflect radio waves back to the Earth and help in radio communication.

**Exosphere:** The exosphere is the uppermost layer of the atmosphere where the density of air is very thin. It has no outer limit and ultimately merges into interplanetary space.



Layers of atmosphere

## WEATHER AND CLIMATE

**Weather** is the condition of the atmosphere of small area for a given period of time. Weather keeps on changing every few hours in a day. For example, high temperature and high humidity make the weather sultry and uncomfortable. **Climate** refers to the average weather conditions of a large area and for a long period of time. Climate remains constant for a longer duration, may be for 3 months or 6 months or a year.

Temperature, pressure, humidity, wind, precipitation, etc. are the elements of weather and climate.

## TEMPERATURE

The degree of hotness or coolness of air is called temperature. The temperature of air is measured by an instrument called Six's maximum and minimum thermometer.

**DO YOU KNOW?**

The study of weather is called meteorology and the study of climate is called climatology.

The standard unit of measuring temperature is degree Celsius. On the Celsius scale, the freezing point of water is 0 °C and boiling point is 100 °C.

The Sun is the main source of heat and light. It radiates heat in all directions. Earth receives only a millionth part of the Sun's heat or solar radiation. This incoming solar radiation is known as **insolation**.

### *Factors controlling temperature of a place*

The amount of insolation is not same everywhere on the Earth. Therefore, temperature varies at different places. The main factors responsible for temperature of a place are as follows:

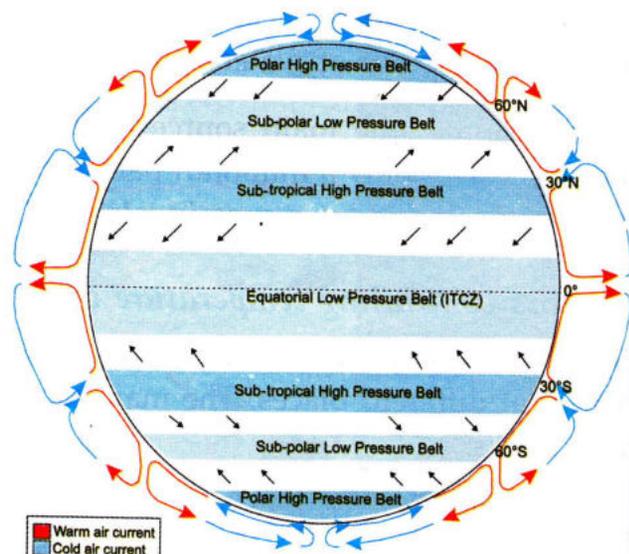
- (a) Latitude of a place
  - (b) Altitude i.e., height above the sea level
  - (c) Distance from the sea
  - (d) Ocean currents
- (a) **Latitude of a place:** Among all the factors, latitude is the most important. The amount of insolation is maximum at the equator and decreases towards the poles. Therefore, as we move away from the equator to either of the poles, the temperature decreases gradually.
- (b) **Altitude:** The higher we ascend the lower is the temperature. This is due to the fact that the lower layers of air near the surface are denser than the upper layers. The permanent snow caps on high mountains even in the low latitudes indicate that temperature decreases in higher altitudes. For example, Mt. Kenya even though located at the equator is cold enough to have a permanent snow cover on its peak.
- (c) **Distribution of land and sea:** Land and water bodies heat up and cool down differently. Land gets heated and cooled down more quickly than water. Hence, temperature remains high on the land during the day and low during the night. On the other hand, water bodies take longer time to heat or cool. Thus, the areas near the sea have mild or moderate climate.
- (d) **Ocean currents:** Ocean currents influence the temperature of adjacent land areas considerably. Warm ocean currents raise the temperature of the coastal areas, whereas cold ocean currents make these areas colder. For example, due to the cold labrador current, the Canadian coast remains frozen during the winter. On the other hand, the warm North Atlantic drift affects the coast of Norway, keeping it pleasant during the winter, although both the places are on the same latitude, their temperature differ.

Due to the above mentioned factors, distribution of temperature over the earth is not uniform. It varies horizontally as well as vertically.

## AIR PRESSURE

Air has weight and it exerts pressure on the surface of the Earth. The pressure exerted by the atmosphere on the Earth's surface is called the **atmospheric pressure**. Even though the atmosphere exerts so much pressure, we do not feel it. This is because the pressure on our body is counter-balanced from within.

Atmospheric pressure is measured with the help of a **barometer**. It is measured in **millibars** and expressed as mb. Normal pressure at the sea level is about 76 centimeters of the mercury column in a barometer. The distribution of atmospheric pressure is shown on a map by **isobars**. An isobar is an imaginary line drawn on map, connecting places having equal atmospheric pressure.



Pressure belts

### Factors affecting Atmospheric Pressure

The two main factors which influence the atmospheric pressure are:

- (a) Altitude    (b) Temperature

- (a) **Altitude:** As we go higher, the air becomes thinner or less dense and so the air pressure decreases. At sea level air pressure is highest. The following table shows the decrease in air pressure with the increase in height.

Height (km)	Pressure (mb)
Sea level	1013.2
5	540.40
15	122.00
25	25.49

- (b) **Temperature:** When air gets heated up, it expands and becomes lighter. This hot air rises upwards resulting in the formation of low pressure area. On the contrary, cooling of air results in contraction. This increases the density of air and thus, creates high pressure area.

### Pressure Belts

The distribution of atmospheric pressure is not uniform over the earth's surface. Four distinct **pressure belts** encircle the earth:

- (a) Equatorial low pressure belt

- (b) Sub-tropical high pressure belt
- (c) Sub-polar low pressure belt
- (d) Polar high pressure belt

These pressure belts are created due to the change in temperature and the rotation of earth.

- (a) **Equatorial low pressure belt:** This belt extends from the equator to about 5°N and 5°S. In this region, temperature is high throughout the year, so the air pressure is always low. That is why this belt is called the **doldrums**.
- (b) **Sub-tropical high pressure belt:** This belt extends between 30° to 35° latitudes in both the hemispheres. Here the winds are dry and calm. This high pressure belt is called **Horse Latitudes**.
- (c) **Sub-polar low pressure belt:** This belt is located between 60°– 65° latitudes in both the hemispheres. The winds coming from the sub-tropics and polar areas converge in this region. Due to great contrast between the temperature of the winds, cyclonic storms are produced in this region.
- (d) **Polar high pressure belt:** At poles, the temperature is the lowest and thus, the air pressure is highest at the poles.

**DO YOU KNOW?** 

It is said that the sailors found it very difficult to vessels with the cargo of horses sail under calm conditions. So, they threw horses in the sea to make their vessel light. That is why this region is called Horse Latitudes.

All these pressure belts are not permanent in nature. When the sun appears to move towards the Tropic of Cancer, the pressure belts move towards the north and when sun appears to move towards the Tropic of Capricorn, the pressure belts move south ward.

## WINDS

The horizontal movement of air from regions of high pressure to regions of low pressure is called **wind**. Wind always moves from high pressure areas to low pressure areas. **Wind vane** is used for finding the direction of the wind while **anemometer** is used for measuring the wind speed. The direction and the speed of wind is determined by various factors like temperature and air pressure.



Wind Vane

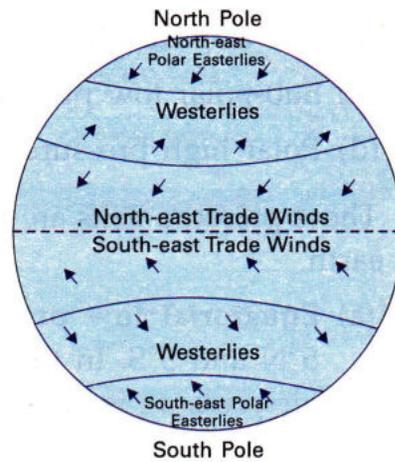


Anemometer

## Types of Winds

Winds are of different types. They are:

1. **Permanent winds:** Winds which blow in a constant direction throughout the year are called permanent winds. The trade winds, westerlies and polar winds are permanent winds.
2. **Seasonal or Periodic winds:** Winds which blow in a particular direction during a particular season are called seasonal winds. For example, monsoon winds blowing over India.
3. **Local winds:** Winds which blow during a particular part of the day or year in a local area for a short duration are called local winds. For example, loo are hot and dry winds that blow in the northern plains of India during the months of May and June.



Permanent Wind Belts of the World

## MOISTURE

The amount of moisture present in air is called **humidity**. When water from water bodies and land evaporates, it gets converted into water vapour. Humidity depends on temperature. Thus, when the temperature is high, humidity also increases and vice versa. When humidity is high, the weather becomes sultry and uncomfortable as sweat does not evaporate easily from the body.

Being lighter in weight, the water vapour rises. They cool down and change into droplets of water or even ice. This process is called **condensation**. The temperature at which air gets saturated is known as the **dew point**. Condensation

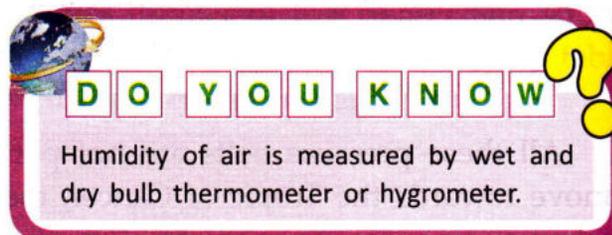
of water vapour results in the formation of clouds. Clouds are the aggregation of millions of droplets of water. When these droplets grow in size, they become heavy and they descend towards Earth as precipitation.

**Precipitation** is the process of descending down of moisture from the clouds in the form of rain, snowfall, hail or sleet. The most common form of precipitation in the world is rain.

## RAINFALL

On the basis of its occurrence, there are three types of rainfall. They are convectional rainfall, orographic or relief rainfall and cyclonic or frontal rainfall.

**Convectional rainfall** is experienced every day in the equatorial region where intense heating of the Earth's surface takes place during the day. Warm air goes up



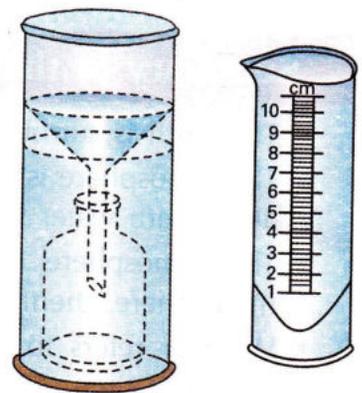
and cools. This leads to the formation of cumulus clouds. These clouds produce sudden and heavy rainfall called convectional rainfall.

**Orographic or Relief rainfall** is experienced when the moisture-laden air lifts over a mountain. When the air cools down, formation of **orographic** or relief clouds takes place, which results in rainfall.

**Cyclonic or frontal rainfall** is associated with cyclones in the tropical regions and depressions in the temperate zone.

When warm and cold air meet, the warm air is forced to rise above the denser cold air and thus, it cools. The boundary between two air masses is called **front**. Condensation takes place in the warm air mass and rainfall occurs along the path of the cyclone.

Rainfall is measured in centimetres or millimeters by an instrument called **rain gauge**.



Rain gauge

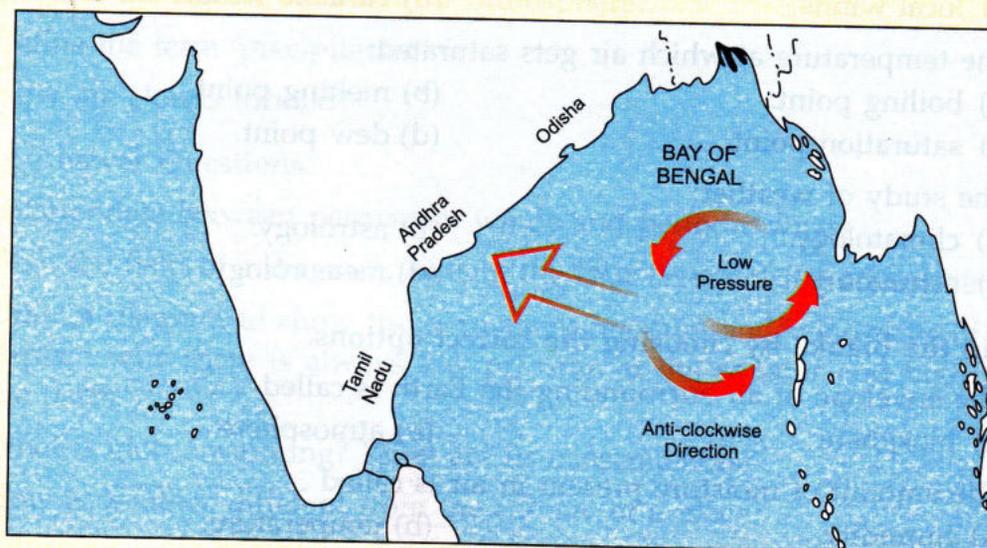
### DO YOU KNOW?

Isohyets are imaginary lines joining places of equal rainfall.

### Case Study

#### Odisha Cyclone – October 1999

Cyclones in India mostly originate in the Bay of Bengal. A cyclone can be highly destructive. This was proved by the severe cyclone of 29 October 1999. It moved with a speed of about 300 km per hour and devastated 10 coastal districts of Odisha. Over 10,000 people were killed, 200 villages were completely washed away, several hundred thousand cattle died and property worth ₹ 10,000 crores was destroyed. Countless number of people became homeless. Hunger, starvation and epidemic brought in a lot of suffering.



Cyclone in Bay of Bengal

## Summary of the Lesson

- The Earth is surrounded by an envelope of air called the atmosphere.
- The atmosphere is composed of gases such as nitrogen, oxygen, carbon dioxide, etc. along with water vapour and dust particles.
- The atmosphere is divided into five layers, namely, troposphere, stratosphere, mesosphere, thermosphere and exosphere.
- Weather refers to the condition of the atmosphere over a small area for a given period of time.
- The average weather conditions over a large area and for a long period of time is called climate.
- The different elements of weather and climate are temperature, air pressure, humidity, winds, precipitation, etc.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Imaginary lines joining places of same atmospheric pressure above sea level is called:  
(a) isotherms (b) isobars  
(c) isotopes (d) isohyets
2. The layer of the atmosphere which is rich in ozone:  
(a) stratosphere (b) mesosphere  
(c) exosphere (d) thermosphere
3. Loo is an example of:  
(a) permanent winds. (b) periodic winds.  
(c) local winds. (d) variable winds.
4. The temperature at which air gets saturated:  
(a) boiling point. (b) melting point.  
(c) saturation point. (d) dew point.
5. The study of weather:  
(a) climatology. (b) astrology.  
(c) astronomy. (d) meteorology.

### II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.

1. The envelope of air surrounding the Earth is called .....  
(a) biosphere (b) atmosphere
2. The amount of moisture present in air is called .....  
(a) humidity. (b) temperature.

3. Winds which blow over a particular period of time over a particular area are called .....  
 (a) permanent winds (b) periodic winds
4. Lines joining places of equal rainfall are called .....  
 (a) isobars (b) isohyets
5. .... is used for finding the direction of wind.  
 (a) Wind vane (b) Anemometer

**III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.**

1. The stratosphere is rich in oxygen. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Temperature is measured by a wet and dry bulb thermometer. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Rainfall is measured by a barometer. \_\_\_\_\_
4. There is low pressure at the equator and high pressure at the poles. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The temperature decreases as we go on high altitudes. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Match the columns.**

- | Column A       | Column B                                  |
|----------------|---|
| 1. Temperature | (a) Anemometer                            |
| 2. Pressure    | (b) Wet and dry bulb thermometer          |
| 3. Humidity    | (c) Six's maximum and minimum thermometer |
| 4. Rainfall    | (d) Barometer                             |
| 5. Wind speed  | (e) Rain gauge                            |

**V. Short Answers Questions.**

1. Name the two predominant gases in the atmosphere.
2. What is the greenhouse effect?
3. What is the role of ozone in the atmosphere?
4. Define the term 'precipitation'.
5. How are clouds formed?

**VI. Long Answer Questions.**

1. Differentiate between permanent winds and periodic winds.
2. With the help of a diagram, explain the four layers of the atmosphere.
3. Draw a diagram to show the permanent pressure and wind belts of the world. Explain why there is always low pressure at the equator and high pressure at the poles.
4. What is global warming? What are its consequences?
5. How is weather different from the climate of a place?

## VII. Projects and Activities

1. From newspapers, collect the maximum temperature, minimum temperature, humidity and rainfall data for one week.
2. Visit a meteorological station and write a report about how weather data is computed.
3. Using the Internet, collect pictures of various meteorological instruments such as rain gauge, wet and dry bulb thermometer, barometer, wind vane, anemometer and Six's maximum and minimum thermometer. Paste these pictures in your scrapbook and write their uses.
4. In this chapter, you have studied about the permanent pressure belts and permanent winds. Keeping them in mind, prepare a write-up in about 50 words on: Hot deserts that are located on the western margins of the continents in the tropical zone.
  - Mention the names of the hot deserts and their location.
  - Mention the direction of trade winds in the tropical zone.
  - The offshore nature of trade winds in the hot deserts.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Human beings pollute the atmosphere they live in. What suggestions can you give to keep the environment clean?

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Why are the ultraviolet rays of the Sun harmful to living beings?

# 5

## WATER

### New Words to Remember

**Oceans:** Large water bodies surrounding the continents on Earth.

**Salinity:** Quantity of salts dissolved in ocean water.

**Waves:** Upward and downward movements of oceanic water at its own place due to the action of winds or other influences.

**Currents:** Constant flow of the surface or deep oceanic water in a definite direction due to the influence of the permanent winds.

**Tides:** Rise and fall in the water level of oceans as a result of the gravitational attraction of the moon.

**Tsunami:** Huge waves caused due to the underwater earthquakes, landslides, volcanic eruptions and meteorite impact.

Out of the three constituents of the environment — lithosphere, hydrosphere and atmosphere, hydrosphere has its own special importance. This is because it is believed that life on Earth originated in water. Even today, the number of living beings in water bodies are more than that on land. Water is considered to be vital for life. Plants and animals cannot survive without water. Along with carbon dioxide, water vapour is equally responsible for the regulation of temperature in the atmosphere. Evidently, hydrosphere also has its influence on the atmosphere.

### DISTRIBUTION OF WATER ON EARTH

On Earth, water is present in the form of rivers, tanks, lakes, snowfields, underground water, seas, oceans, etc. They are all collectively known as the **hydrosphere**. Seventy-one per cent of the Earth's surface is covered by water. In the Southern Hemisphere, water area is more while in the Northern Hemisphere, land area is more. Ninety-seven per cent of the hydrosphere present on Earth is in the form of seas and oceans and only three per cent of the hydrosphere is in the form of rivers, lakes, tanks, glaciers, etc. However, sea water cannot be used by humans due to the salts dissolved in it. It is only the three per cent freshwater present in rivers, wells, lakes and underground which can be used for fulfilling daily needs and drinking.

From space, Earth seems to shine with a bluish tinge due to the presence of water. Hence, it is also called the **Blue Planet** or 'Watery Planet'. Earth is the only planet which has hydrosphere.

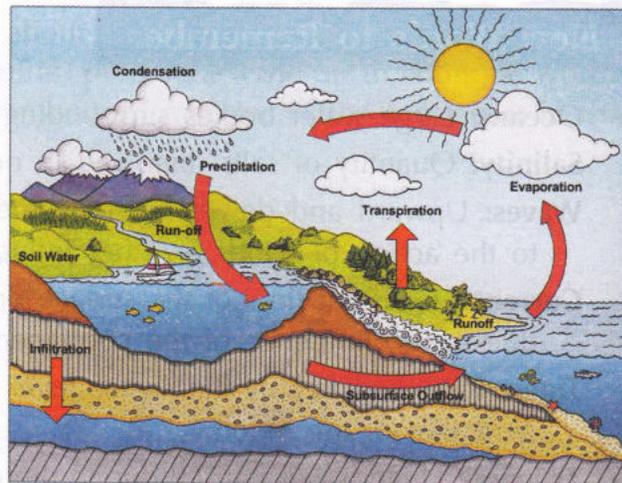
**DO YOU KNOW?**

The World Water Day is celebrated on 22 March every year.

## WATER CYCLE OR HYDROLOGICAL CYCLE

The amount of water present on Earth is balanced due to the water cycle. **Water cycle** is the process by which water changes its forms continuously and circulates between the atmosphere, the oceans and the land.

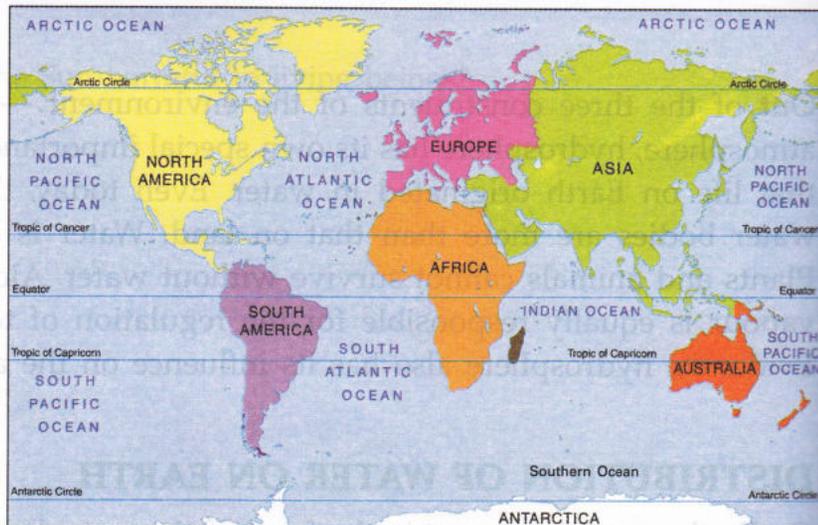
Water enters the atmosphere through evaporation and returns to the earth by condensation and precipitation. Precipitation that falls on land evaporates, condenses and again falls on land in the form of precipitation or rainfall. This cyclic movement of water is mainly responsible for the distribution of moisture over the earth's surface.



The water cycle

## OCEANS

The oceans are the primary source of water on earth. They are large water bodies located around the continents. The five major oceans on earth are — 1. Pacific Ocean 2. Atlantic Ocean 3. Indian Ocean 4. Arctic Ocean and 5. Southern (Antarctic) Ocean.



Oceans

## SALINITY

The water of oceans is salty while that of rivers is fresh. Sea water is salty or saline due to the presence of salts in water. The oceans contain large amount of dissolved mineral matter of which sodium chloride constitutes more than 77%. Magnesium, calcium and potassium are the other important components which make the sea-water saline. The quantity of salts dissolved in the ocean water is called **salinity**. Normal salinity of the sea water is 35 grams of salt dissolved in 1000 gram water. The presence of salt in the seas is due to the rocks present in them and the minerals brought by the rivers.

Water of all the seas is not equally saline. The quantity of salt is different in each sea. Salinity of the seas is affected by—(i) addition of freshwater, (ii) rate of evaporation, (iii) ocean currents.

Salinity of those seas remains low where rivers continue to pour freshwater in large quantities. In the south of India, there is Bay of Bengal on one side and the Arabian Sea on the other. Out of the two, salinity of the Arabian Sea is higher. Can you tell why?

**Rate of evaporation** also affects the salinity of the seas. Due to greater evaporation, the percentage of salt increases. That is why the salinity of the seas located near the torrid regions is above average.

Moreover, **ocean currents** also affect the salinity. Freshwater from the polar regions is carried towards the equatorial regions by ocean currents and saline water present near the equator is distributed towards the polar regions.

Salinity is maximum in the seas/oceans located near the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn because the number of rivers and the incidence of rain is low in these areas but the temperature is generally high. Hence, evaporation is more and supply of freshwater is less. Evidently, there is an increase in salinity. Evaporation is high even near the equator but due to heavy rains, many rivers keep supplying freshwater in large quantities and hence, the salinity remains low.

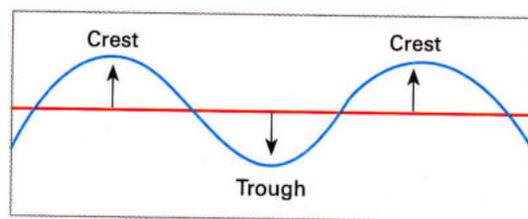
Salinity is relatively higher in the seas which are partially surrounded by land such as the Mediterranean Sea, the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf. The Dead Sea has the maximum salinity.

## CIRCULATION OF THE OCEANIC WATER OR ITS MOVEMENTS

Water of the oceans is never still. Many factors remain active to keep it moving. The movement of oceanic water can be broadly categorised as:

### 1. WAVES

Upward and downward movements of the oceanic water are known as waves. In it, water does not leave its place. The water in the ocean rises and falls alternately. Waves are formed due to the action of winds. The size and force of a wave depends upon the speed and duration of the wind. Water rises from the surface to an appreciable height under the influence of wind and then falls due to the gravitational pull. The highest and the lowest points of a wave are known as **crest** and **trough** respectively. Waves remain confined to the surface of water. They have no



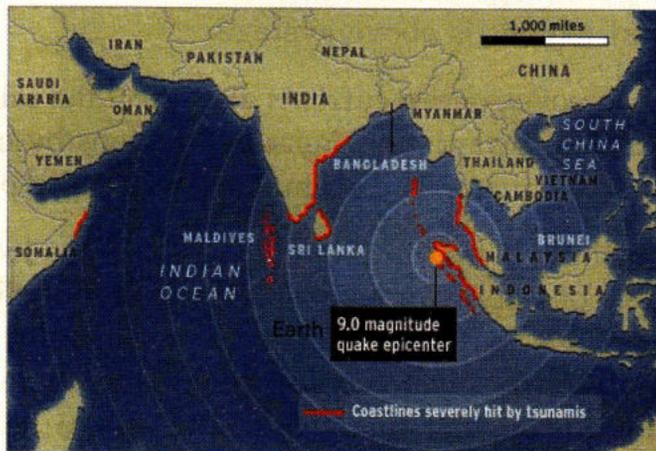
effect in deep waters. Waves caused by stormy winds coupled with cyclones cause destruction to lives and property. Earthquakes and volcanoes can also create waves in the oceans.

## Case Study

### Tsunami (26 December 2004)

Tsunamis are always created by the movement of the sea floor. They are caused by earthquakes which occur under the sea floor of the ocean. A devastating tsunami hit 11 South-East Asian countries on 26 December 2004 killing more than 1,50,000 people.

In India, according to the official estimates, 10,136 people were killed and thousands became homeless by the tsunami which originated near the Indonesian Island of Sumatra and hit the southern peninsular coast on 26 December 2004. It was triggered by an earthquake in the Indian Ocean which measured 9.0 on the Richter scale.



Tsunami affected countries

## 2. CURRENTS

Currents are another movement of the oceanic water which flow regularly, constantly and in a definite direction on the surface or sub-surface of the oceans. Currents are formed only in those areas which are under the influence of the permanent winds. These currents keep flowing in the direction of winds. Besides winds, other factors such as rotation of the Earth, gravitational pull, rain, evaporation, pressure gradient, difference in temperature, salinity, etc. are also responsible for the creation of currents.

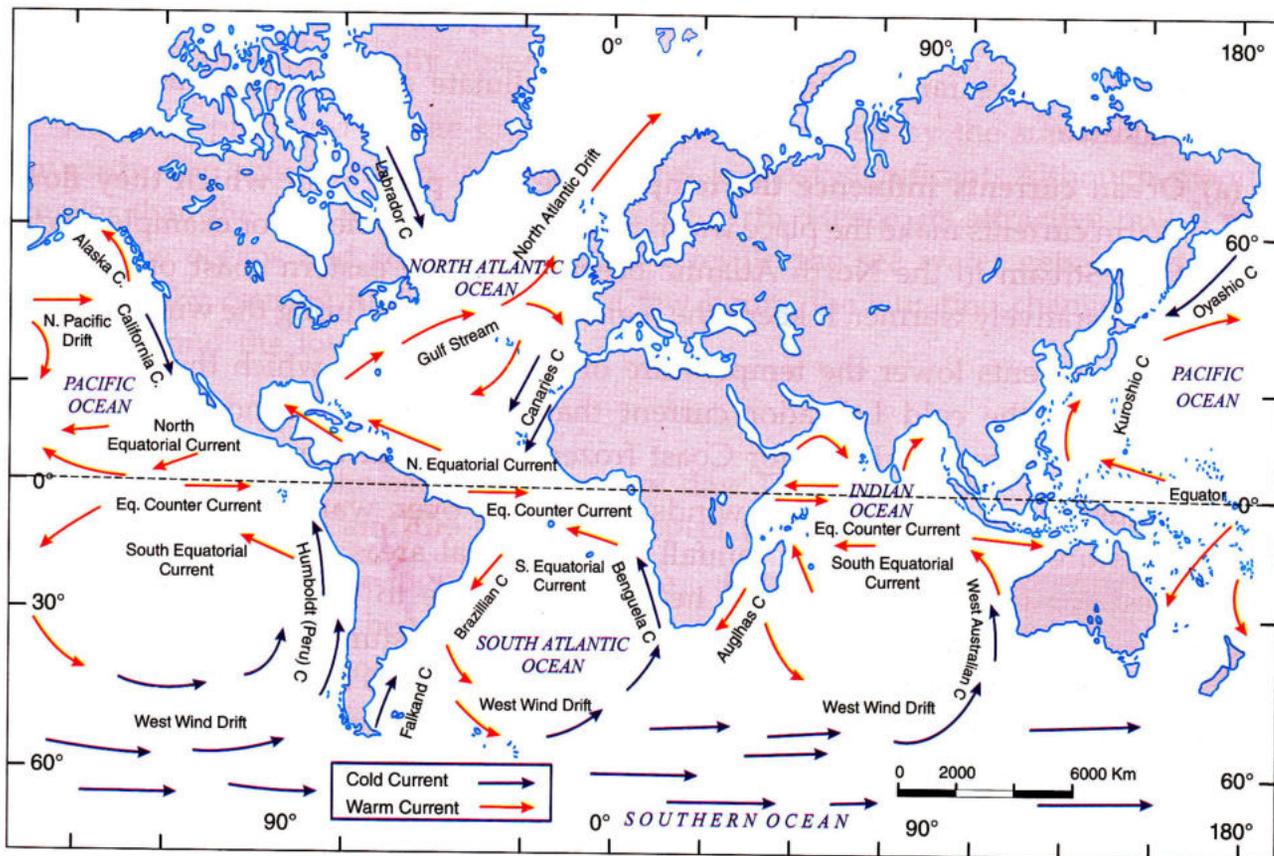
Due to currents, water of the oceans keeps circulating from one place to another.

### Types of Ocean Currents

Ocean currents are of two types—warm currents and cold currents.

**Warm currents** generally flow from the equatorial regions towards the polar regions. The temperature of their water is slightly higher than the surrounding water.

**Cold currents** generally flow from the polar regions towards the equatorial regions. The temperature of their water is slightly lower than the surrounding water.



World: Distribution of ocean currents

Table 5.1

Northern Hemisphere	Southern Hemisphere
<i>Pacific Ocean</i>	
North equatorial current (warm)	South equatorial current (warm)
Kuroshio current (warm)	East Australian current (warm)
North Pacific current (warm)	West Wind Drift (cold)
California current (cold)	Peru current (cold)
<i>Atlantic Ocean</i>	
North Equatorial current (warm)	South equatorial current (warm)
Gulf stream (warm)	Brazil current (warm)
North Atlantic Drift (warm)	West Wind Drift (cold)
Canary current (cold)	Benguela current (cold)
Labrador current (cold)	Falkland current (cold)
<i>Indian Ocean</i>	
North Equatorial current (warm)	South Equatorial current (warm)
Monsoon Drift (warm; changes direction seasonally)	Mozambique current (warm)
	West Australian current (cold)

## Effects of Ocean Currents

Ocean currents have far-reaching effects on the climate and economic activities in the coastal areas.

- (a) **Ocean currents influence the temperature of a place near which they flow:** Warm currents make the place warmer, near which they flow. For example, warm Gulf Stream in the North Atlantic ocean keeps the eastern coast of the USA comparatively warmer. It keeps the region ice free even during the winter season. Cold currents lower the temperature of the places near which they flow. For example, the cold Labrador current that flows along the north-east North America keeps the Labrador Coast frozen throughout the year.
- (b) **Influence on rainfall:** The winds that blow over warm currents pick up moisture and bring heavy rainfall to the coastal areas. Eastern USA and the west coast of Europe receives heavy rainfall due to this reason. Winds that blow over cold currents do not pick up any moisture and are, hence, cool and dry. They bring scanty or no rainfall. It is due to this reason that deserts are formed on the western coasts and continents along which cold currents generally flow. The Atacama deserts have been formed due to the cold Peru current that flows along the south-west coast of South America.
- (c) **Fishing grounds:** When a cold current meets a warm current, it is ideal for the growth of planktons which are the food for fish. These attract a lot of fish and make these areas good fishing grounds. The fishing grounds of Newfoundland have been developed due to the meeting of the cold Labrador current and the warm Gulf Stream.
- (d) **Influence on navigation:** Ships prefer to move along the direction of the currents as they help them to gain speed which in turn saves time and fuel.

Warm currents melt ice in the cold regions and keep the ports ice free. It is for this reason that the Norway port is open throughout the year even though it lies in high latitudes. Cold currents keep the ports frozen. The Labrador coast remains frozen throughout the year.

When warm and cold currents meet, thick fog is formed which is very dangerous for the ships as it reduces the visibility. It is for this reason that Newfoundland is called 'the graveyard of a thousand ships'.

### 3. TIDES

Sea water rises and falls at regular intervals twice every day. This daily rise and fall of water in the seas, at regular intervals is called **tide**. The rising of water to its highest level is called **high tide**. When water falls to its lowest level, it is called **low tide**. During high tides, the sea water enters the interior parts of the coast up

to quite some distance. During low tide, it flows back to the sea. The rise and fall of tides can be conveniently observed in coastal areas.

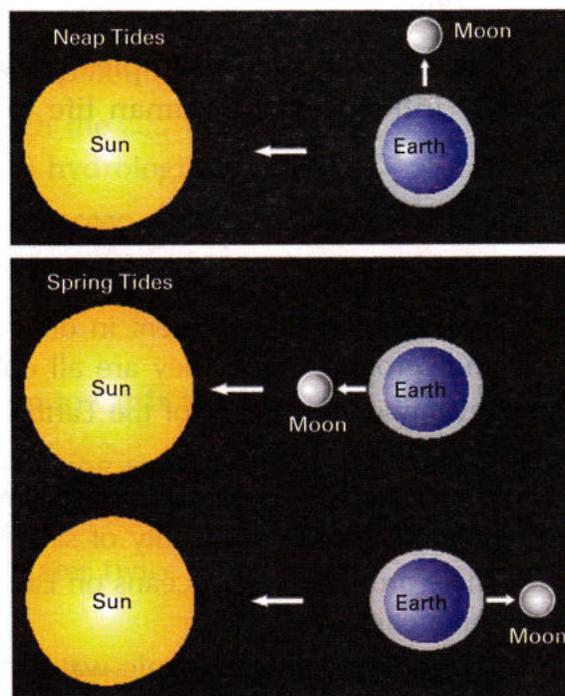
Tides are produced by the gravitational pull exercised by the sun and the moon on earth. The role of moon in causing tides is most significant. Although moon is smaller than the sun, it is much nearer to the earth. Hence, its attractive pull is most felt on the oceans and seas on Earth. As a result, the sea water gets attracted and rises, thereby causing high tides. After a few hours, the situation changes, the water level falls and the low tides occur.

### Types of Tides

Tides do not rise to the same height every day. They are influenced by the relative position of the moon and the sun with respect to the earth.

(a) **Spring tides:** The highest level of the high tides is reached on the full moon and the new moon days because on these days, the Sun, Earth and the Moon are in a straight line. These tides are called **spring tides**.

(b) **Neap tides:** When the Moon is in the first and last quarter, the Sun and the Moon make a right angle to the Earth's centre. The gravitational pull of the Sun and the Moon tend to balance each other. The high tides that occur then have the lowest height. These tides are called **neap tides**.



Tides

### Uses of Tides

Tides are very useful in many ways:

- They prevent the silting of harbours — the silt that is brought down by rivers is deposited in the harbours. High tides wash away this mud and prevent the silting of harbours.
- High tides increase the depth of water by raising the water level. This makes it convenient for the ships to enter or leave the harbours safely. The ports of Kandla in Gujarat and Haldia in the West Bengal depend on such tides.
- The energy of the tides can be used as a source for generating electricity. For example, Tidal power stations have been set up in Japan and Canada where tidal energy is converted into electricity.

## MAN AND THE OCEANS

Oceans affect the human life both directly and indirectly.

- (i) Man gets a large variety of mineral substances, food articles and resources of energy like petroleum from the oceans.
- (ii) From the transportation point of view, marine traffic is convenient and cheap.
- (iii) Oceans are also called **climate regulators** because their effect regulates the temperature and rainfall. The water gets warm and cold slowly. Therefore, large quantity of insolation remains absorbed in the sea water. This energy is transferred to cold regions through warm currents which is very beneficial for the people living there.
- (iv) It is the oceanic water which evaporates and then comes to us in the form of rain.

A number of such examples prove the utility of oceans for man. Oceans have actually influenced the human life to a great extent.

### Summary of the Lesson

- On Earth, water is present in different forms such as oceans, seas, lakes, rivers and underground water. They are all collectively known as the hydrosphere.
- Seventy-one per cent of the Earth's surface is covered by water and 29 per cent by land.
- The ocean water contains huge amounts of salt which reaches the oceans through different sources. Quantity of salts dissolved in ocean water is known as salinity.
- There are five major oceans on Earth — Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic and Southern (Antarctic).
- The movements of oceanic water can be categorised as—waves, currents and tides.
- Ocean currents influence the climate and economic activities in the coastal areas.
- Oceans provide many benefits to man both directly and indirectly.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Largest water bodies on Earth:  
(a) rivers                      (b) seas                      (c) lakes                      (d) oceans
2. The constant movements of ocean water in a particular direction:  
(a) waves                      (b) tides  
(c) ocean currents                      (d) None of the above

3. Salinity of the ocean depends upon:
 

(a) temperature	(b) rate of evaporation
(c) addition of freshwater	(d) All of the above
4. Warm currents flow from:
 

(a) low latitudes to high latitudes	(b) high latitudes to low latitudes
(c) high altitudes to low altitudes	(d) low altitudes to high altitudes
5. The Labrador current and the Gulf Stream meet at:
 

(a) Carribean island	(b) Japan
(c) Newfoundland island	(d) UK

**II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.**

1. The Earth consists of ..... per cent of water.
 

(a) 78	(b) 71
--------	--------
2. The amount of salt dissolved in sea water is called .....
 

(a) salinity	(b) solubility
--------------	----------------
3. Water gets renewed and recharged through the .....
 

(a) hydrogen cycle	(b) hydrological cycle
--------------------	------------------------
4. Upward and downward movements of the ocean water are called .....
 

(a) ocean currents	(b) waves
--------------------	-----------
5. Tides are caused by .....
 

(a) rotation of the earth	(b) gravitational pull of the moon and sun towards the Earth
---------------------------	--

**III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.**

1. The Dead Sea has the maximum salinity. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Currents are the rise and fall of the sea water twice a day. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The Peru current is a warm current. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Warm currents tend to decrease the temperature of the coastal regions. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Tides are useful for navigators. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Match the columns.**

**Column A**

1. The tides occuring on full moon and new moon days
2. North Atlantic Drift
3. Average salinity of the ocean
4. Amount of freshwater on the Earth
5. The largest and the deepest ocean

**Column B**

- (a) Pacific Ocean
- (b) 35 per cent
- (c) Spring tide
- (d) Warm current
- (e) 3 per cent

**V. Short Answers Questions.**

1. What is meant by hydrosphere?
2. What is high tide?

- Why is the Earth called the 'Blue Planet'?
- Define the term 'salinity'.
- What are tsunamis?
- Name three types of movements of the ocean water.

#### VI. Long Answer Questions.

- Why are oceans important to man?
- State four effects of ocean currents.
- Explain the occurrence of tides with the help of a diagram.
- How are tides useful to us?
- Why is Newfoundland called the 'graveyard of a thousand ships'?

#### VII. With the help of the given clues, search the words horizontally in the given wordsearch.

A	N	O	M	W	A	V	E	S	T
T	S	U	N	A	M	I	D	E	F
V	W	X	Y	T	Z	T	N	I	O
R	S	O	C	E	A	N	S	U	V
L	S	K	U	R	O	S	H	I	O
Q	R	S	T	C	D	F	G	H	O
Z	Y	X	M	Y	N	R	T	U	V
E	F	P	A	C	I	F	I	C	N
M	N	A	T	L	A	N	T	I	C
O	P	R	T	E	U	V	X	Z	Y

#### CLUES

- Largest bodies of water
- Huge waves caused due to undersea earthquakes
- Largest and deepest ocean
- Upward and downward movements of sea water
- A warm current near Japan
- Busiest ocean

#### VIII. Map Work

On an outline map of the world, mark and name the important ocean currents. Use red pen to mark the warm currents and blue pen to mark the cold currents.

#### IX. Projects and Activities

- Organise a slogan writing competition on the theme – Conservation of Water. Each student has to write a slogan. It should be catchy and meaningful. The teacher can be requested to judge the slogans.
- Tides can be used as a source of generating electricity. Find out more about this alternate source of energy. A PowerPoint presentation can be shown in the class on this theme.

### **VALUE-BASED QUESTION**

Find out about the diseases caused due to drinking impure water. Discuss in class the things you should do and the things you should not do to avoid these diseases and keep yourself healthy and fit.

### **HOTS: THINK BEYOND**

What is the difference between a wave and a tide?

### **ANSWERS TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE**

- |           |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Oceans | 2. Tsunami  | 3. Pacific  |
| 4. Waves  | 5. Kuroshio | 6. Atlantic |

# 6

## NATURAL VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE

### New Words to Remember

**Vegetation:** Different plant species living in association with each other in a given environment.

**Forest:** A large tract covered by trees and shrubs.

**Equatorial Forests:** Forests growing in hot and humid climate in the areas near the equator. These are also called evergreen forests.

**Monsoon Forests:** Forests found in tropical regions. The trees of these forests shed their leaves during the dry season.

**Temperate Evergreen Forests:** Evergreen forests which grow in areas of normal rainfall in the temperate zone.

**Temperate Deciduous Forests:** Deciduous forests found in areas of less rainfall and high temperature in the temperate zone.

**Coniferous Forests:** Forests found in the colder regions where the trees are conical in shape.

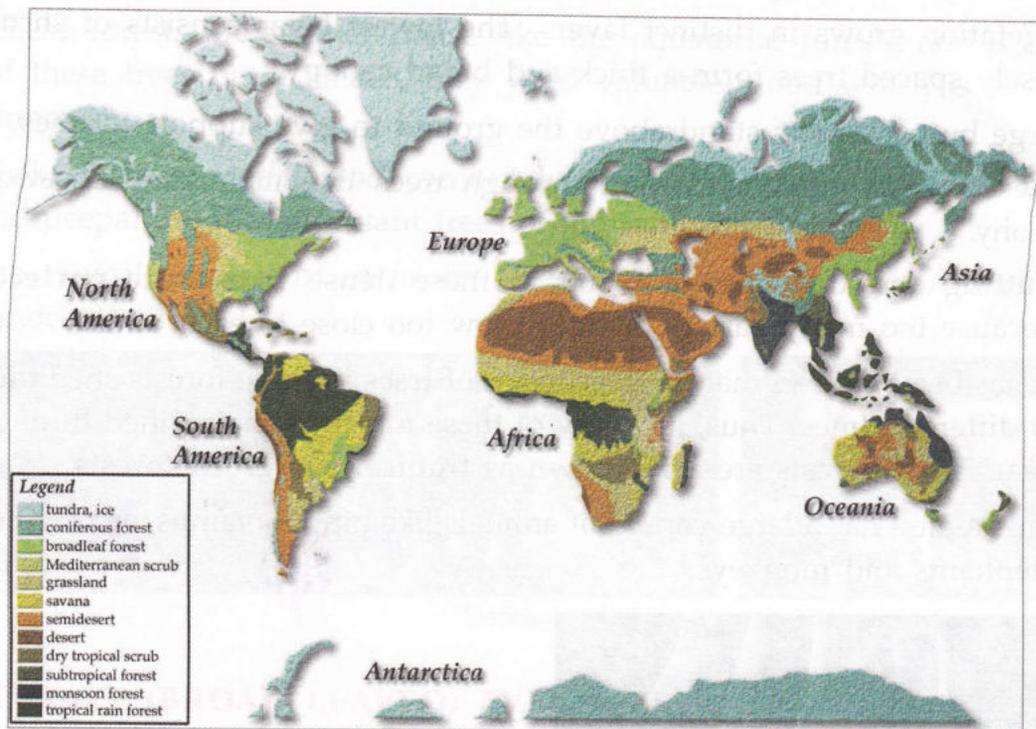
**Wild Animals:** Animals living in the forest areas under natural conditions.

It is a well-known fact that Earth is a unique planet due to the presence of biosphere. Natural forests and wild animals are a part of this biosphere.

There are forests, thorny shrubs and grasslands on Earth in the form of natural vegetation. Factors like climate, relief (topography) and soil affect the vegetation. The kind of vegetation differs from region to region depending upon the type of climate, soil and landforms. As a result, there are innumerable varieties of vegetation. In India alone, there are more than 45000 species of plants.

### FORESTS

A vast area covered mainly by trees and shrubs are called forests. Depending upon the temperature and rainfall dense and open forest grow. It is a complex ecosystem that supports various life forms.



World—Natural vegetation

The forests found on Earth have been classified in the following main categories.

### 1. EQUATORIAL FORESTS OR TROPICAL EVERGREEN FORESTS

As the name indicates, these forests are found in areas near the equator. Thus, the forests of this category are mostly found in the Amazon basin of South America, Congo basin of Africa, West African Coastlands, Malaysia, Indonesia and other countries of South-East Asia.



Equatorial forest

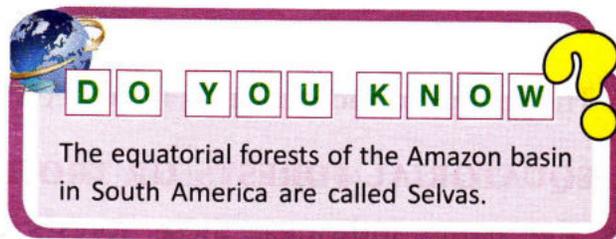
#### Characteristics

- (i) The areas between 5°N and 5°S latitudes are the best for their growth.
- (ii) The climate is hot and wet throughout the year and they receive an annual rainfall of more than 200 centimetres.
- (iii) These forests are very dense. In some areas, they are so dense that the Sun's rays are unable to reach the ground.
- (iv) The trees growing in these forests are quite tall. They compete with each other to rise high for getting sunlight, which fails to reach the lower part of the forest due to dense vegetation growth.

- (v) Vegetation grows in distinct layers. The lowest layer consists of shrubs. The closely spaced trees form a thick and broad canopy.
- (vi) Large buttress roots stand above the ground to give support to trees.
- (vii) These forests yield hardwood through trees like mahogany, rosewood and ebony.
- (viii) Cutting and transporting wood in these dense forests are not economical because too many variety of trees grow too close to each other.
- (ix) It has been noticed that all the species of trees in these forests shed their leaves at different times. Thus, greenery of these forests is maintained throughout the year. These forests are also known as **tropical evergreen forests**.
- (x) This region has a large variety of animals like hippopotamus, snakes, crocodiles, elephants and monkeys.



Large buttress roots of equatorial trees



## 2. TROPICAL DECIDUOUS OR MONSOON FORESTS

The tropical deciduous forests are found in the regions of monsoon rainfall in South Asia such as India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Thailand, Malaysia, Vietnam, and Indonesia are the main areas of monsoon forests. These forests are also found in abundance in the northern parts of Australia, eastern regions of Africa, north-eastern part of South America and in the central part of North America.

### Characteristics:

- (i) Tropical Deciduous forests are found in the tropical zone which get annual rainfall between 100 centimetres to 200 centimetres.
- (ii) The trees shed their leaves during the dry spell of summer. Hence, they are known as tropical deciduous forests.
- (iii) They are also called **monsoon forests** because they are typically found in the monsoon region.

- (iv) These forests are neither dense like the equatorial forests nor is the wood of these trees hard. Hence, they yield valuable wood which is of economic importance.
- (v) Teak, shisham, sandalwood, coconut, bamboo, mahogany, neem, mango, banyan and peepal are the important trees of monsoon forests.
- (vi) The typical animals of monsoon forests are elephants, tigers, leopards and rhinoceros.



Tiger



Elephant



Lion

### 3. TEMPERATE (BROAD LEAVED) EVERGREEN FORESTS

These forests are spread over European countries near the Mediterranean Sea such as Greece, Portugal, Spain, southern France, Italy, Turkey and Serbia and Montenegro. They are also found in the south-western parts of Australia, central part of Chile and in the Valley of California.



Temperate evergreen forest

#### Characteristics

- (i) These forests lie between  $30^{\circ}$  N and  $40^{\circ}$  N and  $30^{\circ}$  S and  $40^{\circ}$  S latitudes on the western part of continents.
- (ii) The temperature here is moderate, *i.e.*, neither very cold during winters nor very hot during summers.
- (iii) The annual rainfall in these areas is also normal, *i.e.*, 75 centimetres to 100 centimetres and occurs during the winter season.
- (iv) The summer season is generally long and dry. It has direct bearing on the vegetation here.
- (v) In spite of less rainfall and dry summer, these forests are evergreen and do not shed their leaves, therefore, also known as evergreen forests. There are some reasons for this. First, the summer here is not so hot as in the tropical zone. Secondly, there is not much transpiration due to the greasy leaves of trees and they make full use of underground water with the help of their deep roots.

- (vi) The bark of these trees are quite thick to withstand the long dry spell of summers.
- (vii) Some of the important trees which grow in these forests are oak, olive, chestnut, eucalyptus and walnut. Their wood is used for making furniture, construction work and in various industries. Oil is extracted from oak, olive and eucalyptus trees which is used in medicines.
- (viii) Various fruit trees are also found in these forests in plenty such as lemon, orange, pomegranate, mulberry and pear.

#### 4. TEMPERATE (BROAD LEAVED) DECIDUOUS FORESTS

These forests extend to the cold regions of Europe, Asia and North America. They are widely spread in China, Japan, Korea, northern parts of Russia, Poland, Belgium, north Germany, Denmark, west Canada and St. Lawrence Basin (east Canada).

##### Characteristics

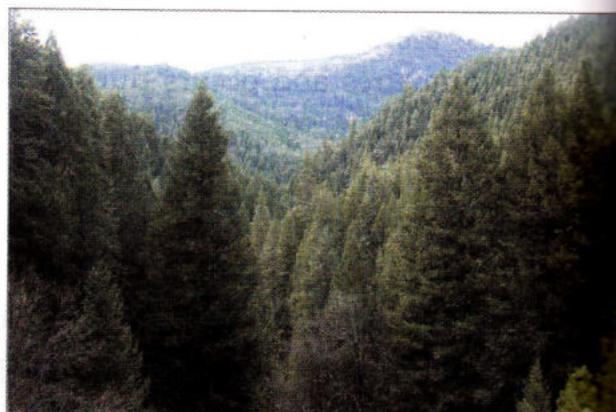
- (i) These forests are found in the temperate zone ( $30^{\circ}$  N to  $60^{\circ}$  N and  $30^{\circ}$  S to  $60^{\circ}$  S), but in these areas, winter season is predominant.
- (ii) These forests grow in those areas that receive less rainfall and low temperature. The average annual rainfall is 50 centimetres and the average temperature is  $6^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (iii) The trees of these forests shed their leaves during the period of water shortage. Hence, they are also known as **deciduous forests**.
- (iv) The main trees found in these forests are walnut, birch, chestnut, oak, ash, elm and beech.



Temperate deciduous forest

#### 5. CONIFEROUS FORESTS

Coniferous forests exist in areas located at high altitudes like the Himalayan region, although the Himalayas are adjacent to the tropical zone. In the Siberian areas of Russia, these forests are known as **Taiga forests**. These forests are of great economic importance. Canada, Norway, Sweden, Finland, Siberian regions of Russia, high altitude regions of the Himalayas and the Alps are famous for coniferous forests.



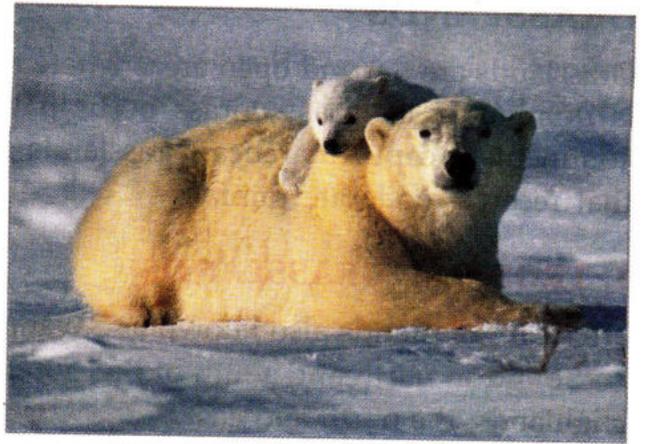
Coniferous forest

### Characteristics

- (i) Coniferous forests are generally found between  $60^{\circ}$  and  $70^{\circ}$  north and south latitudes.
- (ii) These trees are well-adapted to less rainfall.
- (iii) Trees of deodar, spruce, silver fir, pine and kail are found in plenty in these forests.
- (iv) The shape of these trees is conical and their stems are not very thick.

At a little height, there is a big circle of leaves and branches round the stems which reduce in size with an increase in height. At the top, it seems to be pointed. It appears that a cone is placed with its base downwards and tip upwards. That is why they are called coniferous forests.

- (v) The branches and leaves of these trees are bent downwards. The snow after falling on the trees slips and falls on the ground and the tree is not damaged.
- (vi) The trees in this category of forests grow up to 30 metres in height and the leaves are thin and pointed like needles.
- (vii) The wood of these trees is soft which is very suitable for making furniture, paper and matches.
- (viii) Silver foxes, minks and polar bears are the common animals found here.



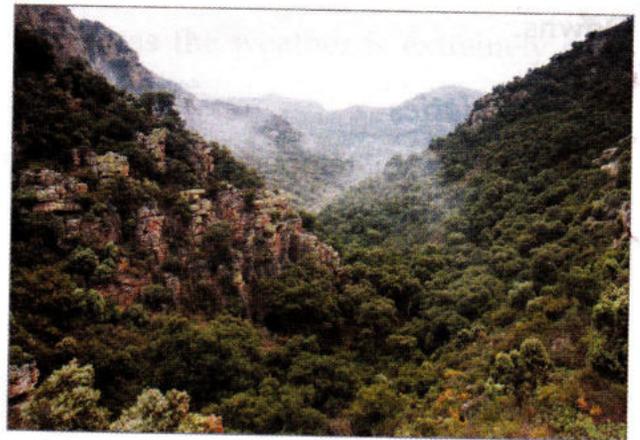
Polar bear with its baby

## 6. MEDITERRANEAN VEGETATION

Mediterranean vegetation is found around the Mediterranean Sea in areas of Europe, Africa and Asia. Other than these areas, Mediterranean forests are found in California, central Chile and south-west Australia.

### Characteristics

- (i) There is a moderate rainfall of about 80 centimetres during the winter season.
- (ii) The summer season is usually dry.
- (iii) Such climate is suitable for trees of citrus fruits. So people grow oranges, figs, olives, grapes and peaches in these areas.
- (iv) There is hardly any wildlife found in this part of the earth.



Mediterranean forests

## GRASSLANDS

Grasslands are flat and open areas where the vegetation is dominated by grass. Grass occur naturally on all continents except Antarctica. Grasslands grow in areas that receive moderate rainfall.

### 1. TROPICAL GRASSLANDS

**Tropical grasslands** also known as Savanna grasslands, are found in north and south of the Congo basin of Africa, parts of Brazil, the Guiana Highlands, the north and east of the Australian desert and parts of the Deccan Plateau in India.

#### Characteristics

- (i) The grasses are deciduous and usually grow to a height of 2 metres.
- (ii) The grass grows rapidly in the hot and wet season but withers away in the dry season.
- (iii) These grasslands are suitable for dairy farming.
- (iv) Drought-resistant trees such as, bamboo and eucalyptus grow among tall grasses. The trees are plenty in number in areas of higher rainfall.
- (v) Zebras, giraffes, deer, leopards and elephants are common in these areas.



Grassland



Giraffes

### 2. TEMPERATE GRASSLANDS

**Temperate grasslands** in Eurasia are known as the **Steppes**, in North America the **Prairies**, in South America the **Pampas**, in Africa the **Velds** and in Australia the **Downs**.

#### Characteristics

- (i) Grasses in temperate grassland are shorter and less coarse than in tropical grasslands.
- (ii) The short branch grasses are 30 centimetres to 60 centimetres high depending upon the amount of rainfall.
- (iii) The trees are fewer than in tropical grasslands.
- (iv) Wild buffaloes, bison and antelopes are common in these regions.



Wild buffalo



Bison

## SHRUBS AND THORNY BUSHES

Shrubs are the woody plants that are smaller than trees. Shrub vegetation is a general term for vegetation dominated by shrubs. This type of vegetation is found in the dry areas.

### 1. DESERT VEGETATION

The plants in tropical deserts have adapted to extreme drought climate. Some do not have leaves while, the leaves of some plants are either tough, waxy or needle-shaped to avoid transpiration as well as to prevent these plants from being eaten by animals living there. The roots of the plants here are very long and run deep underground to absorb underground water from deep below the Earth's surface. The stems of these plants are quite thick and fleshy as they retain water for the entire plant to survive the long spells of drought. The most common plants are cacti, thorny bushes and coarse grasses.



Desert vegetation

### 2. TUNDRA VEGETATION

The Tundra vegetation consists of lichens, mosses, flowering shrubs and very few stunted trees. The vegetation is thin and scattered as the weather is extremely cold. Seal, walrus, polar bear and snow foxes are found here.

## WILDLIFE

Forests are important and useful not only for trees and their products but also for the creatures living therein. Wildlife is an integral part of biosphere. There are lakhs of species of animals living in the forests. All the forests are not suitable for every type of animal. Therefore, different species of animals are found in various forests.

Besides giant animals like elephants, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, giraffes, etc., animals of normal sizes, and small and very small sizes are also found in forests. Carnivorous animals like lion, panther, leopard, etc. and herbivorous animals also live in forests. In monsoon forests, there is a majority of animals who can endure hot climate such as tiger, deer, monkey, etc. In the Taiga and Siberian forests, animals

like white tiger, polar bear, reindeer, etc. are found who are capable of enduring very cold climate.

Elephant, hippopotamus, rhinoceros, etc., are found in forests of areas with heavy rainfall. Reptiles are also found in almost all types of forests. Forests are full of birds of various species. Siberian cranes are the birds of the cold region. During severe cold, they migrate to India for a short period.

Lives of creatures are greatly influenced by climate. Change in climate affects them adversely. Due to different factors, a number of wildlife species have become extinct from the Earth and many others are on the verge of extinction. Some animals have become extinct due to drastic climatic changes which they could not tolerate. Another reason for the extinction of animals is hunting and poaching by men for their selfish needs and the greed to earn money. Indiscriminate deforestation by man has also contributed to the extinction of some animal species.

### CONSERVATION OF WILD LIFE

A number of wildlife sanctuaries, bioreserves, national parks and bird sanctuaries have been set up for the preservation of wild animals. Hunting of wild animals has been banned and related laws have been enacted. Animals are an important constituent of our environment. Therefore, it is the duty of man to take steps to protect their life and to make suitable arrangements for their habitat. We should endeavour to maintain ecological balance by preserving the wildlife.



DO YOU KNOW?



March 21 is celebrated as World Forest Day.

### MAN AND FORESTS

Forests are a great gift of nature to man. The wealth of forests is useful to man in more than one way. Forests regulate climate and help in causing rainfall. They also play a prominent role in controlling environmental pollution. We get wood from forests which is used in several industries and also in the manufacture of furniture. Various types of medicines are prepared from pleasant smelling plants called herbs. Forests provide nutrition to soil and check in its erosion. **They also protect the soil from floods.** They are the habitat of wild animals. We must protect forests from destruction. We should devise ways for the conservation and extension of forests. We can increase the number of trees by celebrating festivals like 'Van Mahotsava' and, thus, make up the deficiency of trees and forests on the Earth. In this way, we can make a useful contribution in making the Earth green.



Find Out

In which month is Wildlife Week observed?

## Summary of the Lesson

- Natural vegetation is classified broadly as—forests, grasslands and shrubs.
- Forests are classified into six categories—equatorial forests, monsoon forests, temperate evergreen forests, temperate deciduous forests, mediterranean vegetation and coniferous forests.
- Many species of trees are found in the world due to differences in local climate, soil and landforms.
- Evergreen forests in the equatorial region are dense. The trees here are tall and of hard wood.
- Monsoon forests are less dense. The trees are of normal height and yield good and soft wood.
- Temperate evergreen forests are less dense and have broad leaves, deep roots and hard wood.
- Temperate deciduous forests have broad leaves and hard wood. They shed their leaves during the dry season.
- In coniferous forests, the shape of trees is conical. Their leaves are thin and pointed. Their wood is soft and valuable.
- A large variety of animals of all sizes is found in forests which are important constituents of our environment.
- We must take adequate steps to protect wild animals from becoming extinct.
- Man gets a lot of benefits from forests. Therefore, it is advisable to pay more attention towards planting more trees rather than cutting them.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Forests found in hot and humid climate:  
(a) Evergreen (b) Deciduous  
(c) Coniferous (d) Grasslands
2. Which one of the following is not a species of tropical deciduous forests?  
(a) Teak (b) Sandalwood  
(c) Ivory (d) Sal
3. Which one of the following trees are found in Mediterranean forests?  
(a) Oak and olives (b) Beech and elm  
(c) Rosewood and teak (d) Rubber and ebony
4. Which one of the following is not a temperate grassland?  
(a) Savanna (b) Prairies  
(c) Downs (d) Velds

**II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.**

1. The trees which shed their leaves during a particular period are called .....  
(a) evergreen (b) deciduous
2. The temperate grasslands of North America are called the .....  
(a) Prairies (b) Pampas
3. Mosses and lichens are common in the ..... region.  
(a) coniferous (b) tundra
4. Zebras and giraffes are common in ..... grasslands.  
(a) tropical (b) temperate

**III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.**

1. The Monsoon forests are found in desert regions. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The plants in tropical deserts have adapted to extreme drought climate. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Animals are kept in cages in national parks. \_\_\_\_\_
4. In coniferous forests, trees are softwood and valuable. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Match the columns.**

Column A	Column B
1. Amazon basin	(a) Desert
2. India	(b) Coniferous forest
3. Canada	(c) Evergreen forest
4. Downs	(d) Monsoon forest
5. Cactus	(e) Temperate grasslands in Australia

**V. Short Answer Questions.**

1. In which parts of the world are monsoon forests found?
2. In spite of less rainfall, the trees in the temperate zone belong to the evergreen category. Why?
3. Equatorial forests are not commercially valuable. Explain.
4. Which type of climate supports equatorial forests?
5. In which climatic conditions are citrus fruits cultivated?

**VI. Long Answer Questions.**

1. State how forests are useful to man.
2. Differentiate between tropical evergreen and tropical deciduous forests.
3. What steps have been taken by the government for the conservation of forests and wildlife?
4. Write the importance of Mediterranean vegetation.
5. How are tropical grasslands different from temperate grasslands?

## VII. Projects and Activities

1. Divide the class into four groups. Let each group prepare a 'street play' to spread the message of conservation of forests and wildlife. Organise a competition among the four groups and let them perform in front of other students.
2. Make a poster to create awareness about the conservation of forests and wildlife.
3. Prepare a PowerPoint presentation on each vegetation type. A group of 4-5 students has to prepare a presentation on one vegetation type.
  - There should be about 10-12 slides.
  - The slides should include location, climatic requirements, importance and important plant species.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

A stray dog got injured on the road. What will you do? Tick (✓) from the given options and give reasons for your answer.

1. You will let it die on the road.
2. You will put it aside on the road.
3. You will take it to a veterinary doctor for treatment.

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

The largest mangrove forest in the world is the Sundarbans which means 'beautiful forest'. Name the tree found here in abundance from which the name 'Sundarbans' has been derived.



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 4–6)

### I. Presentation

Prepare a PowerPoint presentation on the causes and effects of global warming. Show your presentation in class and suggest some corrective measures that we should take to minimise its effects.

### II. Map Work

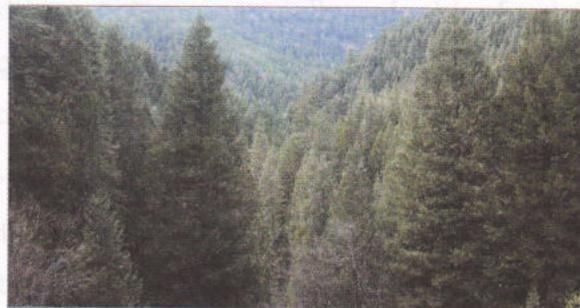
Take an outline map of the world and show the various oceans and continents on it. Colour the ocean that is named after our country.

### III. Make a Chart

Make a chart on the diseases common during rainy season. Write on it the things that you should do and the things you should not do during this season to keep you healthy. Use sketch pens or colour pencils to make your chart colourful and attractive.

### IV. Picture Description

Observe these pictures and answer the following questions.



- Identify the different types of forests.
- Where are these forests found?
- Which animals are found in these forests?



## TEST PAPER

(Based on Chapters 1–6)

Total Marks: 50

Time: 2 Hours

**I. Tick (✓) the correct answer.**

1 × 8 = 8

- The realm of water is called  
(a) atmosphere. (b) hydrosphere. (c) lithosphere. (d) biosphere.
- NIFE refers to  
(a) mantle. (b) core. (c) crust. (d) rock.
- Slate is an example of ..... rock.  
(a) igneous (b) sedimentary (c) metamorphic (d) red rock
- Moraines are depositional features formed by  
(a) rivers. (b) glaciers. (c) sea waves. (d) winds.
- Beaches are formed by the action of  
(a) rivers. (b) winds. (c) sea waves. (d) glaciers.
- Monsoon winds are examples of ..... winds.  
(a) permanent (b) seasonal (c) local (d) variable
- The periodic rise and fall of sea water is called .....  
(a) waves. (b) tides. (c) currents. (d) none
- ..... per cent of the Earth's surface is covered by water.  
(a) 21 (b) 71 (c) 50 (d) 22

**II. Match the columns.**

1 × 6 = 6

**Column A**

- Lithosphere
- Biosphere
- SIMA
- SIAL
- NIFE
- Graphite

**Column B**

- (a) Belt of living beings
- (b) Mantle
- (c) Crust
- (d) Core
- (e) Metamorphic rock
- (f) Uppermost layer of the Earth

**III. Fill in the blanks.**

1 × 6 = 6

- The average thickness of the lithosphere is about ..... km.
- The thinnest layer of the Earth is .....
- In NIFE, NI stands for ..... and FE stands for .....
- The intensity of an earthquake is maximum near the .....
- The greenhouse effect is due to the increase of ..... in the atmosphere.
- Quartzite is an example of ..... rock.

**IV. Give short answers in about 30 words each.**

**2 × 5 = 10**

1. Define the two types of Earth movements.
2. Name two factors which determine the salinity of sea water.
3. Which rocks are called primary rocks?
4. Name two factors that influence the atmospheric pressure.
5. Define dew point and precipitation.

**V. Give long answers in about 60 words each.**

**4 × 5 = 20**

1. Write three features of the troposphere.
2. Mention three uses of tides.
3. Write three characteristic features of sedimentary rocks.
4. Discuss the effects of ocean currents.
5. Describe any four landforms formed by the action of rivers.



# HUMAN ENVIRONMENT — Settlement, Transport and Communication

## New Words to Remember

**Settlements:** The places where man started living after building houses.

**Site:** The place where a building or a settlement is developed.

**Rural settlements:** The settlements where man is engaged in primary activities and which lack basic facilities.

**Urban settlements:** The developed settlements where basic facilities have been provided for and which are advanced in terms of standard of living and profession of man.

**Transport:** Means of carrying passengers or goods or both from one place to another.

**Communication:** System of transmission of information from one place to another.

**Satellite Communication System:** A communication system in which man-made satellites are launched in space to reflect radio waves which are transmitted to distant places. This communication system allows the live telecast of events occurring at remote places.

Human environment means those surroundings and conditions which are related to the existence and growth of man. As a major constituent of the biosphere, man has also influenced other realms of the Earth. His own life is also affected by the physical elements of the natural environment. However, due to his intellectual supremacy, he has not only attained dominance over other animals but has also acquired the capacity to adapt to circumstances and change them to his own advantage.

## SETTLEMENT

On studying the era of human development, we find that in ancient times, man lived as an aborigine in a wandering state. Gradually, he invented cultivation and started a more settled life. He searched for a suitable place where he could build his house. Other factors which he considered for his settlement were—favourable climate, availability of water, fertile soil and suitable land. The place which fulfills all these conditions is called **site**.

Man tried to organise his life through various discoveries like fire, metal, wheel, agriculture, etc. and developed the art of community living. Thus, he developed the qualities of cooperation and brotherhood and through steady progress, has reached the most advanced stage of science and technology in the twenty-first century.

In the context of geography, a **settlement** means a collective dwelling area of men which may be in any form like a village, city or metropolis. Depending on the time and circumstances, a tiny settlement can take the form of a large metropolis.

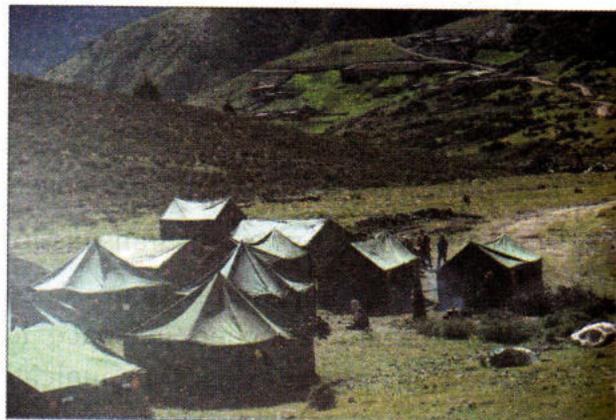
## TYPES OF SETTLEMENTS

On the basis of the types of houses people built, settlements can be broadly classified as:

- (i) Temporary settlements
- (ii) Permanent settlements

### (i) Temporary settlements

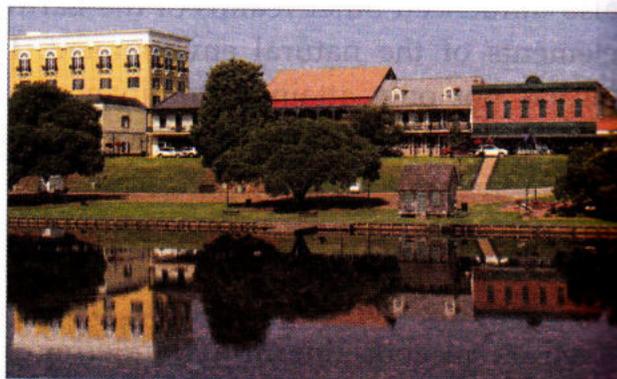
In temporary settlements, people live at a place for a short period of time. They move from one place to another in search of their livelihood. They build *kuchcha* houses for shelter. Temporary settlements are common in forests, deserts and mountains. Such settlements are also found during war or natural disaster. People living in temporary settlements are generally involved in shifting cultivation, hunting, gathering or cattle-rearing. Nomads and some tribes dwell in temporary settlements.



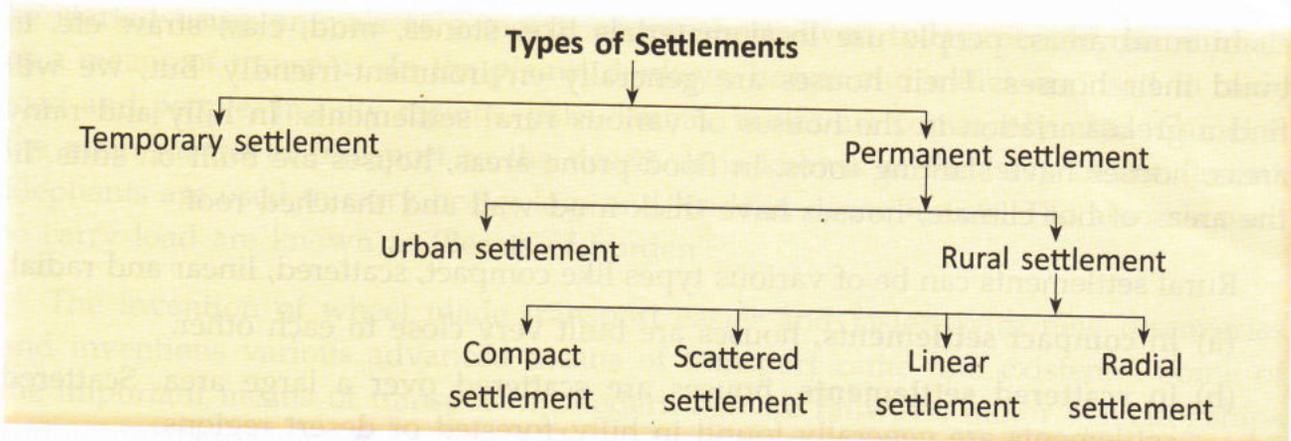
Temporary settlement

### (ii) Permanent settlements

Sometimes, over a period of time, temporary settlements take the form of permanent settlements. In such settlements people build permanent houses to live in. Permanent settlements have all the necessary facilities needed by the people who reside there. Permanent settlements can be further classified as—Urban settlement and Rural settlement. Further rural settlements can be of various types, such as, compact, scattered, linear and radial.



Permanent settlement



### **Urban Settlements**

Urban settlements are a complex structure of houses and roads. Such settlements are mostly inhabited by people who are involved in professions of secondary or tertiary sector like, industry, trade, transport and services. The population of urban areas may vary from a few thousands to lakhs and crores.

Urban settlements have acquired great importance. These settlements are preferred due to the adequate facilities of marketing, transportation, communication, education, and health. Thus, they have become a centre for business and commerce. Due to the attraction of employment and other facilities, the pressure on urban settlements is gradually increasing. As a result, daily life and personal health of people living in city/metropolis are often adversely affected due to increasing population.



Urban settlement

### **Rural Settlements**

Rural settlements are also known as 'Country side' or 'village'. These are also a composite structure of houses and roads. Such settlements are mostly inhabited by the people who are associated with activities like agriculture, pottery, cattle-rearing, fishing, forestry, craftwork, trading etc. The population of rural settlements is comparatively less dense. It may vary from a few hundreds to thousands. In rural settlements all the decisions are made by the Panchayat, a local governing body.

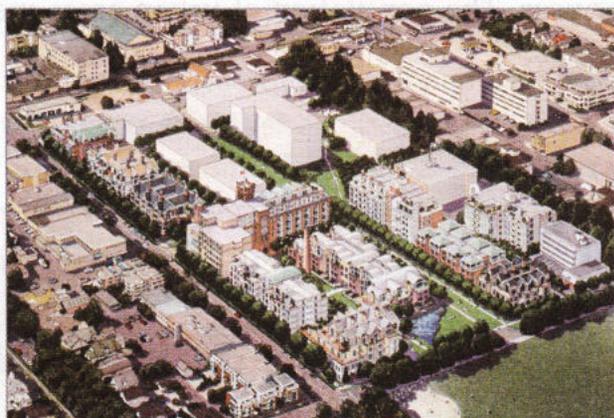


Rural settlement

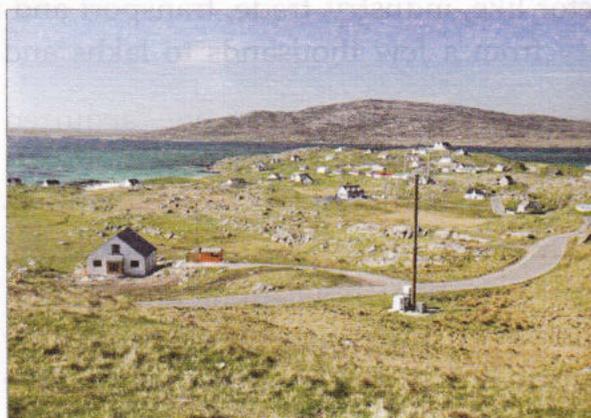
In rural areas, people use local materials like, stones, mud, clay, straw etc. to build their houses. Their houses are generally environment-friendly. But, we will find a great variation in the houses of various rural settlements. In hilly and rainy areas, houses have slanting roofs. In flood-prone areas, houses are built on stilts. In the areas of hot climate, houses have thick mud wall and thatched roof.

Rural settlements can be of various types like compact, scattered, linear and radial.

- (a) In **compact settlements**, houses are built very close to each other.
- (b) In **scattered settlements**, houses are scattered over a large area. Scattered settlements are generally found in hilly, forested or desert regions.
- (c) **Linear settlements** develop along a road or a canal.
- (d) **Radial settlements** develop when streets radiate from a common point in all directions.



Compact settlement



Scattered settlement



Linear settlement



Radial settlement

## TRANSPORT

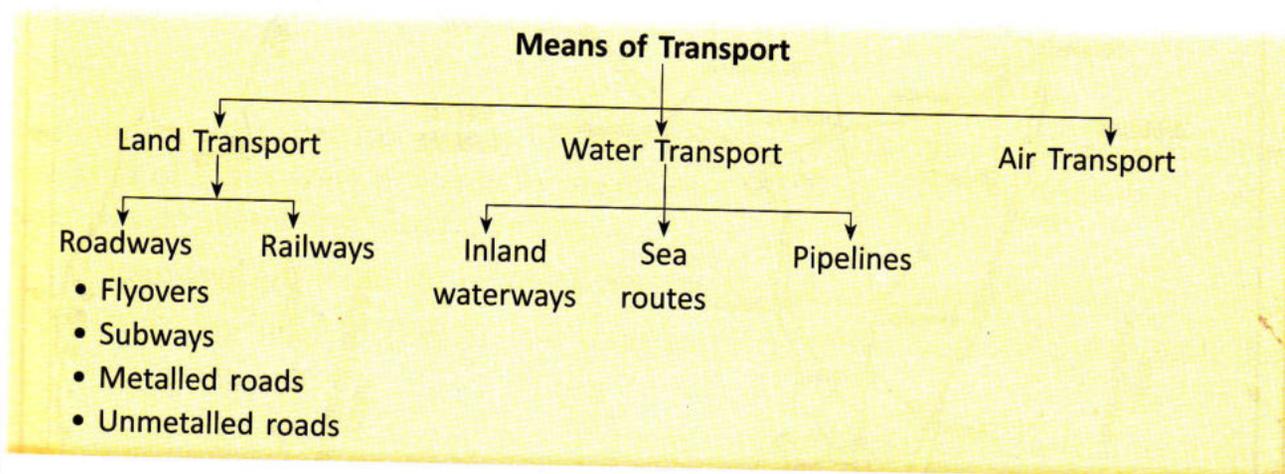
Transport is a system through which passengers or goods are carried from one place to another. In olden times, man walked from one place to another. In about 3,000 BC

he started using animals as a means of transport. Even today, people use animals as a means of transport. In the plains, donkeys, horses and mules are used to carry load and people. In hilly regions, yaks, llamas, mules are commonly used. Camel is the main means of transport in the desert. It is known as the 'ship of the desert'. Elephants are used to carry heavy logs and loads in dense forests. The animals used to carry load are known as 'Beasts of burden'.

The invention of wheel made transport easier and faster. With new discoveries and inventions various advanced means of transport came into existence. Some of the important means of transport in modern age are railways, motor vehicles, ships and aeroplanes. They are proving to be very useful for man today as they save time as well as energy.

Here, we will study the major means of transport, categorised as follows:

1. Land Transport (Roadways and Railways)
2. Water Transport (Inland waterways, sea routes, pipelines)
3. Air Transport



## 1. LAND TRANSPORT

Land transport includes **roadways** and **railways**.

### Roadways

Roads are the oldest means of transport. The Manali–Leh road located at an altitude of 4270 metres above the sea level is one of the highest roads in the world.

- (i) Roads can be **metalled (pucca)** or **unmetalled (kuchcha)**.
- (ii) They provide door-to-door services.
- (iii) Road services are preferred for shorter journeys.



- (vii) Important roads of the country have been developed as **highways**. Highways are long roads that connect distant places. Highways play an important role in the development of national economy because large number of vehicles ply on them and large quantities of goods are transported to industrial and consumer centres.
- (viii) There are two types of highways — national highways and state highways.
- **State highways** are roads that connect different places within a state.
  - **National highways** connect distant places within a country.
- (ix) Underground roads are called **subways**. Subways are built in the areas of heavy traffic. They are built to reduce road accidents.
- (x) Flyovers or over pass are built to cross busy roads or railway tracks.



### DO YOU KNOW

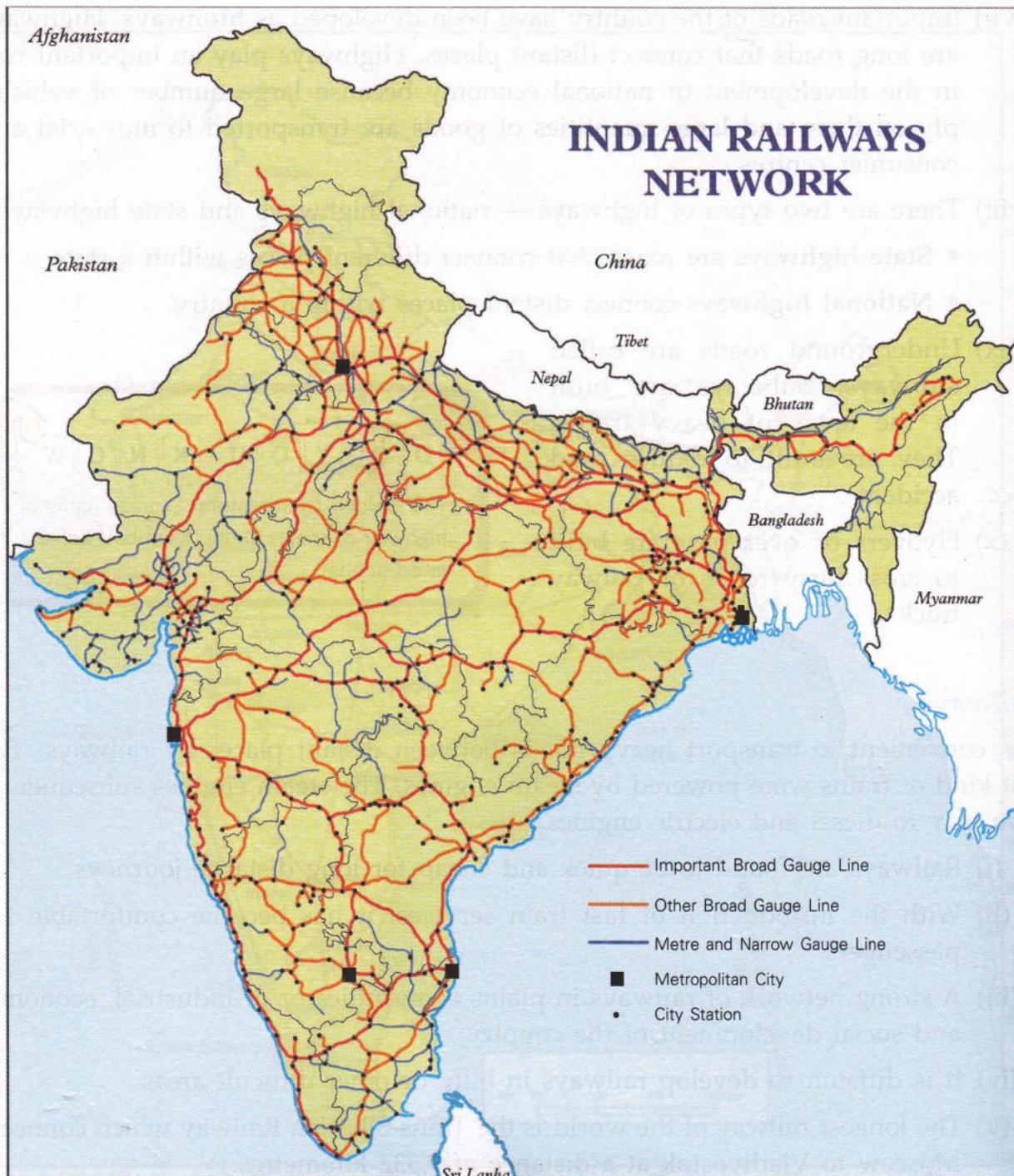


The Golden Quadrilateral Express national highway connects Delhi, Mumbai, Kolkata and Chennai.

## Railways

It is convenient to transport heavy goods between distant places by railways. The first kind of trains were powered by steam engines. The steam engines subsequently gave way to diesel and electric engines.

- (i) Railways are found to be quick and cheap for long distance journeys.
- (ii) With the introduction of fast train services, it has become comfortable for passengers.
- (iii) A strong network of railways in plains is an indicator of industrial, economic and social development of the country.
- (iv) It is difficult to develop railways in hilly or other difficult areas.
- (v) The longest railway of the world is the Trans-Siberian Railway which connects Moscow to Vladivostok at a distance of 9,332 kilometres.
- (vi) The fastest train of the world is in Japan which covers the distance from Tokyo to Osaka in four hours.
- (vii) The first railway route started in India, was between Bombay and Thane in 1853.
- (viii) The Rajdhani Express and the Shatabdi Express trains running in India are among the fastest trains of the country.
- (ix) India has the largest network of railways in Asia.



## 2. WATER TRANSPORT

Water transport is also one of the oldest means of transport used by man. People have been using water transport in the form of steamers, boats, ship etc. in rivers, canals and seas.

- Waterways are suitable for transport of heavy goods, to far-off places.
- It is the cheapest means of transport.

- The main disadvantage of water transport is that it is very slow.
- Moreover, it is best suited to connect places only in coastal area.
- There are two types of water transport:

- (i) Inland waterways
- (ii) Sea routes

### (i) Inland waterways

- Routes through rivers or canals are known as inland waterways.
- In India, inland waterways exist in the Ganga-Brahmaputra river system.

### (ii) Sea routes

- Sea routes are used for transporting goods from one country to another.
- These routes are connected with the ports.
- The Suez Canal and the Panama Canal are world's renowned waterways. These two waterways have reduced the distance between continents and are the busiest waterways of the world.
- Some other famous waterways are—Singapore and Mumbai in Asia; New York-Los Angeles in North America; Rio-de Janeiro in South America, Durban-Cape Town in Africa; Sydney in Australia; London-Rotterdam in Europe.



Water transport

### Pipelines as mode of transport

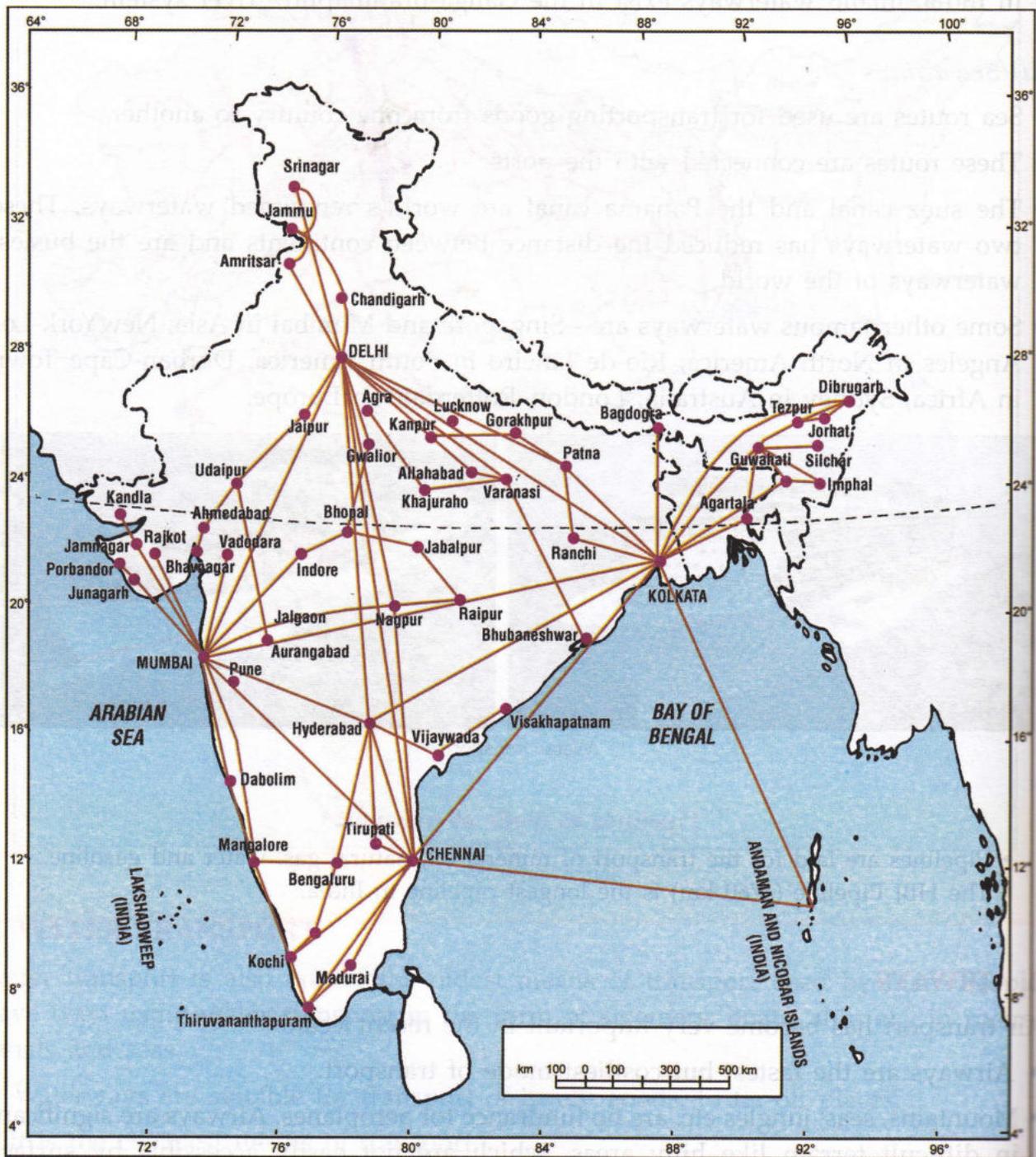
- Pipelines are laid for the transport of mineral oil, natural gas, water and gasoline.
- The HBJ Pipeline (1760 km) is the longest pipeline in India.

## 3. AIRWAYS

Air transport has become very important in the recent years.

- Airways are the fastest but costliest mode of transport.
- Mountains, seas, jungles etc. are no hindrance for aeroplanes. Airways are significant in difficult terrain like hilly areas, which are not easily accessible by surface transport.

- International travel between different countries has become convenient because of the development of airways.
- Airways play vital role during man-made and natural calamities like, floods, earthquakes, landslides etc.
- Airways are useful in the trade of perishable products.
- Airports are built to connect different airways.



India—Major airways

Some important international airports are—New York, Chicago, Los Angeles, London, Paris, Berlin, Tokyo, Moscow, New Delhi, Frankfurt, Singapore, Rio de Janeiro.

## COMMUNICATION

Communication means the system of transmitting information and news from one place to another.

- (i) In olden times, people sent messages through horse-ridden messengers and pigeons. They even used drums and smoke to send signals.
- (ii) Some of the important media of transmitting information are post and telegraph system, radio, telephone, television, internet, etc.
- (iii) Newspapers, television and radio are called **mass communication** as they help us in communicating with a large number of people at the same time.
- (iv) The first newspapers were printed in the seventeenth century.
- (v) Post and telegraph system started in the late eighteenth century. Telephone came into existence in this era.
- (vi) In the twentieth century, television and telephones became common in peoples' homes. Cellphones and smartphones too became popular.
- (vii) Satellite communication system provides us the facility to see and hear event occurring at distant places **instantly**.
- (viii) Satellite communication system is used for telecasting television programmes, telecom facilities, weather forecasting, oil exploration and exploitation of minerals.

### Satellite Communication System

Satellite communication system has brought about revolutionary changes in the field of communication. This system had become very important and popular in the second half of the twentieth century. Man-made satellites are used to carry out direct telecast of an event occurring in any part of the world. India launched its first satellite 'Aryabhata' on 19 April 1975. Thereafter, Bhaskar, Rohini, APPLE, INSAT-1, INSAT-1A, INSAT-1B, INSAT-1C and INSAT-1D were launched.



Man-made satellite

- (ix) In the twenty first century, internet has revolutionised communication. E-mail has become an important method of communication. Innovative channels of communication such as blogs, social media have also come up.
- (x) The internet is a global network of computers which not only provides information but also makes our life more comfortable.
- (xi) Computers help in booking railways and air tickets and hotels. Computers have also provided new ways of learning and entertainment.



Rocket

With the development of transport and communication, the world has become a smaller unit by reducing vast distances and has thus, facilitated India to become a global power.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Building of settlements is an important function in the systematic development of human life.
- Human settlements are mainly of two types — rural settlements and urban settlements.
- People of rural settlements are associated with primary occupations while those of urban settlements are associated with secondary and tertiary occupations.
- Rural settlements produce raw materials which are processed into consumable products in industries in urban settlements.
- Transport is mainly of three types — land transport, air transport and water transport.
- Rail transport and road transport are two main forms of land transport.
- Air transport is suitable for international journeys, journeys to difficult areas and across seas and oceans.
- Water transport is comparatively cheaper for carrying heavy goods.
- Pipeline transport has been devised for the transport of mineral oil, natural gas, etc.
- The Suez Canal and the Panama Canal are the world renowned waterways developed by man.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The first railway line in India was laid between
- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| (a) Mumbai and Delhi.   | (b) Mumbai and Thane.  |
| (c) Mumbai and Kolkata. | (d) Delhi and Mathura. |

2. Which one of the following is not an international airport?
  - (a) Delhi
  - (b) Singapore
  - (c) Sydney
  - (d) Srinagar
3. Which one of the following statements is incorrect regarding air transport?
  - (a) Air transport is fastest.
  - (b) It provides door-to-door service.
  - (c) It covers long distance over sandy deserts, thick forests, oceans and high mountains.
  - (d) It is the most expensive means of transport.
4. The length of the HBJ pipeline is .....
  - (a) 1500 km.
  - (b) 1700 km.
  - (c) 1760 km.
  - (d) 1960 km.

**II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.**

1. People living in rural areas are mainly engaged in ..... occupations.
  - (a) secondary
  - (b) primary
2. Communicating with a large number of people at the same time is called .....
  - (a) personal communication
  - (b) mass communication
3. The longest railway route in the world is the .....
  - (a) Canadian National Railway
  - (b) Trans-Siberian Railway
4. .... communication has brought about revolutionary changes in the field of communication.
  - (a) Global
  - (b) Satellite
5. The Manali-Leh road is located at an altitude of ..... metres above the sea level.
  - (a) 4270
  - (b) 4520

**III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.**

1. Urban settlements may extend from a small town to a metropolis. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Water transport is the cheapest and slowest means of transport. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Road transport is faster than railways. \_\_\_\_\_
4. People living in cities are adversely affected by pollution. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Match the columns.**

- | Column A                | Column B             |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Suez Canal           | (a) Pipeline         |
| 2. Golden Quadrilateral | (b) First satellite  |
| 3. Aryabhata            | (c) Global network   |
| 4. Internet             | (d) Waterways        |
| 5. HBJ                  | (e) National highway |

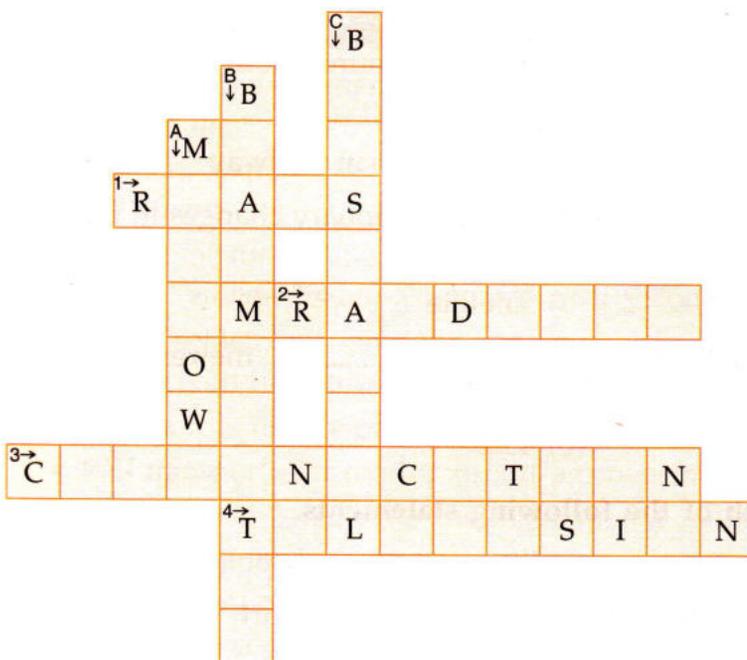
### V. Short Answer Questions.

1. What is a settlement?
2. What is the importance of pipelines?
3. Name two navigable rivers of India.
4. Which two oceans are linked by the Panama Canal?
5. State the main disadvantages of water transport.

### VI. Long Answer Questions.

1. State the differences between rural and urban settlements.
2. How has satellite communication revolutionised the life of mankind?
3. Enlist the advantages of road transport over railways.
4. Write a short note on air transport.
5. What are the various types of rural settlements?

### VII. Solve the crossword puzzle with the help of the clues given below.



CLUES	
<b>Across</b>	
1.	Oldest means of land transport
2.	Fastest train in India
3.	Means of exchanging information
4.	Means of mass communication
<b>Down</b>	
A.	An international airport
B.	A navigable river
C.	A man-made satellite

### VIII. Projects and Activities

1. Make a collage on 'ancient versus modern means of transport and communication'.
2. Draw models of rural settlement and urban settlement.
  - Divide the class into two groups. Ask one group to prepare a model of rural settlement and the other group to prepare a model of urban settlement.
  - Rural settlement should include agricultural fields, huts, muddy roads, domestic animals, wells, etc.
  - Urban settlement should include big buildings, *pucca* roads, electrical connections, medical and educational facilities and other facilities of modern life.

## VALUE-BASED QUESTION

In what type of settlement do you reside? What steps does your family take to keep the surroundings clean?

## HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Why are river valleys called the 'cradles of civilization'?

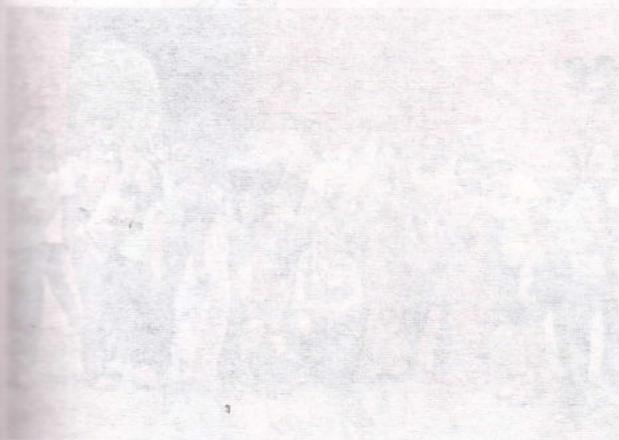
## ANSWERS TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE

### Across

1. Roads                      2. Rajdhani                      3. Communication                      4. Television

### Down

- A. Moscow                      B. Brahmaputra                      C. Bhaskara



## 8

# HUMAN ENVIRONMENT INTERACTIONS—THE TROPICAL AND THE SUBTROPICAL REGION

## New Words to Remember

**Natural region:** A region having similar climate, soil and vegetation along a particular latitudinal belt in the world.

**River basin:** An area drained by a river with its tributaries.

**Slash and burn agriculture:** A primitive type of agriculture practiced by tribal groups in which forests are cleared and burnt to cultivate crops.

**Delta:** A triangular piece of land formed of alluvial deposits near the mouth of some rivers.

**Selvas:** The equatorial forests of the Amazon basin.

The environmental conditions prevailing all over the world are wide and varied. There is a direct relationship between man and the environment. The environment not only affects man but also plants and animals. Lifestyles of people in different parts of the world are largely influenced by climate. Thus, climate is taken as the basis for the division of the world into major natural regions. Within a natural region, climate, soils and vegetation are broadly the same. Human beings possess intelligence and skills through which they have made numerous modifications in the environment to make their life comfortable.



People from different parts of the world

In chapters 8, 9 and 10, we will learn about the different lifestyles of people living in different natural regions of the world. In this chapter, we will study about the climatic condition, natural vegetation in two different regions—

- (i) Amazon basin in South America that has tropical climate.
- (ii) Ganga-Brahmaputra basin in India (Asia) that has sub-tropical climate.

## LIFE IN THE AMAZON BASIN

### LOCATION

The Amazon basin lies very close to the equator between 10° N and 10° S latitudes. A major part of the Amazon basin lies in Brazil, between the Guiana Highland in the north and the Brazilian Highland in the south.

The Amazon River is the world's largest river in terms of volume of water. This river originates from the Andes mountains, flows towards the north and drains into the Atlantic Ocean. The Amazon is the most important river in South America. It is the second longest river in the world (at least 6400 km). Many tributaries join the Amazon from north and south from Amazon basin. The Amazon basin extends for about 7,000,000 square kilometres and includes parts of six countries, namely, Brazil, Peru, Bolivia, Ecuador, Columbia and Venezuela. It is the largest river basin in the world.

### CLIMATE

The Amazon basin lies close to the equator and, hence, it has a hot and wet climate throughout the year. The Chaco' region of Colombia is one of the wettest areas in the



The Amazon basin

world. The humidity is very high and one feels sticky here. There is no dry season in this region. The annual rainfall is more than 200 centimetres. There is more rainfall in the afternoon than in any other part of the day. It is accompanied by thunder and lightning.

### **NATURAL VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE**

**Flora:** The tropical rainforests called **Selvas** are found in the Amazon basin. Trees growing here are tall, dense and evergreen. Trees like mahogany, ebony, rubber and rosewood are common. Other products from the forests are rubber, cocoa, nuts, gum, cork, resins and wax. Quinine is obtained from the bark of cinchona trees. At the lower levels, there is thick undergrowth with shrubs and creepers. Most of the trees are hardwood which makes commercial exploitation of the forest difficult. The huge Amazon region is the largest and probably the oldest forest area in the world.

**Fauna:** The Amazon basin has a rich variety of fauna. The rainforests of the Amazon basin are throbbing with numerous animals, birds, reptiles and insects—some unique and some dangerous. The most well-known ones are anaconda python—an enormous 10-12 m long reptile, the giant anteater, the armadillo, the pumas, the jaguars, the iguanas and a large variety of primates.



A canoe in flowing through the Amazon forest

A rich variety of birds like geckos, toucans and hummingbirds are common. Several species of insects and fish abound in these forests and waters. The flesh-eating fish **piranha** is found in the Amazon river and its tributaries.

### **LIFE OF THE PEOPLE**

The Amazon basin is inhabited by tribal people. They get their food by hunting, fishing and gathering. They practise **slash and burn agriculture** and mainly grow tapioca, sweet potato and pineapple. The most common crop grown throughout the basin is **manioc** also known as Cassava. At present, jungles have been cleared to provide land for agriculture. Cash crops like sugarcane, coffee, maize and cocoa are grown in this basin.

Some people live in small, thatched houses made up of branches of trees and leaves. The people living in the basin prefer to take rest in a hanging couch called **hammock** that is made from the bark of the hamaca tree. There are other large apartment-like houses called **maloca** with steep slanting roofs.

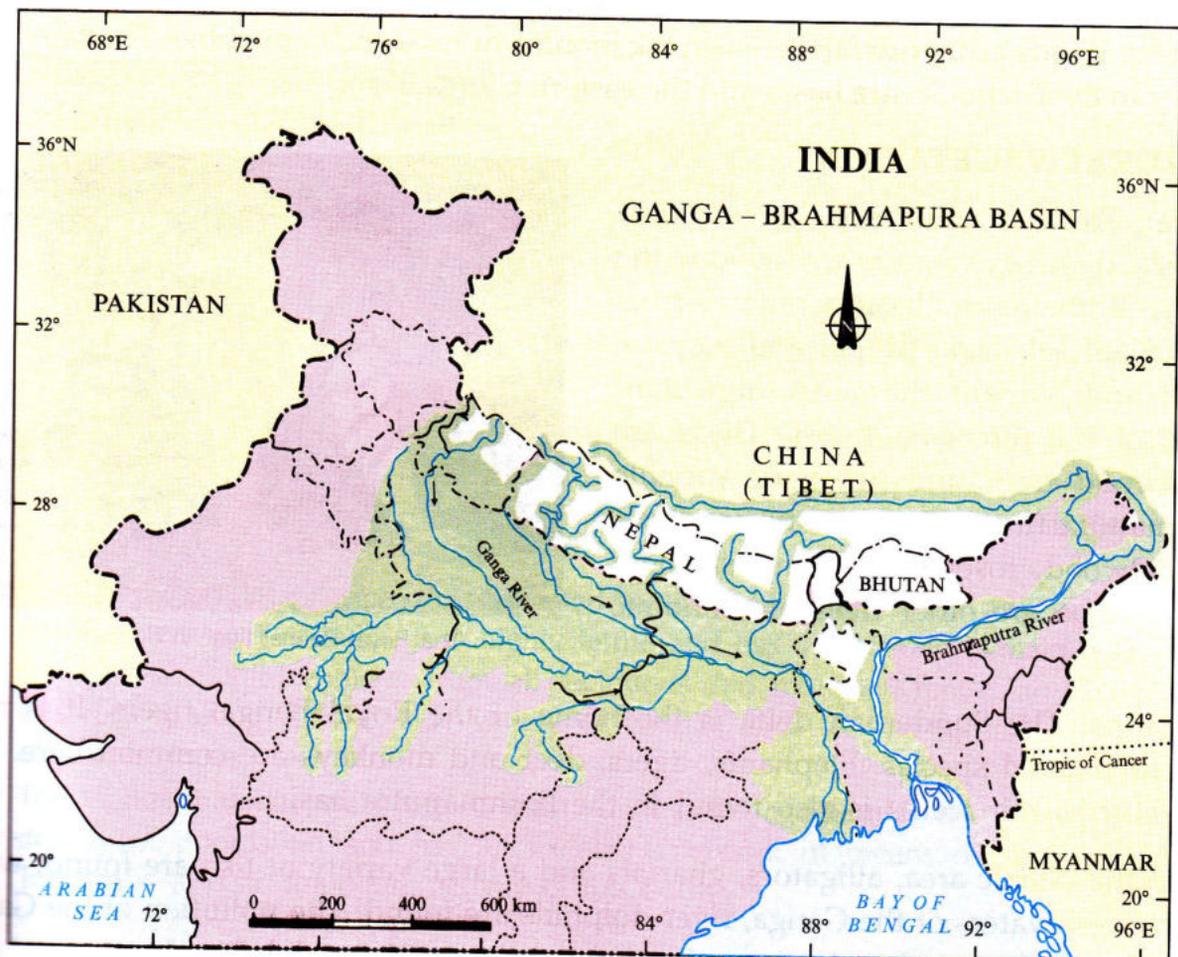
Life of the people in the basin is changing slowly. With the development of transport, most of the rainforest is accessible. The Trans-Amazon highway is the

most important road link. It has made all parts of the forested region accessible. With improved methods of mining, farming, fishing and transportation, the wealth of the basin is rapidly being exploited and developed. From being an agricultural nation, it is shifting to industrial development. **Manaus** is a popular port. **Belem** is now surrounded by groves of banana and palm trees. Today Belem is called the 'Port of the Amazon River'. However, the developmental activities are in turn leading to the destruction of forests on a large-scale. The rapid deforestation has become a worldwide concern because of its effect on the environment, including the loss of biodiversity and potential climatic change.

## LIFE IN THE GANGA-BRAHMAPUTRA BASIN

### LOCATION

The Ganga-Brahmaputra river system together forms the great plains of north India. This basin is located in the subtropical region, *i.e.*, between 10° N and 30° N latitudes. The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin includes plains of the Ganga-Brahmaputra rivers, the foothills of Himalayas and the Sunderban delta. The River Ganga originates from the Gangotri glacier in Uttarakhand, flows for some distance towards the south of the Himalayas and then turns towards east. It is joined by many tributaries like the



The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin

Yamuna, the Ghaghra, the Gandak, the Kosi and the Son. It flows through Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal and then enters Bangladesh to join the Brahmaputra river.

The Brahmaputra basin lies in the north-eastern part of India. The River Brahmaputra rises from the Chemayung-Dung glacier near the Mansarovar Lake in Tibet. The river enters India through Arunachal Pradesh.

The Ganga and the Brahmaputra rivers join together to form the largest delta in the world known as the **Sunderbans**. The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin is highly fertile as it is formed by alluvial deposits brought down by the rivers. The plateaus adjacent to these plains contain large reserves of minerals.

### CLIMATE

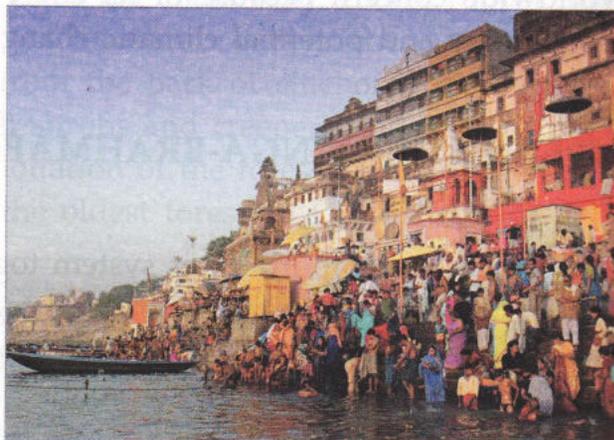
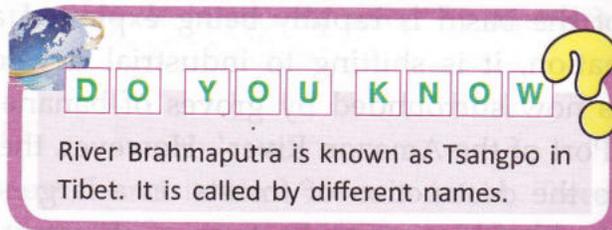
The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin has a monsoon climate with hot summers and mild winters. Winds bring rainfall between the months of June and September. The rainfall is heavy in the Brahmaputra basin and the eastern Ganga basin.

### NATURAL VEGETATION

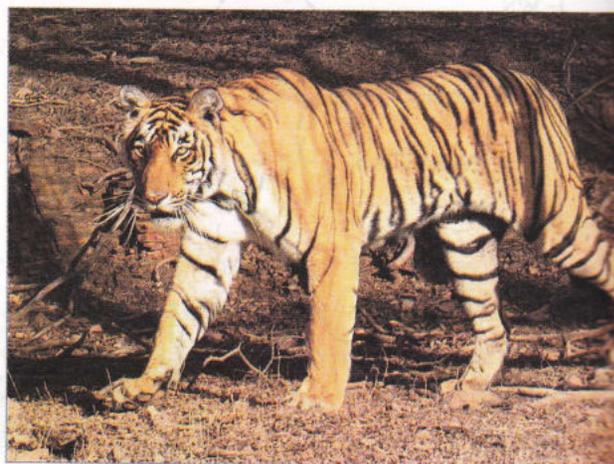
**Flora:** Trees of monsoon forests and tropical deciduous forests are found in the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin. Common trees found are sal, teak, peepal and banyan. Teak and sal are the most important trees of the monsoon forest. These are hardwood trees and are very valuable for manufacturing fine quality furniture. Sandalwood, rosewood, ebony, shishem and mahua are other trees of economic importance

**Fauna:** The Sunderban delta is the home of the Royal Bengal tigers. It is now an endangered species. Elephants, tigers, deer and monkeys are common here. The one-horned rhinoceros is also found in the Brahmaputra basin.

In the deltaic area, alligators, gharials and a large variety of fish are found, while in the freshwaters of the Ganga, river dolphins are found. The pollution of the Ganga by effluents from industries is posing a great threat to the dolphins.



River Ganga at Varanasi



The Royal Bengal tiger in Sunderban

## LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin is highly fertile and most suitable for agriculture. The level land, fertile soil, favourable climate and abundant water favours the growth of a large variety of crops. Rice is the main crop but wheat is also grown in drier areas. In the delta regions jute is grown mainly for export. Tea is mainly grown in the Brahmaputra valley in Assam. Cash crops like sugarcane and cotton are also grown here.

The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin supports a high density of population of more than 150 people per sq. km. West Bengal has the second highest density of population with 1,029 persons/sq. km. The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin is an important industrial belt too. The Kanpur-Lucknow industrial region and the Kolkata Hooghly industrial region are typical examples. This region has an excellent network of roadways, railways, waterways and airways. A number of metropolitan cities and towns have developed along the river basin such as Delhi, Kanpur, Allahabad, Varanasi, Patna and Kolkata. Kolkata is a major port on the River Hooghly. Tourism is also an important activity as there are many historical monuments like the Taj Mahal in Agra, the Buddhist Stupas in Bihar and Uttar Pradesh, religious towns like Haridwar, Rishikesh and Mathura, the Imambara of Lucknow, the Corbett Park in Uttarakhand, the Kaziranga National Park in Assam and many more.

### Summary of the Lesson

- People living in different natural regions of the world have differing lifestyles that are influenced by the varied environmental conditions.
- The Amazon basin lies in the tropical zone and is very close to the equator. It has a hot and wet climate throughout the year with high humidity. It also has a rich variety of flora and fauna which includes tropical rainforests and wildlife like jaguars, crocodiles, snakes, hummingbirds, etc.
- The Amazon basin is inhabited by the tribal people who practice hunting, fishing, gathering, and slash and burn agriculture. However, developmental activities are leading to the large-scale exploitation and destruction of forests in the Amazon basin.
- The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin is located in the sub-tropical zone and lies in the north-eastern part of India. It is highly fertile and has a monsoon climate with hot summers and mild winters. Tropical deciduous and monsoon forests are found in this region along with a wide variety of wildlife such as one-horned rhinoceros, elephants, tigers, deer, etc.
- The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin is most suitable for agriculture. It supports a high density of population and has an excellent network of means of transportation. Tourism is also an important activity of this basin.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- The Amazon basin extends between:  
(a) 0° and 10°N (b) 10° N and 10° S  
(c) 5° N and 15° S (d) 5° N to 15° S
- The cash crop of the Amazon basin is:  
(a) rubber (b) coffee (c) tobacco (d) rice
- River Ganga originates from the:  
(a) Baltoro glacier (b) Jamnotri glacier  
(c) Gangotri glacier (d) Siachen glacier
- The one-horned rhinoceros is found in:  
(a) Arunachal Pradesh (b) Meghalaya  
(c) Assam (d) Manipur
- The main crop of the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin:  
(a) rice (b) maize (c) millets (d) jute

### II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.

- The ..... is the largest river basin in the world.  
(a) Nile (b) Amazon
- The tropical rainforests of the Amazon basin are called .....  
(a) Selvas (b) Steppes
- The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin has a ..... climate.  
(a) tropical (b) monsoon
- ..... is the home of the Royal Bengal tigers.  
(a) Indus (b) Sundarbans
- Which one of the following is not a state through which Ganga river passes through?  
(a) West Bengal (b) Uttar Pradesh (c) Gujarat (d) Bihar

### III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.

- The Amazon river is the longest river in the world. \_\_\_\_\_
- Malocas are small houses in which the people of the Amazon basin live. \_\_\_\_\_
- The Kaziranga National Park is located in Arunachal Pradesh. \_\_\_\_\_
- The Brahmaputra river is known as the Tsangpo in Tibet. \_\_\_\_\_
- The people of the Amazon basin practise slash and burn agriculture. \_\_\_\_\_

#### IV. Match the columns.

##### Column A

1. Toucan
2. Manioc
3. Hammock
4. Haridwar
5. Kanpur-Lucknow

##### Column B

- (a) Industrial region
- (b) Religious town
- (c) A crop
- (d) A bird
- (e) Hanging couch

#### V. Short Answer Questions.

1. Which is the largest river basin in the world?
2. Which city is called the 'port of the Amazon river'?
3. State the location of the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin.
4. What type of human activities are carried by the people of the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin?
5. Define natural regions.
6. Name the countries through which the Amazon river flows.

#### VI. Long Answer Questions.

1. Compare and contrast the life of the people of the Amazon basin and the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin.
2. Write a short note on the wildlife of the Amazon basin.
3. Compare the Amazon basin and the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin in terms of location, climate and natural vegetation.
4. Which factors have led to the development of agriculture in the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin?
5. Why is the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin the most densely populated?

#### VII. Map Work

On an outline map of the world, mark the following:

- (a) The Amazon river with its tributaries
- (b) The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin

#### VIII. Projects and Activities

1. Prepare a PowerPoint presentation on the Amazon basin and the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin.

Divide the class into four groups. Assign each topic to two groups.

The presentation should include 10–12 slides. The slides should include the location, climate, natural vegetation, wildlife and the life of people.

2. The Amazon is the largest river in the world. Find ten interesting facts about the Amazon river and write them in your scrapbook. Paste a map of South America with the Amazon river marked on it.
3. Make a project report on the 'Clean Ganga' campaign. Include in it the initiatives taken by the government and some organisations involved with this campaign.

### **VALUE-BASED QUESTION**

What steps should we take to keep our rivers clean? What steps can you take individually to protect the rivers from being polluted?

### **HOTS: THINK BEYOND**

Why is deforestation a growing problem in the Amazon basin?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 7–8)

### I. Presentation

Make a PowerPoint presentation on the 'Clean Ganga Campaign'. Include the following points in your presentation.

- Initiatives taken by the government to clean river Ganga.
- Organisations involved with this campaign.
- Need of awareness among people to keep the river clean.



### II. Collage

Prepare a collage on the different modes of transportation which have been in use since the beginning of human civilization. Write a brief note on the story of the invention of wheel.



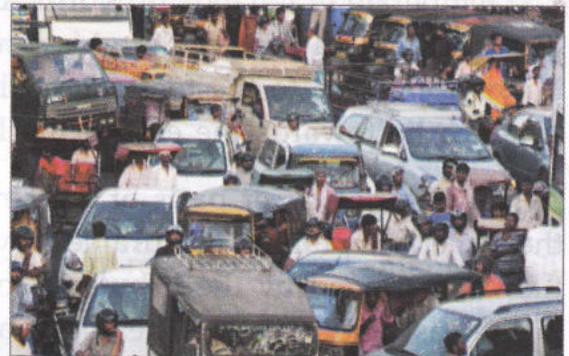
### III. Map Work

On an outline map of the world, mark the major seaports and airports.

### IV. Picture Study

Look at the picture and answer the following questions:

- Which type of settlement is this—rural or urban?
- What are the means of transport used by the people?
- What are the main economic activities and occupations of the people?



# 9

## Life in the Temperate Grasslands

### New Words to Remember

**Extensive farming:** Large farms cultivated with the help of machines.

**Ranches:** Large farms in the USA and Canada where cattle and sheep are reared.

**Combine harvesters:** Large machines that perform various activities like sowing, ploughing, harvesting and thrashing at the same time.

**Dairy farming:** Rearing of animals for milk, butter, cream, cheese, etc.

The major biomes of the world are forests, grasslands and thorny scrubs. Forests are typical of regions with heavy rainfall, grasslands are typical of regions with moderate rainfall and thorny scrubs are common in areas of low rainfall. Grasslands are found both in the tropical and the temperate regions mainly in the interior of the continents.

### THE PRAIRIES

#### LOCATION

The temperate grasslands of North America are called the Prairies. The French word 'Prairie' means a meadow or grassland. This hilly land stretches from the west of the Mississippi river to the foothills of the Rocky mountains. The Great Lakes of North America lie towards the east of the Prairie.

The Prairies cover parts of the United States of America and parts of Canada. In the America, prairies are drained by the tributaries of Mississippi and in Canada, they are drained by the tributaries of Saskatchewan river. The Prairie region is flat in the east and rises to a height of about 500 metres in the west. The Prairies are a well-developed agricultural region.

#### CLIMATE

Since they are located in the interior of the continent, the Prairies have extreme climate. The region has long hot summers



#### DO YOU KNOW?

Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie and Lake Ontario and collectively known as 'Great Lakes'.



North America—Prairie Grassland

with temperature of around 20 °C and cold winters with temperatures reaching upto -20 °C. Rainfall is moderate which is ideal for the growth of grass. Warm, dry wind called 'chinook' blows down to the east of Rocky Mountains. The Chinook winds raise the temperature of the praries in a short time during winter. They are famously called as 'snow eater'.

### NATURAL VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE

The Prairie region has no large trees. The eastern part receives more rainfall which helps in the growth of tall grasses (2 metres high) while in the drier west, the grasses are short. Trees of temperate deciduous category like willows, alders and poplars grow here.



Bison



Prairie dog

Cattle are reared here mainly for milk products. This region is famous for cattle ranches. In the western part, sheep are reared for wool and meat. The other animals found here are coyote, fox, antelope and Prairie dogs. Before the arrival of the Europeans, the Prairies was home to the **bison**, the American buffalo. Due to indiscriminate hunting, the bison have now become extinct.

### LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

In the USA, the Prairie region is known as the 'bread basket of the nation' as the soil here is very fertile. It produces more than half of the wheat crops grown in the United States. It is also the largest maize or corn growing region of the world. The farms here are generally divided into sections for the rotation of crops. Contour ploughing and strip cropping are widely practised to reduce soil erosion.

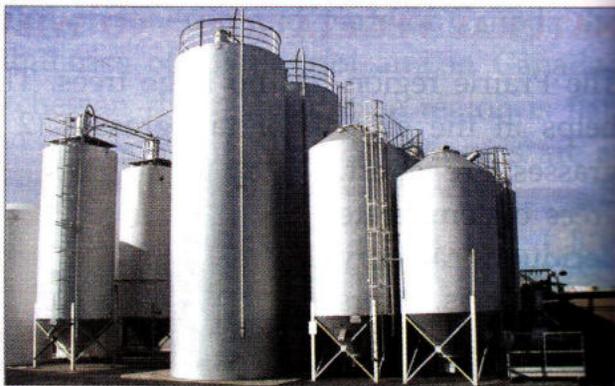


Combine harvesters harvesting a field of wheat in the Prairies

Other crops cultivated are potatoes, soyabean and cotton. Most of the farms are large which are cultivated with modern machines like combine harvesters, tractors, threshers and other machines. Grains are stored in tall steel storage structures called **silos**.

The Prairie region is called 'the granary of the world' due to surplus wheat production. Dairy farming is another important activity of the people. Huge **ranches** with large animal sheds and pastures are constructed for dairy farming. Dairy farming and extensive agriculture have led to the development of food processing industries especially in Chicago, Kansas and Nebraska. The Canadian Prairies include the provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan. Winnipeg in Canada is called the *Gateway to the Prairie*.

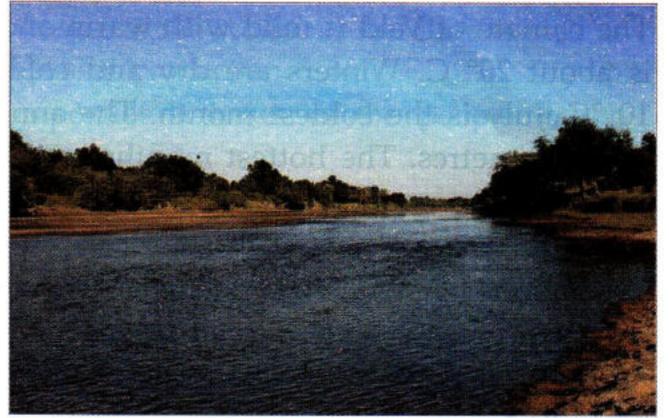
The availability of minerals especially iron and coal provides an excellent network of transport. The Great Lakes of this region have contributed to the development of industries. Though sparsely populated, the entire region has a well-developed network of roads and railways. The rivers are used to transport bulky goods to major cities and ports. The important towns in the USA are Chicago, Denver, Minneapolis and Indianapolis, Kansas. In Canada the important towns are Winnipeg, Calgary, Saskatoon and Edmonton.



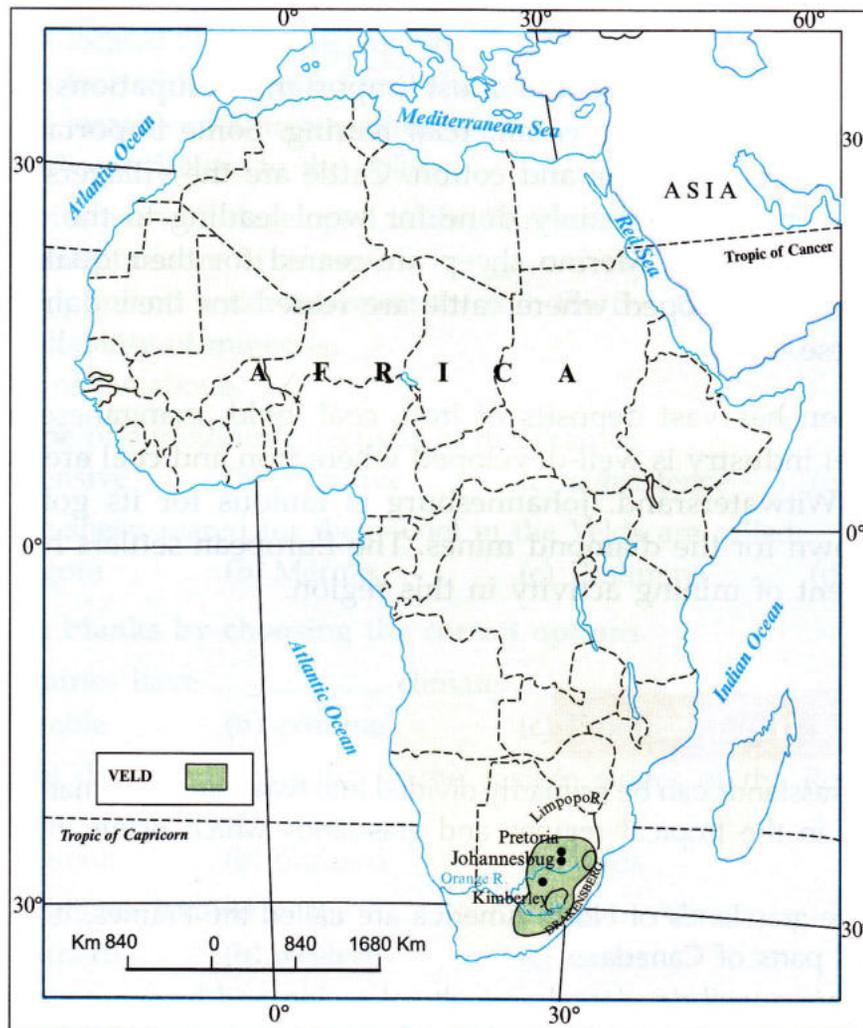
Silos

## THE VELDS

The Veld grassland is located in the southernmost part of Africa. This is a temperate grassland which is found near the Tropic of Capricorn. These grasslands stretch across a high tableland that has a varying height of 600m to 1100m. It is bounded by the Drakensburg mountains in the east and the Kalahari desert in the west. Most of South Africa is a high plateau which slopes from east to west. The north-eastern part of the plateau that attains a height of 1600m is known as the **High Veld**. The Orange and the Limpopo rivers flow through this region. A range of hills called Witwatersrand runs across the Veld.



The Limpopo river in the Veld region



The Veld Grassland in Africa

## CLIMATE

The climate of Veld is mild with warm and short summers. The average temperature is about 20° C. Winters are dry and cold with the temperature between 5 °C and 10 °C. July is the coldest month. The annual rainfall is between 50 centimetres and 100 centimetres. The hottest months are between December and February.

## NATURAL VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE

Vegetation is generally sparse here. Areas of the south-west which receive less rainfall have tall grasses with stunted trees. The rest of the region has short grasses. These include red grass, acacia and marool.

These grasslands are the home of a great variety of animals like elephants, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, giraffe, antelopes, lions, leopards, kudus, zebras and merino sheep.



Merino Sheep

## LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

Animal rearing and mining are the most important occupations of the people. Nomadic herding is replaced by commercial rearing. Some important crops grown here are maize, wheat, sugarcane and cotton. Cattle are the villagers' most valuable possessions. Sheep rearing is mainly done for wool leading to the development of the woollen textile industry. Merino sheep are reared for their quality wool. Dairy farming is also well-developed where cattle are reared for their dairy products like milk, butter, cheese, etc.

The Veld region has vast deposits of iron, coal, gold, manganese and diamond. The iron and steel industry is well-developed where iron and coal are available. Gold is found in the Witwatersrand. Johannesburg is famous for its gold deposits and Kimberley is known for the diamond mines. The European settlers have contributed to the development of mining activity in this region.

## Summary of the Lesson

- The world's grasslands can be primarily divided into two categories, namely, grasslands which occur in the tropical regions and grasslands which occur in the temperate regions.
- The temperate grasslands of North America are called the Prairies. It covers parts of the USA and parts of Canada.
- The Prairies are a well-developed agricultural region and have a continental type of climate with extreme temperatures and moderate rainfall.

- The Prairie region has tall and short grasses with no large trees and is famous for cattle ranches. It is known as the 'bread basket of the world' in the USA as well as the 'granary of the world' due to surplus wheat production.
- Cattle rearing and dairy farming are important activities of the people in the Prairies.
- The Velds are temperate grasslands located in South Africa and are near to the Tropic of Capricorn. They have a mild climate and moderate rainfall.
- The Velds are the home to a wide variety of animals like elephants, giraffe, antelopes, etc.
- Animal rearing and mining are the most important occupations of the people living in the Velds.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Prairies has an extreme climate because:
  - it is located close to the equator.
  - it is located in the interior of the continent.
  - it is located on a higher altitude.
  - it is located close to the poles.
- Industries are well-developed in the Prairies mainly because of:
  - excellent nature of transport.
  - cheap inland water transport through the five Great Lakes.
  - availability of minerals.
  - All of the above.
- The type of agriculture practised in the Prairies:
 

(a) extensive	(b) primitive	(c) subsistence	(d) intensive
---------------	---------------	-----------------	---------------
- Quality sheep reared for their wool in the Velds are called:
 

(a) Angora	(b) Merino	(c) Pashmina	(d) Yak
------------	------------	--------------	---------

### II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.

- The Prairies have ..... climate.
 

(a) equable	(b) extreme	(c) humid
-------------	-------------	-----------
- The hot dry winds blowing in the eastern slopes of the Rocky mountain are called ..... .
 

(a) Chinook	(b) Blizzard	(c) Velds
-------------	--------------	-----------
- The Velds are located in the ..... part of Africa.
 

(a) southern	(b) western	(c) eastern
--------------	-------------	-------------
- Johannesburg is famous for ..... .
 

(a) diamonds	(b) gold	(c) silver
--------------	----------	------------

5. .... have become extinct in the Prairies.  
(a) Bisons            (b) Prairie dogs      (c) Zebras

**III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.**

1. The Prairies are the tropical grasslands of Africa. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The Veld has a mild climate with warm summers and cool winters. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Prairies are known as the 'Bread basket of the USA'. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Agriculture is the most important occupation of the people of the Veld. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The High Veld is found in South Africa. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Match the columns.**

Column A	Column B
1. Wheat	(a) A diamond mine
2. Orange	(b) Sheep
3. Willows	(c) River
4. Merino	(d) An important crop of the USA
5. Kimberley	(e) A deciduous tree

**V. Short Answer Questions.**

1. State the location of the Prairie grasslands.
2. Name the two important occupations of the people of the Velds.
3. Name the common animals found in the Veld region.
4. Name the animals found in the Prairies.

**VI. Long Answer Questions.**

1. Give an account of the life of the people in the Prairies.
2. Write a short note on the flora and fauna in the Velds.
3. Enlist the common features of the Prairies and the Velds.
4. What is High Veld? Describe its features.

**VII. Map Work**

On an outline map of the world, mark the following:

- (a) Prairies      (b) Velds      (c) Great Lakes      (d) Johannesburg      (e) Chicago

**VIII. Project and Activities**

1. Collect pictures of animals found in the Prairies and the Velds and paste them on a chart paper.
2. Prepare a project report comparing the granary of India and granary of the world.
3. Prairies are called the bread basket of the world. Extensive agriculture is practised here. Animal rearing is also an important economic activity here. There are huge

animal farms called **ranches**. The ranches are looked after by specially trained workers called **cowboys**. Find out more about ranches and cowboys and write an essay on them in about 100-200 words.

### **VALUE-BASED QUESTION**

Like bisons, the Royal Bengal tigers are becoming extinct. Suggest some measures that we should take to protect tigers.

### **HOTS: THINK BEYOND**

How is the style and technique of farming in the Prairies different from ours? Can we adopt the farming techniques in the Prairies for our farmers?

**New Words to Remember**

**Nomads:** Tribal groups that move from place to place with their animals in search of water and pastures.

**Oasis:** A fertile part in a desert where underground water is available which makes cultivation possible.

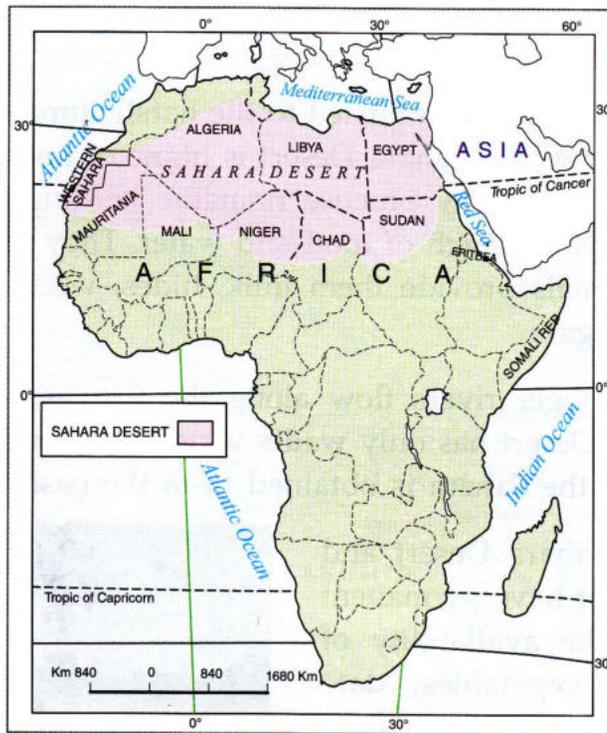
**Extreme climate:** Climate characterized by extremely hot summers and extremely cold winters.

Deserts are regions of extremely low rainfall and are generally devoid of vegetation. The scarcity of water hampers the growth of plants in this region. The annual rainfall is generally less than 25 centimetres. There are two types of deserts: (1) Hot deserts located in the tropical latitudes, e.g. the Sahara, the Arabian Desert, the Kalahari, the Thar, the Great Australian Desert, etc. (2) Cold deserts located in high altitudes and in polar regions like Ladakh, Alaska, Siberia and Antarctica. Life in these regions is very difficult due to harsh climatic conditions.

**SAHARA: A HOT DESERT****LOCATION**

The Sahara Desert is the largest desert in the world occupying a vast area in the northern part of Africa. It extends from the Atlantic coast in the west to the Red Sea in the east covering an area of 8.54 million square kilometres. It spreads across 11 African countries, namely, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libya, Chad, Egypt, Sudan, Niger, Mali, Mauritania and Senegal.

The topography of the Sahara Desert varies between sandy plains to rocky plateaus. The Nile river flows along the east and the river Niger flows along the west of the Sahara Desert. The Tropic of Cancer passes through the middle of the desert. The surface of this desert is not uniform. It has highlands plateaus, plains and basins. The **Mt. Emi Koussi** (3415 m) in the Tibesti range is the highest point. One-fourth of the Sahara Desert is covered with sand. It is a flat, waterless wasteland. It is also



The Sahara desert—Africa

called **Elkhela** which means emptiness. On the southern border of the Sahara Desert, Lake Chad is the only freshwater lake.

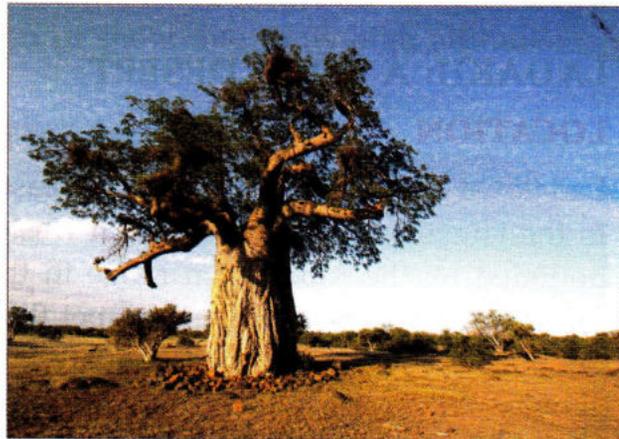
### CLIMATE

The climate of the Sahara Desert is of extreme type. During days, the temperature rises to more than 50 °C, while at nights, it goes below the freezing point. Rainfall is extremely less and the winds are dry and scorching. Hence, the days are extremely hot and the nights extremely cold.

Sand is a good absorber of heat. It absorbs heat quickly during the day. It is also a good radiator of heat that makes the sand cold at night.

### NATURAL VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE

Vegetation in deserts is generally sparse. The vegetation consists of thorny bushes, cacti, baobab, date palms and acacia. Vegetation grows in peripheral areas where some water is available. Such areas are known as **oasis**. In the oasis, date palms, cereals and vegetables are cultivated. The common animals of this region are camel, sheep, goat, hyenas, jackals and foxes. Camel is called the 'ship of the desert' as it can survive without food and water for a long time.



Baobab tree

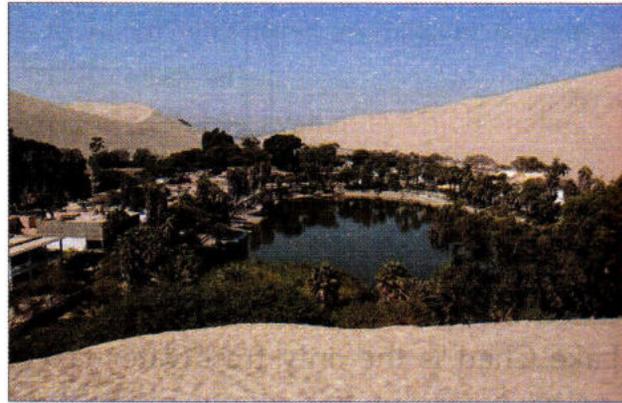
## LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

People in the Sahara Desert have adjusted to the harsh climate. However, the density of population is very low. The Sahara Desert is home of nomadic tribes, namely, the Bedouins and the Tuaregs. They practise nomadic herding, moving from place to place with their animals in search of food and water. They rear sheep, goats, camels and horses. These animals provide them milk, hides, wool, etc. These tribes trade locally in dates and rugs.

The Nile and the Niger rivers flow along the fringes of this desert. The vast expanse of the Sahara Desert has only **wadis** which were once important rivers. The underground water in the Sahara is obtained from the oases found in this region.

The **oases** of the Sahara Desert and the Nile valley in Egypt have permanent settlements. Due to the availability of water, people grow vegetables, date palms and crops like rice, wheat, cotton, etc.

Over the past few decades, the Sahara Desert stretches of north Africa have become rich and modern due to the discovery of oil. Algeria, Libya and Egypt have large reserves of oil that are exploited for development. Other minerals found in the Sahara Desert are iron, manganese and uranium.



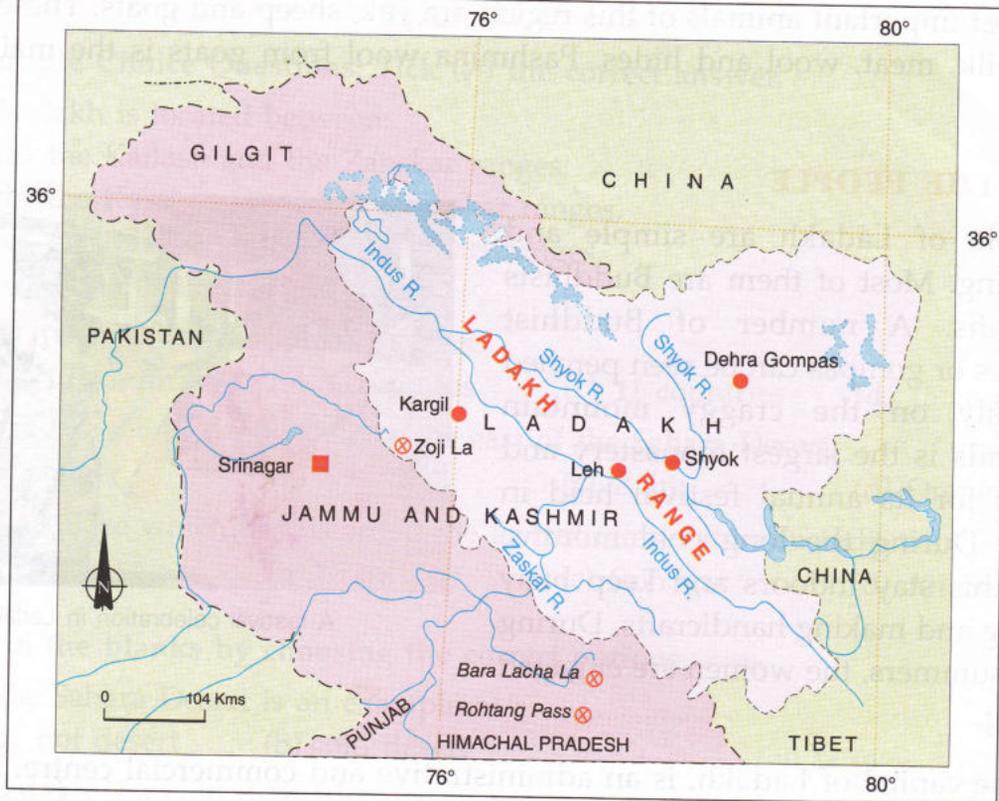
An oasis in the Sahara desert

The life of the people in the Sahara Desert is undergoing changes as the people import most of their requirements from other countries. Buildings are now air-conditioned and water desalination plants have been set-up to provide drinking water. Tractors, automobiles and aeroplanes have replaced camels and so, camel herders are rapidly declining. More and more herdsmen are taking up jobs in cities mainly in oil and natural gas fields.

## LADAKH: A COLD DESERT

### LOCATION

Ladakh, a cold desert located in the eastern part of Jammu and Kashmir in India, lies in the Himalayas. In 1979, Ladakh was divided into the Leh and Kargil districts. It is bounded by the Karakoram range in the north and the Zaskar range in the south. The River Indus which rises in Tibet flows through Ladakh. Ladakh is a cold and dry desert. It covers nearly 98,000 square kilometres of area and supports a population of about 2 lakhs. The Ladakh range has an average altitude of 6000 metres above the sea level. Ladakh is surrounded by glaciers such as the Gangri glacier. The altitude



Ladakh in Jammu and Kashmir

of Ladakh varies from about 3000 metres in Kargil to about 8000 metres in the Karakoram range.

### CLIMATE

The climate of Ladakh is of extreme type. Situated at a high altitude, the temperature here reaches  $-45^{\circ}\text{C}$  in winter while summer temperature rarely exceeds  $27^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Winters are cold and dry. In summers, days are warm and nights are cool. Drass near Kargil has recorded the lowest temperature in India. The annual precipitation is very less, as low as 10 centimetres, as Ladakh is located in the rain shadow region of the Himalayas. It receives very less rainfall. By the time the monsoon winds reach here, they become dry. Most of the precipitation falls in the form of snow due to its high altitude.

### NATURAL VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE

The harsh climatic conditions in Ladakh do not support the growth of vegetation on a large-scale. In areas of water availability, people grow crops like barley, and vegetables and fruits like apples, apricots and walnuts. In the lower slopes, there are coniferous forests that yield willow timber used for making cricket bats.



Yak

The most important animals of this region are yak, sheep and goats. These animals provide milk, meat, wool and hides. Pashmina wool from goats is the main source of income.

### LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

The people of Ladakh are simple and hardworking. Most of them are Buddhists or Muslims. A number of Buddhist monasteries or gompas can be seen perched precariously on the craggy mountain sides. **Hemis** is the largest monastery and is famous for its annual festival held in June–July. During the long cold months, the Ladakhis stay indoors and keep busy in weaving and making handicrafts. During the short summers, the women are engaged in farming.



A festival celebration in Ladakh

Leh, the capital of Ladakh, is an administrative and commercial centre. It is well-connected by road and air. The government is making efforts to make the region accessible to domestic and foreign tourists.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Desert regions are characterised by severely low rainfall, sparse vegetation and harsh and extreme temperatures.
- There are two types of deserts in the world, namely, hot deserts located in the tropical latitudes, and cold deserts located in high altitudes and polar regions.
- The Sahara Desert is the world's largest desert that is located in Africa. It has a varied topography that includes sandy plains and rocky plateaus and has an extreme climate that is characterised by scorching summers and freezing winters.
- The sparse vegetation in the Sahara Desert consists of thorny bushes, cacti, acacia, etc. and the common animals of this region are camels, sheep, hyena, etc.
- The density of population is very low in the Sahara Desert and nomadic tribes like the Bedouins and the Tuaregs live here. These tribes settle near the oases and cultivate vegetables, date palms and other crops.
- The Sahara Desert has become modernised over the past few decades with the discovery of oil and mineral reserves.
- Ladakh is a cold and dry desert located in the eastern part of Jammu and Kashmir in India. It has an extremely cold climate due to its high altitude.
- The harsh climatic conditions in Ladakh are not suitable for the large-scale growth of vegetation. Small-scale farming, weaving, making handicrafts and dairy farming are the major occupations of the people living in this region.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Ladakh is located between:
  - the Kailash and the Zaskar ranges.
  - the Karakoram and the Zaskar ranges.
  - the Karakoram and the Kaitart ranges.
  - None of the above
- The Sahara Desert spreads across:
  - 10 countries
  - 8 countries
  - 11 countries
  - 15 countries
- The river which flows along the east of the Sahara Desert:
  - Niger
  - Nile
  - Zaire
  - Orange
- The place which has recorded the lowest temperature in India:
  - Leh
  - Drass
  - Srinagar
  - Amritsar

### II. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options.

- The Sahara Desert is an example of a .....
  - hot desert
  - cold desert
- Ladakh is a cold desert located in the .....
  - eastern part of Jammu and Kashmir
  - western part of Jammu and Kashmir
  - north of the Himalayas
- ..... is called the ship of the desert.
  - Llamas
  - Camel
- Bedouins are the nomadic tribes of .....
  - Jammu and Kashmir
  - Sahara Desert

### III. Mark True or False against each of the following statements.

- The Sahara Desert extends from the Atlantic Ocean in the west to the Red Sea in the east. \_\_\_\_\_
- The Sahara Desert has a very high density of population. \_\_\_\_\_
- Ladakh receives most of the precipitation in the form of snowfall. \_\_\_\_\_
- Hemis is the largest Buddhist monastery in Ladakh. \_\_\_\_\_

### IV. Match the columns.

#### Column A

- Ladakh
- Leh
- Tuaregs
- Sahara

#### Column B

- Largest desert
- A nomadic tribe
- Capital of Ladakh
- A cold, dry desert

#### V. Short Answer Questions.

1. Give one example each of a hot desert and a cold desert.
2. Name the highest point of the Sahara Desert.
3. Why does Leh receive very low rainfall?
4. Name the leading oil producing countries of Africa.
5. What are gompas?
6. Name the animals reared in Ladakh.
7. Which crops are grown in the Nile valley?

#### VI. Long Answer Questions.

1. The life of the people of the Sahara Desert is changing very rapidly. Explain.
2. Give an account of the life of the people in Ladakh.
3. Describe the life of the tribal people living in the Sahara Desert.
4. Write a note on the culture and religions followed by the people of Ladakh.

#### VII. Map Work

On an outline map of the world, mark the following:

- (a) Sahara Desert
- (b) Ladakh

#### VIII. Projects and Activities

1. Make a collage on the lives of the people of the Sahara Desert and Ladakh.
2. Enact a play on the lives of the Bedouin tribe and the people of Ladakh, their lifestyles and their sources of livelihood.

#### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

'Shatoosh', a kind of fur obtained from Chiru (found in Tibet) is used to make woollen clothes or shawls. It costs high in the International market. Would you like to present a shatoosh shawl to your grand parents? Give reasons for your answer.

#### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Ladakh in the Tibetan term means 'Land of the high passes'. Why is it called so?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 9–10)

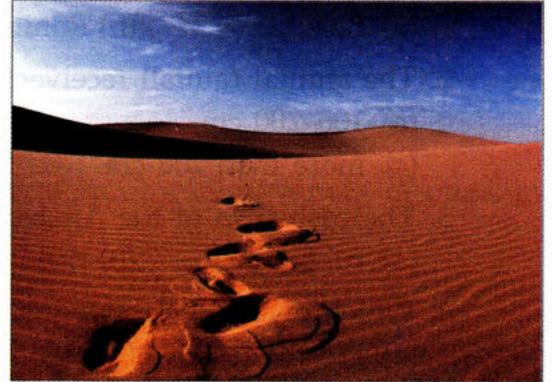
### I. Make a Chart

Collect pictures of different tribal and native people of the Prairies and the Velds. Paste them on a big chart paper and also label the pictures.

### II. Picture Study

Look at the picture and answer the following questions:

- Where is this region found in our country?
- Which plants and animals are found in this area?
- Name three big deserts of the world.



### III. Map Work

On an outline map of India, mark the following places:

- Leh
- Kargil
- Karakoram range

### IV. Project Work

Make a project report on the lives and culture of the Bedouin tribe. Paste pictures of the tribal people to make your report colourful and attractive.



## TEST PAPER

(Based on Chapters 7–10)

Total Marks: 50

Time: 2 Hours

### I. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1 × 8 = 8

- The first man-made satellite of India:  
(a) Bhaskar            (b) Rohini            (c) Aryabhata            (d) Apple
- The annual rainfall received in the Amazon basin:  
(a) 100–200 cm.            (b) less than 100 cm.  
(c) more than 200 cm.            (d) 10–20 cm.
- The cash crop of the Amazon basin:  
(a) rubber            (b) rice            (c) coffee            (d) tobacco
- Which one of the following is the temperate grassland of Australia?  
(a) Prairies            (b) Downs            (c) Pampas            (d) Veld
- The type of agriculture practised in the Prairies:  
(a) extensive.            (b) intensive.            (c) subsistence.            (d) primitive.
- An example of extinct animal:  
(a) Bengal Tiger            (b) Tiger            (c) Bison            (d) Llama
- The river that flows through Ladakh:  
(a) Ganga            (b) Brahmaputra            (c) Indus            (d) Satluj
- Johannesburg is famous for:  
(a) diamond            (b) gold            (c) silver            (d) coal

### II. Match the columns.

1 × 6 = 6

#### Column A

- Ladakh
- Orange
- Granary of the world
- Tsangpo
- Slash and burn
- Bhaskar

#### Column B

- A river of Veld
- Prairies
- Brahmaputra
- Agriculture
- Satellite
- Jammu and Kashmir

### III. Fill in the blanks.

1 × 6 = 6

- ..... is the seasonal migration of people with their animals.
- The first railway line in India started in .....
- ..... pipeline is the longest pipeline in India.
- ..... is the world's largest river in terms of volume of water.

5. .... in Canada is called the 'Gateway to the Prairies'.

6. .... is the capital of Ladakh.

**IV. Write short answers in about 30 words each.**

2×5=10

1. Describe the location of the Prairies.
2. Why does Ladakh receive very low rainfall?
3. Explain the location of the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin.
4. Which species of sheep is reared in the Velds for its quality wool?
5. Name the two mountain ranges surrounding Ladakh.

**V. Give long answers in about 60 words each.**

4×5=20

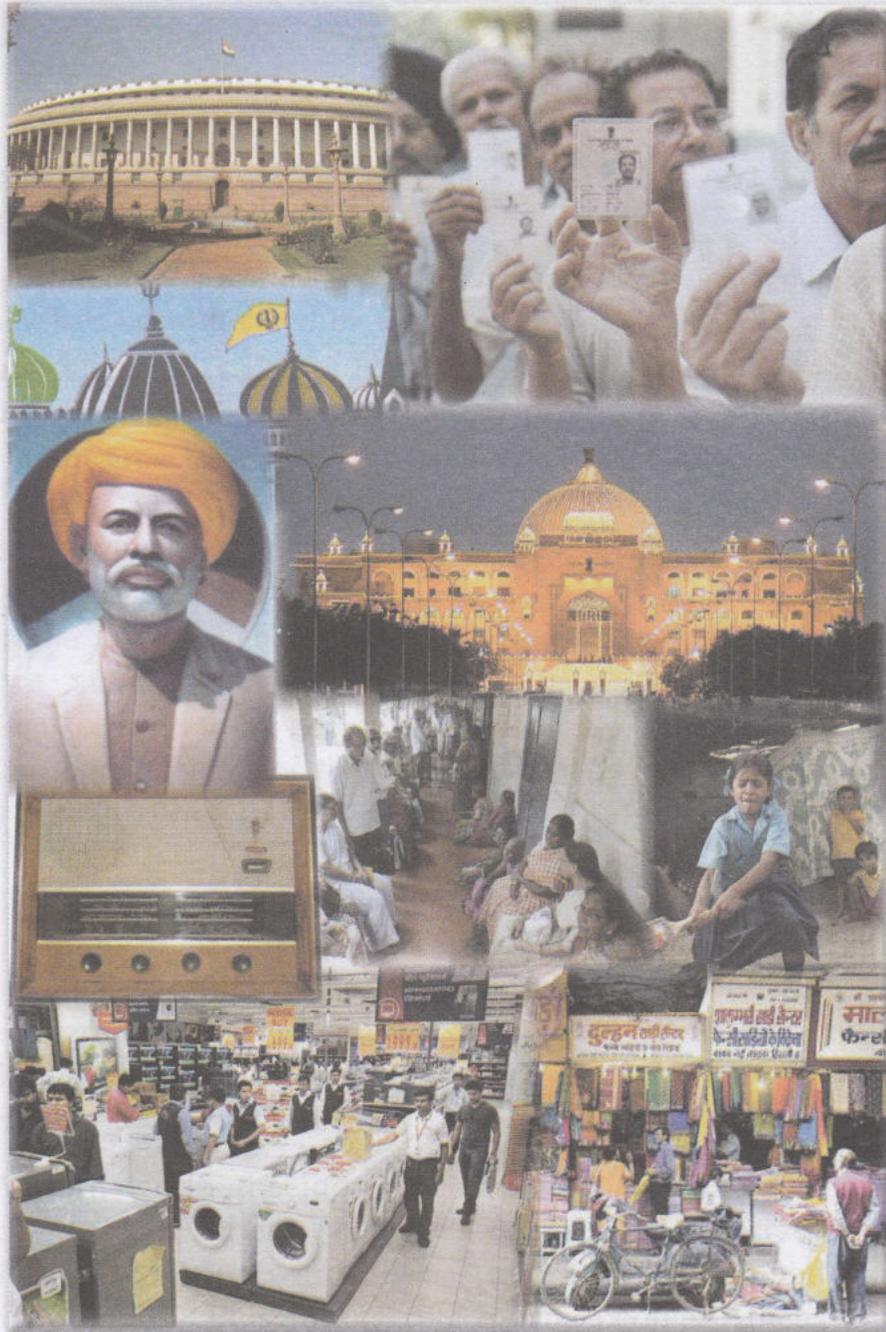
1. Describe the climate of the Sahara Desert.
2. What are the factors which favour the cultivation of a large variety of crops in the Prairies?
3. Name the different types of rural settlements. Where are such settlements found?
4. Describe the natural vegetation and wildlife found in the Velds.
5. What are the advantages of airways?





Democracy and

101



## Social and Political Life

In Roman Republic too there were some elements of representative democracy. Some of the public posts were filled by elections, it were the Romans who gave the



# Democracy and The Need for it

## New Words to Remember

**Divine Right Theory:** Many rulers in the seventeenth and eighteenth century believed that they had been destined by God to rule the people.

**Rule of Law:** Supremacy of law. It is the basis for administration of justice. No person will suffer unless he has violated the law of the land.

**Universal Adult Franchise:** The right given to all adult citizens irrespective of their caste, religion, race or sex.

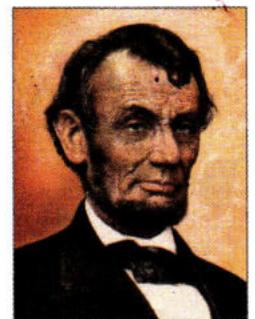
**Legislature:** Law-making body. The Parliament is the Union legislature of our country.

**Executive:** The body which implements laws and runs the administration of the country.

**Marginalised sections:** Those people who are treated as insignificant and do not get the same opportunities for their development as the privileged sections of the society.

Democracy is a form of government in which people freely participate in the governance of the country. They elect their representatives who govern on their behalf. The government is answerable to people for all its acts and policies. In the words of Abraham Lincoln "It is the government of the people, by the people and for the people."

In the Western world the idea of Democracy developed in the Greek city-state of Athens (1000 BC – 323 BC). Democracy is derived from two Greek words: *demos* meaning 'people' and *kratia* meaning 'rule'. It thus means rule by the people. Athens had Direct Democracy. All the free citizens; with the exception of slaves, women and aliens living in Greece; had the right to make laws. But it was a limited Democracy meant only for free citizens.



Abraham Lincoln

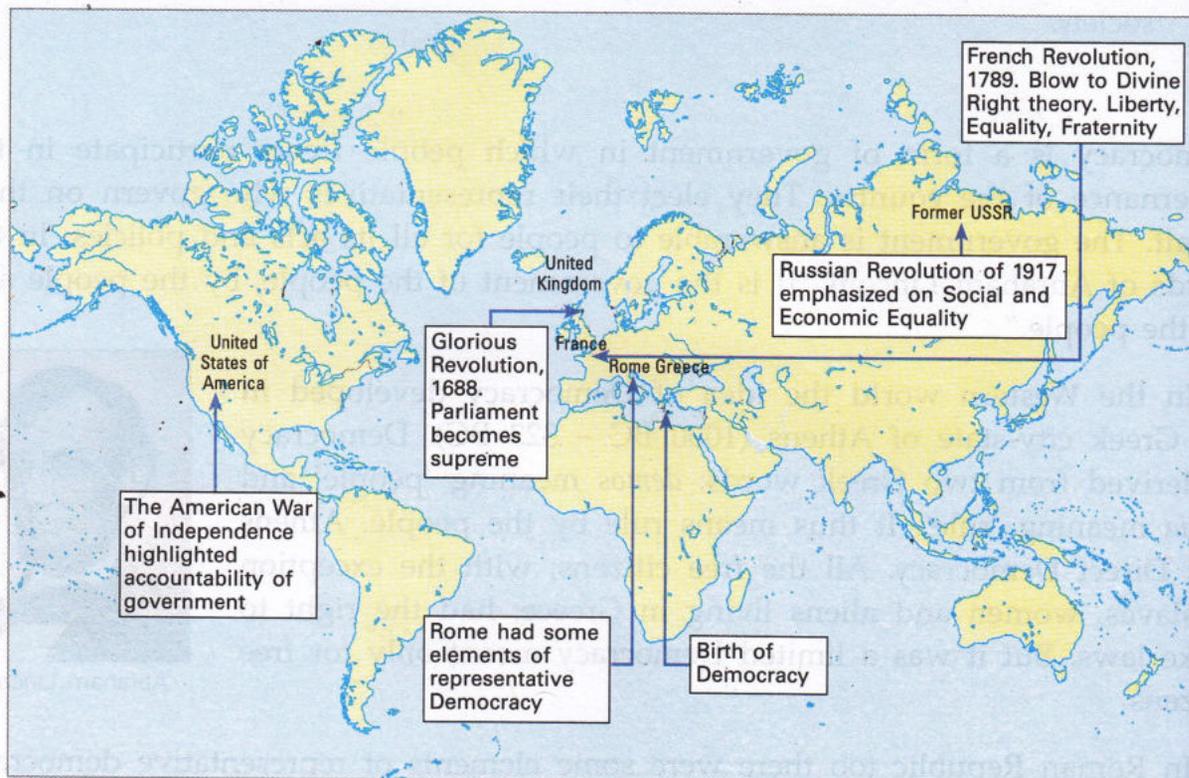
In Roman Republic too there were some elements of representative democracy. Some of the public posts were filled by elections. It were the Romans who gave the

idea of Republicanism to the world. No ruler or dictator could dare assume a royal title such as 'King'.

In modern times, we have only Indirect Democracy. All citizens elect their representatives who make laws for them. Due to large size of the country and huge population, Direct Democracy is not possible in modern times.

The concept and idea of Democracy did not develop in its present form all of a sudden. It was a gradual process. Various revolutions contributed to the growth of Democracy.

1. The Glorious Revolution of 1688 in England gave a blow to the absolute rule of the King. It established the Rule of Law. It meant that people would henceforth be governed by a set of known laws and not according to the wishes of the King. The Glorious Revolution transferred powers from the King to the Parliament.
2. The French Revolution of 1789 upheld the ideals of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity. It gave a blow to the Divine Rights of the King. This Revolution was directed against the inequalities that were present in the French society. Soon after the Revolution, a Constitution was made which gave many civil and political rights to the French people. The Constitution began with the Declaration of Rights of Man and Citizens. France became a Democratic Republic after the Revolution.



Evolution of Democracy

3. The American War of Independence established the idea that the government which did not work for the welfare of the people, had no right to exist. Such a government would be thrown out by the people.
4. The Russian Revolution of 1917 made it clear that the political equality was of no use without social and economic equalities.

## FORMS OF GOVERNMENT

There are various types of governments that exist in today's world. They are as follows:

1. **Monarchy:** The Monarchy is a system of government in which all the powers are in the hands of the King or a Queen whose office is hereditary. It can be of two types, namely, Absolute Monarchy and Constitutional Monarchy.

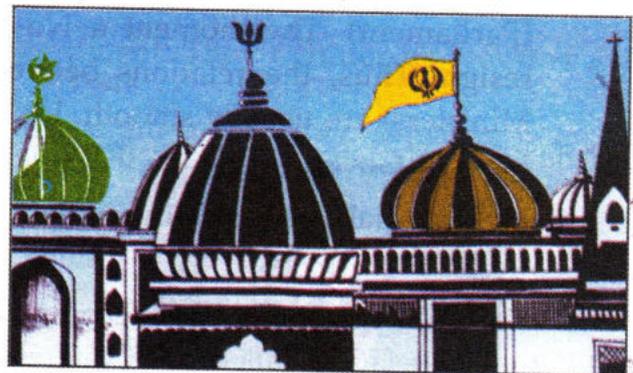
**Absolute Monarchy:** Absolute Monarchy means that the ruler has total control over the state. All the powers of government are vested in a Monarch.

**Constitutional Monarchy:** Under Constitutional Monarchy the powers of the ruler are specified by the Constitution. He cannot act beyond these powers. The United Kingdom (UK) presents an example of Constitutional Monarchy.



Queen Elizabeth II

2. **Theocratic State:** In a theocratic state, there is an official religion. People belonging to that religion have an advantage over others. For example, Pakistan is a theocratic state. All the civil laws are made in accordance with the Islamic teachings. Most of the people of Pakistan follow Islam.



India: A secular state

3. **Secular State:** India is a secular state. Here, there is no official religion. People of all religions have the freedom to practise their own religious faith. People following different religions/faiths have also the right to build their places of worship. No religious activity is financed by the State.

4. **Dictatorship:** Dictatorship is a government in which absolute power is vested in a single individual. Adolf Hitler was the dictator of Germany and he was the leader of the Nazi Party. Our neighbouring country Myanmar is ruled by military dictators.



Adolf Hitler

### Difference between Dictatorship and Democracy

S.No.	Dictatorship	Democracy
1.	In Dictatorship absolute power is vested in a single individual.	In a Democracy the government is formed by the people through elections.
2.	There is no fixed term for the government. The Dictator tries to remain in power as long as he can.	The government has a fixed tenure. In India the Lok Sabha and members of State Legislatures are elected for a period of five years.
3.	It is very difficult to change a Dictatorial Government. This is possible only when people revolt.	If the government fails to work for the welfare of the people, it can be thrown out at the next election.
4.	Civil rights and liberties of the people are crushed by the Dictator. He rules through brute 'force'.	The people enjoy many kinds of rights in a Democracy. The <b>ballots</b> or the right to vote is a powerful instrument in the hands of people. No government can ignore the voice of the people.
5.	Under dictatorship an individual exists for the State.	The State exists for the welfare of the people.

5. **Parliamentary Form of Government:** In a Parliamentary form of Government, the Executive or the Council of Ministers is part and parcel of the Legislature. The Prime Minister and all other Ministers are members of the Legislature. They remain in power as long as they enjoy the confidence of the Legislature (Parliament). The moment a No-confidence Motion is passed, they have to resign. Thus, the relations between the Legislature and the Executive (the Ministers) are usually smooth. UK is presented as the Mother of Parliamentary form of Government.
6. **Presidential Form of Government:** The Presidential form of government exists in USA.
  - (a) In America, the President or Head of the Executive is independent of the Legislature called the Congress.
  - (b) Once elected, the President remains in office for a full term of four years. He cannot be removed easily before his term is over.
  - (c) The Ministers called the Secretaries are answerable to the President, not the legislature.
  - (d) In USA it is possible that the President belongs to one party, whereas some other party has majority in the Congress.
7. **Unitary Form of Government:**
  - (a) In the Unitary form of government, all powers are vested in the Central Government, i.e. the whole territory is governed from a single centre of power.

- (b) For administrative convenience, the Centre can create units and give some governmental powers to them. These units do not derive their powers from the Constitution. The Centre can take away the power of the Units or dissolve them at its will.
- (c) There is no need for a written Constitution. The example of this form of government is UK.

#### 8. Federal Form of Government:

- (a) In the Federal form of government there are two centres of power: The Central Government and the State Governments.
- (b) The powers are distributed between the Central Government and the State Governments by the Constitution.
- (c) There is a need for a written Constitution so that the Central and the State governments may know what precisely their powers are.
- (d) There is a need for an independent Supreme Court so that the disputes between the Central and State governments may be finally settled.

Indian Constitution is Federal in character. But the Central Government is very powerful in India. The Central Government was made strong in order to strengthen the unity and integrity of the country.

### BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DEMOCRACY

1. In a Democracy people elect their government. They monitor its working and can vote it out at the next election.
2. Elections are held periodically in this form of government. In our country, elections are usually held once in every five years.
3. There is Universal Adult Franchise, i.e. the Right to Vote is given to every adult citizen irrespective of their caste, sex, religion, race or language.
4. The government works within the framework of the Constitution. In most cases, the democratic countries have a written Constitution.
5. There is distribution of powers among the three organs of the government—the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary. The powers of all the three organs are clearly specified so that there is no conflict among them.
6. Equality and Freedom could prevail only in a democratic country. These are the essential ideals of Democracy.
7. Opposition has a very important role to play in a democracy.
8. The people enjoy rights such as freedom of speech and the right to practise religion in a Democracy.

## ELEMENTS OF DEMOCRACY

After the Second World War, a large number of countries became free from foreign rule. They all adopted democratic form of government. There are certain elements that made this system of government very popular, such as the Right to Equality and the Right to Freedom.

### EQUALITY

Equality is an essential element of Democracy. It means all are equal before law. No discrimination will be made on the basis of caste, race, religion, sex or place of birth. The Constitution of India grants the Right to Equality. Equality is ensured through Universal Adult Franchise.



Equality before law

Equality also means absence of privileges based on one's high social class. All must receive proper opportunities for their development. Many a time we find that a person has ability but he does not have the opportunity to develop his skills. Many of us are victims of unjust socio-economic system. Democracy aims at providing social justice and reducing the gap between the rich and the poor.

### FREEDOM

Freedom is the basic element of Democracy. Only in democratic countries can people have freedom. When one has freedom of speech, he can criticize the wrong policies and programmes of the government. It is because of this Freedom that newspapers may analyse the success and failures of the government. The people can organise meetings, hold debates and campaign for reforms. Democracy

not only ensures individual freedom, it also protects the rights of the minorities to preserve and promote their culture and language. The right to seek information from government on any public matter has also been granted to the people of India.

### DECISION-MAKING MECHANISMS

The Constitutions of Democratic countries are mostly written documents, which specify the nature and powers of the Government. The Constitution specifies the powers of the three organs of the Government—the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary.

**The Legislature:** People elect their representatives to the Legislatures. The Legislature may comprise one House or two Houses. Our Union Legislature is the Parliament. It consists of two Houses—the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha. The Union Legislature has the power to make laws for the whole country. The proposal



Freedom of Speech

for a law is called a Bill. The Bill has to pass several stages before it becomes an Act. When both the Houses have passed a Bill it is sent to the President for his/her assent. After the President's assent it becomes an Act or a law.

**The Executive:** The Executive is an important element of Democracy. The Political Executive consists of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. They take policy decisions on behalf of the people. The Prime Minister is the leader of the majority party or an Alliance in the Lok Sabha. The Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers implement the laws made by the Parliament. All laws have to be within the framework of the Constitution. Sometimes new laws have to be passed to meet new problems. The law regarding the Right to Information passed in 2005 was one such Act.

The Central Government makes policy decisions on subjects like defence, foreign affairs, finance, railways, etc. In implementation of the laws, the Ministers are helped by IAS officers, and other officials who constitute the bureaucracy.

**The Judiciary:** The Judiciary (courts) interprets the laws and punishes the law-breakers. It protects the Fundamental Rights of the people and also deals with civil and criminal cases. It interprets the Constitution. Judiciary plays an important role in Democracy. It has to be impartial while giving judgements. It should be free from the interference of the Executive and the Legislature.

**Protection of Interests of Minorities:** The laws are passed by a majority vote in the legislature. All the members cannot hold the same opinion on any issue. So majority opinion prevails. But the government cannot ignore the interests of minorities.

Our Constitution has provisions to protect the interests of regional, linguistic and religious minorities. For example, the minorities have the right to conserve their language, script and culture. The minorities also have the right to establish educational institutions.

## ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENCES

E. M. Forster praises Democracy for two reasons. First, because it provides variety and secondly, it permits criticism. On any particular issue members of the Legislature may have many views and opinions. There should be tolerance for others' views,



The Parliament House



The Supreme Court of India

even if they are different from our own. While majority have their way, the minorities should have their say. There should be a policy of give and take. Democracy is a government by discussion because decisions on policy matters are taken only after a thorough discussion. The majority cannot forcibly impose its decision on minorities. It is also a government by persuasion. Formal and informal discussions usually helped us remove our differences amicably. Therefore, Democracy is the ideal form of government.

## ENHANCING HUMAN DIGNITY

Development is what every government promises. Rulers in a democracy ensure that the fruits of development should reach the marginalised sections of society. It is known as Social Justice. The government should work hard to reduce the gap between the rich and the poor. The Democratic Government launches many welfare activities for economically and socially weaker sections of the society.

1. There is reservation of seats for the Scheduled Castes (SCs) and Scheduled Tribes (STs) in the government services and in the Lok Sabha and Legislative Assemblies of States. Seats are reserved for Other Backward Classes (OBCs) also in central educational institutions. This has been done to give the weaker sections opportunities which had been denied to them for long. This ensures that they can live with dignity.
2. Untouchability has been abolished.
3. The government provides low cost houses for weaker sections of society.
4. A large number of welfare schemes have been launched for them.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Democracy is a form of government in which people freely participate in the governance of the country. Direct Democracy developed first in the city state of Athens in Greece.
- A few revolutions such as the Glorious Revolution of 1688, the French Revolution of 1789 and the Russian Revolution of 1917 contributed to the growth of democratic ideas.
- There are different forms of government in the world.
  - Some countries have Monarchy.
  - In theocratic states, there is an official religion. But a secular state allows equal freedom of faith and worship to all people.

- In Parliamentary form of government, the Executive (Council of Ministers) is a part and parcel of the Legislature, whereas in a Presidential form of government the Executive is independent of the Legislature.
- Under a Unitary form of government the whole territory is governed from a single centre of power. In a Federal form of government there are two centres of authority – the Central Government and the State Governments.
- In a Democracy people are the ultimate source of power. Under a Dictatorship absolute power is vested in a single individual. Civil rights and liberties are crushed by the dictator.
- The democratic government became popular because of elements such as equality, freedom, decision-making mechanisms, accomodation of mutual differences and upholding human dignity.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. In the Western world the idea of Democracy originated in the Greek city state of
 

(a) Syracuse.	(b) Acragas.
(c) Athens.	(d) Aegina.
2. The Glorious Revolution of 1688 transferred power from the king to
 

(a) nobles.	(b) religious leaders.
(c) the Parliament.	(d) the working class.
3. India has a
 

(a) Presidential form of government.	(b) Unitary form of government.
(c) Parliamentary form of government.	(d) Direct Democracy.
4. In a theocratic state
 

(a) people of different religions are given equal rights.	(b) people of one religion have advantage over others.
(c) all powers are in the hands of one person or one party.	(d) people have full freedom of speech.

### II. Write true or false.

1. The modern democracies are mostly Direct Democracies.
2. In dictatorship the absolute power is vested in a single individual.
3. In a Unitary form of government the Central Government may dissolve the administrative units at will.
4. The French Revolution upheld the ideals of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity.
5. The Opposition has no important role to play in a Democracy.

### III. Match the columns.

#### Column A

1. Abraham Lincoln
2. Declaration of the Rights of Man and Citizens
3. Adolf Hitler
4. Military Dictatorship until very recently
5. Unitary form of government

#### Column B

- (a) Germany's Dictator
- (b) Myanmar
- (c) France
- (d) United Kingdom
- (e) USA

### IV. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. What is meant by Democracy?
2. How did Abraham Lincoln define Democracy?
3. What is the difference between Absolute Monarchy and Constitutional Monarchy?
4. What is a secular state?
5. What does Equality mean?

### V. Answer the following questions.

1. Distinguish between Unitary form of government and Federal form of government.
2. Distinguish between Parliamentary government and Presidential form of government.
3. "Democracy is a government by discussion and persuasion". How?
4. How does Democracy enhance human dignity?

### VI. Projects and Activities

1. Collect pictures of the US President and the President of India and paste them on your scrapbook.
2. You are a citizen of India which is a Democratic Republic. Prepare a project report mentioning the reasons why you would not like to live in a country run by a Dictator.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

In our country nearly one-third of the people live below poverty line. In your opinion what is the solution to the problem of poverty?

# 2

## Institutional Representation of Democracy

### New Words to Remember

**Constituency:** The electoral areas into which the country or a State is divided for the purpose of (Lok Sabha / State Legislative Assembly) elections.

**General Elections:** Elections to constitute the new Lok Sabha are called the General Elections.

**Secret Ballot:** The system of casting vote in secrecy so that no one knows for whom a person has voted. It helps the voter cast her/his vote without any fear or pressure.

**Mid-Term Poll:** When elections are held due to dissolution of the Lok Sabha or State Legislative Assembly before its term of five years is over.

**By-Election:** When elections are held to replace a member of the Lok Sabha or that of State Legislative Assembly because the person representing a particular constituency has either died or resigned.

**Election Petition:** If candidates are not satisfied with the way elections have been held, they can challenge the election of their rivals by means of an Election Petition. The election disputes would be decided by the High Court of the respective State.

**Manifestos:** Programmes and policies of political parties. The Manifesto deals with issues such as economic reforms, social justice, health, education and foreign policy.

We have learnt about different forms of government and also about essential elements of Democracy which made it the most popular form of government. In this chapter our focus will be on Electoral processes and political parties. The political parties are essential for the functioning of a political system.

### UNIVERSAL ADULT FRANCHISE

In an Indirect Democracy the citizens elect their representatives to the Legislature which makes laws for them. We cannot think of a democratic government these days without periodic elections.

In England the women were granted the right to vote for the first time in 1918. They got this right after a long drawnout struggle. Even today in some countries women do not have the right to vote.

Universal Adult Franchise means that every adult citizen should be granted the right to vote, irrespective of caste, religion, race, language and sex. In our country all citizens, who are 18 years of age and above have been given the right to vote. 'One man, one vote' is the norm that is followed in our country. The value of vote of a rich man and a poor man, a literate and an illiterate person, and a highly and a lowly placed man is the same. The advantages of Universal Adult Franchise are as follows:

1. It ensures political equality for all the members of a society. All citizens can participate in the process of government in a country without any discrimination. Every person has an equal say in the formation of the government.
2. It establishes a truly democratic government. If the right to vote is given only to a select few, we cannot call the government democratic in the real sense of the term.
3. It makes the government accountable for what it did. If it does not work well, people can vote it out at the next election.
4. It makes the people take interest in public affairs.



Voters at a polling booth

## ELECTIONS AND THEIR IMPORTANCE

Elections are held for the Lok Sabha and Legislative Assemblies every five years or earlier, as the case may be. Elections are important because of the following reasons.

1. Elections throw up a variety of issues. The parties issue their election manifestoes which deal with problems faced by people and country at large.
2. Through elections people elect their rulers. The party which secures majority in the Legislature forms the government.
3. It is through elections that people can exercise control over the government. A government which ignores people's welfare would be voted out at the next election.
4. Elections are the means of educating voters about problems that require thought and action to solve them.
5. Elections provide credibility and legitimacy to the government.
6. An elected government alone can protect human rights.

In India the responsibility of holding free and fair elections is vested in the Election Commission. It is an independent body. The Chief Election Commissioner and other Election Commissioners are appointed by the President for a period of six years.

## FUNCTIONS OF ELECTION COMMISSION

1. The Election Commission is responsible for holding elections to the Parliament and State Legislatures. It also directs and supervises the elections to the offices of the President and Vice-President.
2. It revises and updates the Voters List.
3. It gives recognition to political parties.
4. It allocates symbols to various political parties and independent candidates who contest the elections.
5. It prescribes model code of conduct for political parties and candidates so that the elections are free and fair.

## ELECTION PROCEDURE

A new Lok Sabha or a new Assembly shall be constituted on the expiry of the duration of the existing House or on dissolution. For this a notification shall be issued by the President or the Governor, as the case may be. As soon as the notification is issued, the election procedure starts.

1. **Notification of Election Dates:** The dates for election to various constituencies in a State are announced by the Election Commission.
2. **Selection of Candidates by Political Parties and Filing of Nomination Papers:** Election Commission announces the last date for filing of Nomination Papers. Different political parties immediately start selecting their candidates for contesting the election. The party candidates and Independents file their Nomination Papers.
3. **Scrutiny:** The Returning Officer scrutinizes the Nomination Papers. He may reject any nomination if the candidate is not qualified for being chosen to fill the seat.
4. **Publication of List of Candidates:** The Returning Officer publishes the list of contesting candidates.
5. **Allocation of Symbols:** The Election Commission allocates symbols to all the contesting candidates.
6. **Election Manifestos:** Political parties bring out their Election Manifestos. These manifestos specify the programmes and policies which the parties will implement, if voted to power.

7. **Election Campaign:** The candidates who belong to political parties or those contesting as Independent candidates distribute pamphlets, leaflets, flags, stickers, etc., amongst the voters. The political parties organise public meetings. Rallies are also organised to attract large crowds. Nowadays television plays an effective role in creating awareness about policies and programmes of various political parties. This campaign stops 48 hours before the time when poll ends on the polling day.

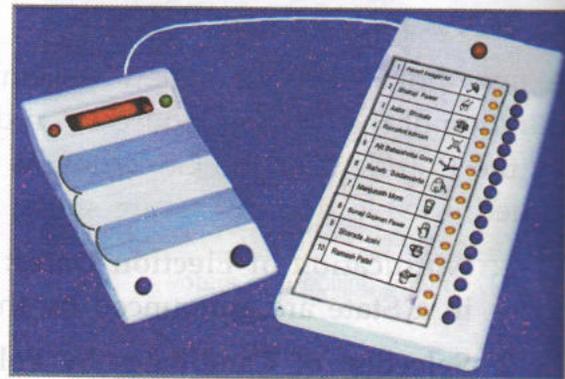


Meeting of a political party



An election photo identity card

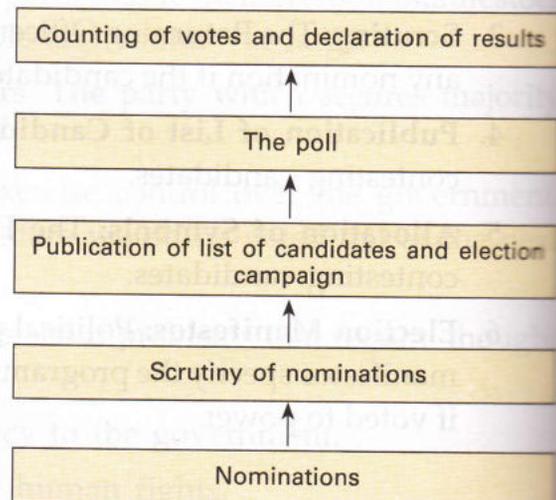
8. **Polls:** (a) On the polling day the voters record their vote in secrecy. (b) The voters are required to carry with them Election Photo Identity Card so that there is no impersonation. The Ballot Boxes or the Electronic Voting Machines (EVMs) are sealed and carried to the counting stations.



An Electronic Voting Machine

9. **Counting of Votes and Declaration of Results:** On the date fixed for counting, officials on election duty count the votes in the presence of the candidates or their representatives. The candidate who gets the highest number of votes is declared elected.

10. **Election Petition:** If a candidate feels that elections had not been held fairly, she/he can file a petition in High Court. Fresh elections are ordered when booth capturing has taken place at a polling station or the Ballot Boxes or EVMs are destroyed or lost.



The Election Procedure

These days Electronic Voting Machines (EVM) are used in most of the constituencies. The EVMs save time and simplify the whole process of counting of votes.

## POLITICAL PARTIES

We cannot think of free and fair elections without political parties. A political party is a group of people who act as a political unit and who aim to control the government and carry out their policies and programme.

The importance or the functions of political parties are as follows:

1. Parties conduct the election campaign and simplify the whole process of election. Without political parties, conducting elections would become very inconvenient. Elections to various bodies are usually held on party lines.
2. The majority party or a winning Alliance forms the government and other parties exercise check on the government. For a successful democracy, we need both a stable government and a strong opposition.
3. The political parties act as a link between the government and the citizens.
4. Parties mould public opinion and educate the people about important problems facing the country.
5. Political workers do a lot of social work and take up issues related to public welfare.

**Party System in India:** In India we have multi-party system. There are a number of political parties in India. We can classify the parties into national and regional parties.

### Difference between National Party and Regional Party

S.No.	National Party	Regional Party
1.	A national party has an influence all over the country or in many States.	The regional party has influence in one State or a few States.
2.	Their election manifestos cover national interests or issues.	Their election manifestos take up issues which pertain to that particular State or region.
3.	The emphasis of national party is on harmonising the conflicting regional interests.	The regional parties stand for greater autonomy for States.
4.	An exclusive Election Symbol is reserved for it throughout the country.	An Election Symbol is reserved for it in the State or Union Territory in which it is recognised.
5.	Examples of national parties are Indian National Congress, Bharatiya Janata Party and the CPI (M).	Examples of regional parties are Telugu Desam, DMK, Shiv Sena, Akali Dal and AIADMK.

### SOME NATIONAL PARTIES OF INDIA

**Indian National Congress:** The Indian National Congress was formed in 1885. It spearheaded the Freedom Movement. Its election symbol is a human hand. In May 2004, under Congress, the UPA (United Progressive Alliance) government was formed and Dr. Manmohan Singh became its Prime Minister. Again in 2009, a coalition government was formed under Congress.

**Bharatiya Janata Party:** The Bharatiya Janata Party came into existence on 6 April 1980. This party with its Allies had formed the government at the Centre with Shri Atal Bihari Vajpayee as the Prime Minister in 1999. Its election symbol is lotus. The BJP-led National Democratic Alliance (NDA) emerged victorious in the 16th General Elections. On 26 May 2014 Shri Narendra Modi of the BJP was sworn in as the new Prime Minister.

**Communist Party of India-Marxist (CPI-M):** The Communist Party of India was formed in 1925. Following the Chinese invasion on India in 1962 there was a split in the Party. The Communist Party of India-Marxist was formed in 1964. Its election symbol is a hammer, sickle and star.

## THE ROLE OF OPPOSITION

The Opposition has an important role to play in a Democracy. The Leader of Opposition has the same status as that of a Cabinet Minister.

1. The Opposition exercises adequate checks on the government. It criticizes its policies and checks the abuse of power by Government. If a No-Confidence Motion is passed, the Council of Ministers will have to resign.
2. The Opposition seeks enquiry into cases of bribery and corruption.
3. It moulds public opinion by holding demonstrations, rallies, *morchas* and public meetings against government's wrong policies.

The Opposition should support good measures of the government. Walkouts and slogan-shouting in the House should be avoided.

## COALITION GOVERNMENTS

India has a multi-party system. It is possible that in an election no party gets a clear majority in the House. Under such circumstances two or more parties decide to work together in order to govern. They elect a leader who is invited by the President to form the Government. In 1989 the National Front formed the government, with the outside support of the BJP and the Communist parties. In 2004 the Congress and its allies formed the UPA government with Dr. Manmohan Singh as the Prime Minister. The Congress considerably improved its position in 2009, but the new government under Dr. Manmohan Singh depended for its survival on many parties.

Running a coalition government is not an easy task. Different parties have their different policies which result in many conflicts. The parties which formed the coalition in 2004 had formulated a Common Minimum Programme (CMP) to run the government. Despite that Dr. Manmohan Singh government had to face much opposition from the coalition partners. The Communist parties had withdrawn support to the UPA Government in July 2008.

### A Few National Parties and their Symbols

National Party	Symbol Reserved	
1. Bharatiya Janata Party	Lotus	
2. Communist Party of India (Marxist) (CPI-M)	Hammer, sickle and star	
3. Indian National Congress	Hand	

### A Few Regional Parties and their Symbols

Regional Party	Symbol Reserved	
1. Bahujan Samaj Party	Elephant ( <i>Except in Assam, Sikkim and Puducherry</i> )	
2. Communist Party of India (CPI)	Ears of corn and sickle	
3. Asom Gana Parishad	Elephant	
4. National Conference	Plough	
5. Shiromani Akali Dal	Scales	
6. Telugu Desam Party	Bicycle	
7. Trinamool Congress	Trinamool	
8. DMK	Rising Sun	
9. AIADMK	Two leaves	
10. Shiv Sena	Bow and arrow	

According to some writers, a Coalition Government is more democratic, because it is formed by an agreement between many political parties. It commands 'wider support'. But most writers are of the opinion that a Coalition Government means a weak and ineffective government. A conflict between coalition partners may result in political instability. The country needed a strong and stable government. The elections to the 16th Lok Sabha were held during April-May 2014. The citizens voted in favour of a single political party after a gap of nearly 30 years. Although the BJP secured 282 out of 543 elected seats, it formed a Coalition Government with the support of NDA partners.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Universal Adult Franchise means that all adult citizens should have the right to vote irrespective of their caste, religion, race and sex.
- Election Commission holds elections for various representative institutions in our country.
- Political parties have a major role to play in a Democracy.
- There are many national and regional political parties in India. Some of the national parties are Indian National Congress, Bharatiya Janata Party, and the Communist Party of India-Marxist (CPI-M). The Akali Dal, DMK and Telugu Desam are some of the regional parties.
- Nowadays coalition governments have become very common. Regional parties and Independent candidates play an important role in the formation of coalition governments.

### EXERCISES

#### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. In India no person shall be eligible to cast a vote at a General Election unless she/he has attained the age of  
(a) twenty-five years. (b) twenty-one years.  
(c) twenty years. (d) eighteen years.
2. The Model Code of Conduct with regard to elections is prescribed by the  
(a) President of India (b) Election Commission  
(c) Prime Minister (d) Governor
3. When two or more parties form a Government in a State or at the Centre, we call it:  
(a) coalition government. (b) representative government.  
(c) State government. (d) a Union government.

4. Nomination Papers of candidates who stand in an election are submitted to an officer called the
- (a) Chief Election Commissioner.                      (b) Election Commissioner.  
(c) Returning Officer.                                      (d) Presiding Officer.

**II. Write true or false.**

1. The United Progressive Alliance (UPA) government at the Centre in 2004 was led by Shri Atal Bihari Vajpayee.
2. The manifestos of regional parties usually refer to national issues.
3. The Leader of Opposition has the same status as that of a Cabinet Minister.
4. The campaigning for votes by candidates continues till the day of polling.
5. Even today women do not have the right to vote in some countries.

**III. Match the columns.**

**Column A**

1. Bharatiya Janata Party
2. Indian National Congress
3. Shiv Sena
4. Communist Party of India-Marxist
5. Shiromani Akali Dal

**Column B**

- (a) Bow and arrow
- (b) Hammer, sickle and star
- (c) Lotus
- (d) Scales
- (e) Hand

**IV. Give short answers to the following questions.**

1. What is meant by Universal Adult Franchise?
2. Mention any two advantages of the Universal Adult Franchise.
3. Mention any two functions of the Election Commission.
4. What is an Election Manifesto?

**V. Answer the following questions.**

1. Discuss the election procedure with reference to the following.
  - (a) Filing of Nomination Papers
  - (b) Allocation of symbols
  - (c) The Poll
  - (d) Declaration of results
2. What is meant by political party? Mention any two of its functions.
3. Mention any three differences between a national political party and a regional political party.
4. What is a coalition government? What are the difficulties in running a coalition government?

## VI. Projects and Activities

1. Prepare a project showing the techniques that political parties employ to carry out their election campaign under the following headings.
  - (a) Public Meetings
  - (b) Rally
  - (c) Door-to-door canvassing

**Note:** To make the work impressive you should draw sketches or drawings or may use pictures connected with the topic.

2. Work in Groups: Divide the class into two groups. Each group will form a party and shall have its leader. Each party will prepare its election manifesto and design an election symbol. Present the manifesto and the election symbol to your class teacher for approval.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

What qualities would you like your political leaders to have?

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

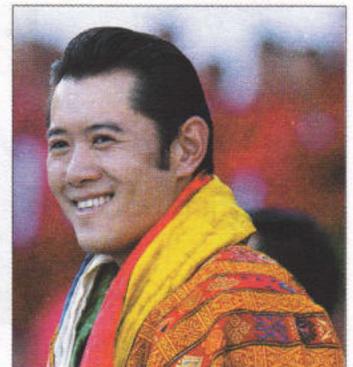
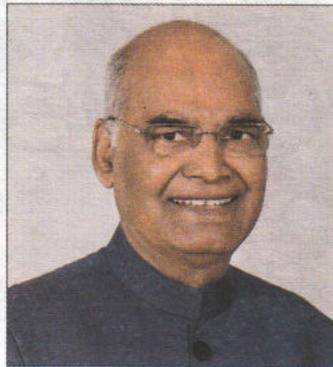
Why is Democracy called 'A Government of the People, by the People, for the People'?



# PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 1–2)

## I. Picture Study



Look at these pictures and answer the following questions.

- (a) Identify these persons.
- (b) Which countries they belong to?
- (c) Mention the two features of their respective governments.

(a) .....	(b) .....	(c) .....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

## II. Field Visit

Request your teacher to arrange a visit to the Parliamentary Session. Relate your experience and observation.

.....

.....

.....

.....

## III. Assignment

Suppose you have formed a political party with the help of your Classmates. Now name the Party and draw its Election Symbol.

#### IV. Group Discussion

“Mid-Day Meal Scheme has filled the gap between rich and poor in society”.

Have discussion in favour or against of the above statement in the Classroom.



Look at these pictures and answer the following questions.

- (a) Identify these persons.
- (b) Which countries they belong to?
- (c) Mention the two features of their respective governments.

..... (a) .....

..... (b) .....

..... (c) .....

II. Field Visit

Request your teacher to arrange a visit to the Parliamentary Session. Relate your experience and observation.

.....

.....

.....

.....

III. Assignment

Suppose you have formed a political party with the help of your classmates. Now name the Party and draw its Election Symbol.



## The State Government

### New Words to Remember

**Union Territory:** Territory that is directly administered by the Central Government. It may or may not have its Legislature.

**Ordinance:** An Ordinance has the same force as an Act of Parliament or State Legislature. It is issued when the Parliament or the State Legislature is not in Session. When Ordinances have been approved by the Parliament or the State Legislature, they become permanent laws. President and Governor may issue Ordinances.

**Money Bill:** The Bill that is related to income or expenditure of the State.

**Budget:** Estimates of income and expenditure during a financial year.

**Ordinary Bill:** The Bill which is not a Money Bill.

**Immunisation:** Creating resistance against diseases through vaccination and inoculation.

**State Bicameral Legislature:** State Legislature which has two houses – the Vidhan Sabha or the Lower House and the Vidhan Parishad or the Upper House.

Our Constitution describes India as a Union of States. It has 29 States and 7 Union Territories. The States are autonomous and free to manage their affairs in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution. We have adopted Parliamentary form of government. Hence, the pattern of administration of the States is same as that of the Union Government. Each State has a Legislature, a Governor and the Council of Ministers headed by the Chief Minister.

The powers have been distributed between Centre and States by the Constitution. Accordingly, the State Legislatures can make laws on subjects given in the State List. Some of these subjects are agriculture, land revenue, irrigation, law and order and Panchayati Raj or local government. The State Legislatures can also make laws on 47 subjects given in the Concurrent List, which includes subjects like education, marriage and divorce, and newspapers. But the State laws on these subjects will be valid as long as they do not go against the central laws on the same subjects.

## STATE LEGISLATURES

The law-making powers in the States are vested in the State Legislatures. Most of the States have only one House, i.e., the Legislative Assembly or the Vidhan Sabha. Others have two Houses—the Vidhan Sabha or Legislative Assembly, i.e., the Lower House and the Vidhan Parishad or Legislative Council, i.e., the Upper House. Some of the States having Bicameral Legislature are Jammu and Kashmir, Bihar and Karnataka. A Legislature which has only one House is called Unicameral Legislature.

### THE VIDHAN SABHA OR LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY

The Vidhan Sabha is the Lower House of the State Legislature. It consists of members who are directly elected on the basis of adult franchise. The strength depends upon the population of the concerned State. But there cannot be more than 500 members in a Legislative Assembly. It also cannot have less than 60 members at any time. Some of the small States like Mizoram and Goa have Assemblies with less than 60 members under special provisions of the Constitution. The members are elected through secret ballot. Certain seats are reserved for SCs and STs in Legislative Assemblies.

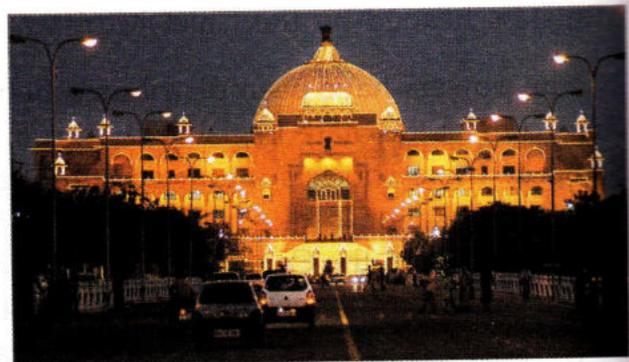


The Vidhan Sabha House, Chhattisgarh

In order to be elected a member of the Legislative Assembly one should have the following qualifications.

- (a) She/He should be an Indian Citizen.
- (b) She/He should not be less than 25 years of age.
- (c) She/He should not hold any office of profit.
- (d) Their names should be in the Voters' List.

For the purpose of elections, the State is divided into a number of electoral areas or constituencies. Any candidate may contest election from any of the constituencies, but members of SCs and STs alone can contest elections from reserved constituencies. The elections are conducted by the Election Commission. On the day of polling, the citizens who are 18 years of age and above and whose names are included in the Voter's List cast their vote. The candidate getting the highest number of votes is declared elected by the Returning Officer.



The Vidhan Sabha House, Rajasthan

**Presiding Officers:** The members elect a person from amongst themselves as the Speaker and another as Deputy Speaker to preside over the House and conduct its proceedings.

**Duration of the House:** The normal duration of the Legislative Assembly is five years. However, the Governor may dissolve the House before its term is over on the request of the Chief Minister. It may also be dissolved earlier, if the President's rule is proclaimed in the State. Its term may be extended during Emergency. But the new Assembly must be elected within six months of the termination of Emergency.

### **FUNCTIONS OF THE SPEAKER OF THE LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY**

1. The Speaker presides over the meetings of the Legislative Assembly and maintains order in the House.
2. He allocates time for various items on the agenda. He also allows members to speak on various subjects. All the speeches are addressed to the Chair.
3. He decides whether a Bill is a Money Bill or an Ordinary Bill.
4. If any member misbehaves, he may name him for suspension.
5. He decides the admissibility of questions and all resolutions.
6. He signs the Bill before it is sent to the Legislative Council or to the Governor for his Assent.
7. He appoints Chairmen of all Committees of the House.
8. He receives all communications addressed to the House.



Kumari Mayawati became the Chief Minister of Uttar Pradesh for the fourth time in 2007 and Akhilesh Yadav became the youngest Chief Minister of Uttar Pradesh in 2012.

### **THE VIDHAN PARISHAD OR THE STATE LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL**

The States of Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Telangana, Uttar Pradesh and Jammu and Kashmir have Bicameral Legislature. A State having a Bicameral Legislature has the Legislative Council (Vidhan Parishad) as its Upper House.

In order to be a member of the Legislative Council a person

- (a) should be a citizen of India.
- (b) should be of 30 years of age or above.
- (c) should not hold an office of profit.
- (d) should have her/his name in the Voters' List

**Composition:** The basis of the composition of the Council is as follows:

- (a) One-third of the members are elected by members of the Legislative Assembly of that State.

- (b) One-third of the members are elected by local bodies like Municipalities, Corporations, etc.
- (c) One-twelfth of the members are elected by Graduates of more than three years standing.
- (d) One-twelfth of the members are elected by the teachers engaged in teaching in educational institutions not lower than secondary schools.
- (e) The remaining one-sixth of the members are nominated by the Governor. They should be such persons who have distinguished themselves in the fields of art, science, literature and social service.

### **TENURE OF OFFICE**

The Vidhan Parishad is a permanent body. The term of office of a member of Vidhan Parishad is six years. One-third of its members retire every second year and an equal number of members are elected in their place.

**Presiding Officers:** The members of the Vidhan Parishad elect one person from amongst themselves as the Chairman and another as the Deputy Chairman to preside over its sessions.

### **POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE STATE LEGISLATURE**

1. The State Legislatures make laws on the 66 subjects given in the State List and 47 subjects given in the Concurrent List. But a State Law on concurrent subject can be declared ineffective if it goes against a Central Law on the same subject.
2. It passes the Money Bills and the Budget. The Legislative Assembly alone has the power to originate Money Bills.
3. It may approve the Ordinances which have been issued by the Governor when the Legislative Assembly is not in session.
4. Some Articles of the Constitution can be amended only with the consent of State Legislatures.
5. It exercises control over the Executive (Council of Ministers) through questions and criticism of its wrong policies. It can move an Adjournment Motion, Call Attention Motion and a Motion of No-Confidence. But the Ministers are responsible only to the Legislative Assembly.

### **PASSAGE OF ORDINARY BILLS BY STATE LEGISLATURES**

Ordinary Bills can be introduced in any of the Houses—the Vidhan Sabha or the Vidhan Parishad. They can be introduced by either a minister or any other member.

There are three stages involved in the passage of a Bill. We call them 'Three Readings of a Bill'. The First Reading covers the introduction of the Bill. The member introducing the Bill explains the need to introduce it.

The Second Reading consists of a general discussion on the Bill in the House. The House may refer it to the Select Committee. The Committee presents its report to the House. The House then considers the Bill, clause by clause. Then follows the Third Reading of the Bill. If it is passed, the speaker sends it to the Vidhan Parishad, if any.

In the Vidhan Parishad the Bill passes through the same procedure. If the Vidhan Parishad passes the Bill, it is sent to the Governor for his assent and it becomes a law. In case,

- (a) the Bill is rejected by the Legislative Council, or
- (b) a period of more than three months lapses without the Bill being passed by it, or
- (c) the Bill is passed with amendments to which the Assembly does not agree, the Assembly may pass the Bill again. Now it becomes obligatory for the Vidhan Parishad to consider the Bill within thirty days. If thirty days pass by or the Bill is rejected by the Council (Vidhan Parishad), it is considered as passed by both the Houses and is sent to the Governor for his assent.

After the Governor signs the Bill, it becomes an Act (or a Law). The Governor may not give his assent or may send the Bill back to the Legislature for reconsideration. He may also reserve the Bill for the consideration of the President, in which case it can become an Act only when the President assents to it.

### **PASSAGE OF MONEY BILL**

So far as a Money Bill is concerned, it can originate only in the Vidhan Sabha. It is introduced by a Minister with Governor's consent. After the Money Bill is passed by the Vidhan Sabha, it is sent to the Vidhan Parishad. The Vidhan Parishad has to return the Bill within 14 days. If it is not returned within 14 days, it is considered as passed by both Houses and is sent to the Governor for his assent.

### **COMPARISON OF THE VIDHAN SABHA AND THE VIDHAN PARISHAD**

- (a) The Ordinary Bills can originate in any House. But in case of Ordinary or Non-Money Bills also, the two Houses have unequal powers. There is no provision of a Joint Sitting of both the Houses in case of any differences between them. The Vidhan Parishad can only delay the Bill for three months.

- (b) The Money Bills are introduced only in Vidhan Sabha. The Vidhan Parishad can delay it only for 14 days.
- (c) Ministers are responsible only to the Legislative Assembly. The only power that the Vidhan Parishad has is the right to ask questions.
- (d) The members of the Vidhan Parishad do not participate in the election of the President of India.

In brief, it is the Legislative Assembly that occupies a dominant position.

## **ADMINISTRATION OF THE STATE**

The Constitutional Head of the State is the Governor who administers with the help of a popular and responsible Council of Ministers. The Union Territories are administered by the President who appoints suitable officers for this purpose.

## **GOVERNOR**

The Governor acts in two capacities — as Constitutional Head of the State and as an Agent of the Central Government in the State.

## **APPOINTMENT OF THE GOVERNOR**

The President can appoint a person as Governor who

1. is a citizen of India.
2. is not less than 35 years of age.
3. is not a member of the Parliament or any State Legislature.
4. is not holding an office of profit under the government.

**Term of Office:** The Governor holds office for a term of five years. He holds office during 'the pleasure of the President' and is accountable to him. Therefore, the term of five years may be terminated earlier.

## **POWERS OF THE GOVERNOR**

### **(a) Executive Powers**

All the executive powers of the State government are vested in the Governor. He usually exercises these powers on the advice of the Council of Ministers.

1. He appoints the leader of the majority party as the Chief Minister and appoints other ministers on the advice of the Chief Minister.
2. He appoints the Advocate General, the Chairman and members of the State Public Service Commission.
3. He is consulted by the President while appointing judges of the State High Court. He also appoints the judges of the subordinate courts.

### **(b) Legislative Powers**

1. No Bill can become an Act unless it is signed by the Governor.
2. He summons the Session of the State Legislature.
3. He can dissolve the Legislative Assembly on the advice of the Chief Minister.
4. He nominates one-sixth of the members of the Legislative Council (Vidhan Parishad).
5. The Governor can promulgate (issue) Ordinances.

### **(c) Judicial Powers**

1. The President appoints the judges of the State High Court in consultation with the Governor.
2. The Governor grants pardons and may reduce or suspend the sentence (punishment) of any person.

### **(d) Discretionary Powers**

Discretionary power allows the Governor the freedom to judge what should be done in a particular situation. He may not act according to the advice of the Council of Ministers in certain matters. The discretionary powers are as follows:

1. He may report to the President that the administration of the State may not be carried on in accordance with Constitutional provisions. In that case President's rule can be imposed in the State.
2. He may reserve any Bill passed by the State Legislature for the consideration of the President.
3. The Governor has the discretion to appoint the Chief Minister when no party has an absolute majority in the Vidhan Sabha.

## **THE CHIEF MINISTER AND HIS CABINET**

As a matter of fact, the Chief Minister has the same powers in the State as the Prime Minister has at the Centre. The Governor acts on the advice of the Chief Minister. If the Chief Minister enjoys support of the majority of the members, he cannot be removed from his office by the Governor. The Chief Minister may ask any minister to resign at any time. He is the Leader of the Legislative Assembly. He presides over meetings of the Cabinet.

**Qualifications of the Chief Minister:** Qualifications to become Chief Minister of a State are the same as those of an ordinary member of the House. The Governor appoints the leader of the majority party or a winning Alliance as the Chief Minister.

## **POWERS OF THE CHIEF MINISTER**

1. **Formation of the Cabinet:** The other ministers are appointed by the Governor on the advice of the Chief Minister.
2. **Allocation of Departments:** The Chief Minister may assign any department to any of the ministers. He can ask any minister at any time to resign.
3. **Head of the Council of Ministers:** The Chief Minister presides over the meetings of the Cabinet.
4. **Leader of the Legislative Assembly:** The Chief Minister is the Leader of the Legislative Assembly. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly prepares schedule of meetings of the Assembly in consultation with the Chief Minister.
5. **Principal Advisor to the Governor:** The Chief Minister is the principal advisor to the Governor. The Governor appoints various officials on the advice of the Chief Minister.
6. **A Link between the Governor and the Council of Ministers:** The Chief Minister acts as a link between the Governor and the Council of Ministers. He communicates to the Governor all decisions of the Council of Ministers.

## **STATE ADMINISTRATION: POLITICAL EXECUTIVE AND BUREAUCRACY**

All States have a uniform administrative machinery. The administration of the State is run in the name of the Governor, who is the Head of the Executive. The real Political Executive of the State is the Chief Minister who heads the Council of Ministers. The ministers look after various departments such as Law and Order, Agriculture, Fisheries, Local Government, Health and Family Welfare, etc. They take policy decisions which are implemented by officials in the ministry. Every ministry has a Secretary who is normally a senior IAS officer. Under him are the Joint Secretaries, Deputy Secretaries, Under Secretaries, other Administrative Officers and Section Officers. They implement the decisions and policies of the government. The Secretary acts as a link between the Minister and other Administrative Officers. The success of the government depends on the efficiency and ability of the bureaucrats. They should be concerned with the welfare of the people in a State.

## **HEALTH**

Health is defined as complete physical, mental, economic and social well-being of an individual and the society at large. Health covers a wide range of activities and services. These are:

- (a) Family welfare measures, including population control
- (b) Prevention of food adulteration

- (c) Drug control
- (d) Eradication of communicable and non-communicable diseases
- (e) Nutritional problems
- (f) Environmental concerns

Good health and a long life are essential to a country's economic growth and development. Good health results in success of individuals and society as a whole. It enables us to save our resources which otherwise would have to be spent on treatment of diseases. Better health reduces losses in production on account of illness of workers or other employees. A healthy person is more efficient and contributes to the productivity in his workplace. He is also able to enjoy the fruits of development in a better way.

Our government had set the target of **Health for All**. The National Policy on Health, 1983 aimed at an integrated approach towards development of medical education, research and health services for all.

**Curative and Preventive Measures:** In India the emphasis has been more on curative rather than preventive measures. Curative measures imply treating a person after he has fallen ill. Preventive measures imply that we should take sufficient care in advance so that diseases do not spread. Our country is the seventh largest country in the world. We are also the second most populous country on Earth. We lack resources and a large number of people in our country are poor. Under such circumstances, it is important that we give more importance to preventive rather than curative measures. Our government must concentrate more on providing facilities such as safe drinking water, sanitation, immunisation against certain diseases and nutritious food.

**Need for Small Dispensaries in Rural Areas:** Health services are largely provided by city hospitals. This gives greater advantage to rich and urban people, although more than half of our population lives in villages. We should pay more attention to the development of small dispensaries in rural areas. Medicines have become very expensive. The rural poor often have to borrow money in order to get proper treatment during sickness.

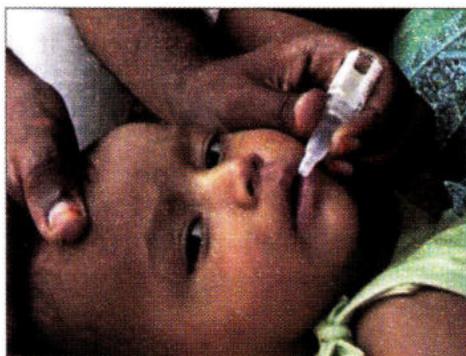


A dispensary

**Health and Medical Care in India:** Our achievements in the field of health care are as follows:

- (a) The average life expectancy in India is around 62 years.
- (b) Infant mortality rates have come down to 70 per thousand live births.

- (c) The eradication of communicable and non-communicable diseases has been given high priority in India. Plague and smallpox have been completely eradicated. Malaria, filaria, tuberculosis and leprosy have also been controlled to a great extent. Efforts have also been made to control blindness, polio, cancer, AIDS, etc.
- (d) Nearly 42 per cent children now get essential immunisation against a few specified diseases.
- (e) We have a huge private health care infrastructure. The private sector provides for nearly 80 per cent of the health care services in India.
- (f) Our government is now allocating more funds for health care and medical facilities. More medical and dental colleges are being opened.
- (g) We have an extensive network of 4045 Community Health Centres. We have more than 1,46,000 Health Sub-centres to treat people at grassroot level. Each Sub-centre covers a population of nearly 5000 in plain areas and 3000 in hilly, tribal and backward areas. One Primary Health Centre covers a population of 30,000 in plain areas and 20,000 in tribal areas and areas of difficult terrain. The Community Health Centre covers a population of nearly 80,000 to 1,20,000.
- (h) The children are provided vaccines free of cost.
- (i) Mid-day Meal is provided to school-going children in many States.



Polio drops are given as a preventive measure



A hospital

## RESOURCE ALLOCATION IN HEALTH

The government while undertaking any plan must take into account the resources and the kind of manpower it has, both skilled and unskilled. The decision regarding resource allocation is taken by the Council of Ministers headed by the Chief Minister. The government also involves private sector and other agencies in improving health care facilities.

With the availability of more resources and continued efforts, we may achieve the goal of 'Health for All' in near future.

## Summary of the Lesson

- India has 29 states and 7 union territories. Our Constitution clearly specifies the powers of each of them. Our states are sovereign and the Constitution provides them the freedom to independently decide on internal matters.
- The law-making powers in the States are vested in the State Legislatures. Most of the States have only one House, i.e. Legislative Assembly or the Vidhan Sabha. Some States have two Houses, the Legislative Assembly or the Vidhan Sabha and the Legislative Council or the Vidhan Parishad.
- The Vidhan Sabha consists of members who are directly elected by the people of the State every 5 years. The Vidhan Parishad is constituted in a different way. Nearly one-sixth of its members are nominated by the Governor. It is a permanent body.
- (a) The State Legislature makes laws on 66 subjects given in the State List and 47 subjects in the Concurrent List. (b) It approves Ordinances issued by the Governor. (c) It passes Money Bills and the Budget. (d) It exercises control over the Council of Ministers.
- The Governor is the Constitutional Head of the State. He has to work on the advice of the State Council of Ministers.
- The leader of the majority party in the Legislative Assembly is appointed as the Chief Minister. He presides over the meetings of the Cabinet. He is the Principal Advisor to the Governor.
- Health is an important subject which receives due attention from the government.
- Resource allocation for any Plan is done by the Council of Ministers headed by the Chief Minister.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. The State Legislative Assembly cannot have more than
  - (a) three hundred members.
  - (b) four hundred members.
  - (c) five hundred members.
  - (d) six hundred members.
2. The States having Bicameral Legislature are:
  - (a) Bihar and Karnataka.
  - (b) Assam and Arunachal Pradesh.
  - (c) Gujarat and Haryana.
  - (d) Odisha and West Bengal.
3. In order to be elected a member of the Legislative Assembly a person should not be less than
  - (a) twenty years of age.
  - (b) twenty-five years of age.
  - (c) thirty years of age.
  - (d) thirty-five years of age.
4. The Constitutional Head of the State is the
  - (a) Chief Minister.
  - (b) Governor.
  - (c) Speaker of the Vidhan Sabha.
  - (d) Chief Justice of the High Court.

## II. Write true or false.

1. The State List contains 47 subjects.
2. The Vidhan Sabha is more powerful than the Vidhan Parishad.
3. The Money Bill can originate in the Legislative Council (Vidhan Parishad).
4. The Governor holds office during 'the pleasure of the President'.
5. Indians have a life expectancy of around 50 years.

## III. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. Mention any two functions of the Speaker of the Vidhan Sabha.
2. Name any two high officials appointed by the Governor.
3. What is meant by the term 'Discretionary Powers' of the Governor?
4. Mention any two Discretionary Powers of the Governor.
5. What does the phrase 'preventive measures' mean with reference to health care?

## IV. Answer the following questions.

1. How are the members of the Vidhan Sabha elected? Are seats reserved for any class of people in the Vidhan Sabha?
2. Discuss any three powers and functions of State Legislatures.
3. Mention any two Legislative and any two Executive powers of the Governor.
4. Discuss any three powers and functions of the Chief Minister.
5. Compare the position and powers of the two Houses of State Legislatures.

## V. Projects and Activities

1. Who was elected the MLA from the Constituency you belong to? Write a letter to the MLA mentioning some of the problems you and other residents of your locality face. Make a request to solve these problems.
2. It would be a learning experience if you could visit the session of the Vidhan Sabha (Legislative Assembly) of your State. Prepare a note on what you saw there.
3. Prepare a PowerPoint presentation on your State Government. Include the following points in it.
  - (a) Number of MLAs in the Legislative Assembly
  - (b) Name of the ruling party
  - (c) Name of the Chief Minister
  - (d) Picture of the Vidhan Shabha and its location

## VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Ask your parents to give you the power to run the house and monitor the household expenses for a week. Make a diary entry on the difficulties and opposition you faced during this period.

# 4

## Media and Democracy

### New Words to Remember

**Media:** A collective name for all means of mass communication like newspapers, books, journals, radio, television, cinema and internet.

**Public opinion:** The opinion of people on any particular matter. It is usually the reaction of the people to government's policies and programmes.

**Advertising:** The presentation and promotion of goods, services or ideas.

**Consumer:** A person who buys a product or a service for a price.

**Product:** A commodity or a service which is produced by the producer for sale in market.

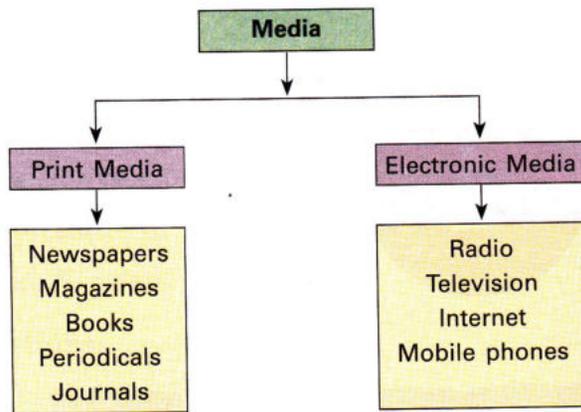
**Branded product:** A product stamped or identified with a company or a name.

Democracy is a government based on discussion, debate and consensus. For its success, it requires effective participation of the people. Different agencies like newspapers, radio, television and political parties educate people about various political, social and economic issues. They make the people aware of the stand of the government on different issues. In this way public opinion is formed regarding a particular matter. No government can ignore the public opinion. If it does, the party in power may not win the next election. An alert and intelligent public opinion is the first essential of a democracy.

### MEDIA

The media have a major role to play in a Democracy. It is through the media that we can communicate with the people and the masses. All political parties try to maintain cordial relations with media personnel. They use the media to keep themselves in touch with large number of people in the country. They mould and express public opinion through them. Media, on their own, provide information to the people not only about political happenings, but also on various other issues of public interest. They provide an important forum for discussion and debate on these issues.

**What is Media?** The word 'media' is the plural form of 'medium' and is used to denote the various means of mass communication. We have many means to communicate with other persons, such as newspapers, periodicals, telephone and the cable network. Newspapers and television programmes reach millions of people. We can classify media into two broad categories – the Print Media and the Electronic Media.



The Print Media includes newspapers, magazines, books, periodicals and journals. The Electronic media includes radio, television and internet.

## PRINT MEDIA

### NEWSPAPERS

Newspapers are often called the 'lighthouses of Democracy'. Newspapers print day-to-day events that took place not only in our country but also the world over. Various articles are also printed in newspapers on social, economic, cultural and political issues. The prominent news of the day is printed in bold letters and in attractive captions, which we call headlines. Many a time news about various events, say, a train accident is corroborated with photographs depicting the event. **People reading the newspapers are able to form an opinion about government policies on vital issues. Thus, newspapers formulate and mould public opinion.** The newspapers highlight the public opinion. There is a column called 'Letters to the Editor', which reflects the reactions of the people to government policies and other happenings in the country. People may even organise rallies and force the government to rethink all of its plans.

Owing to the fear of criticism by the press, the government cannot act in a way opposed to the national interests. With the spread of education, the print media is playing an important role in the formation of public opinion.

**Freedom of Press:** Freedom of the newspapers is very important. The government should not restrict the freedom of speech and expression in an unreasonable manner. The government had imposed very strict restrictions on the media during the emergency of 1975–77. Attempts were also made, in those days, to threaten the editors of the newspapers.



People reading newspapers

At the same time, it is necessary that newspapers publish the news correctly. The Editor should not distort the news. They should not fill people's eyes, ears and brains with something that is insignificant.

The leading newspapers are owned by business houses which are guided by a desire to protect their own interests. Powerful businessmen may try to help certain individuals or the causes they represent. Therefore, people are advised to read more than one newspaper before forming an opinion about government policies or other important happenings.

### **BOOKS AND MAGAZINES**

Books and magazines also create awareness among the people. They educate them about various social, economic and political issues. For example, an article on drugs abuse makes the reader aware of the ill effects of drugs on one's health. The drinks and drugs ruin lives and destroy families. Illegal smuggling of drugs has become a threat to national security.

The books written on political and social subjects rouse public consciousness. The French writers like Voltaire and Rousseau contributed a lot to the French Revolution. In India the writings of Prem Chand and Rabindranath Tagore were inspired by feelings of social reform and nationalism.

### **ELECTRONIC MEDIA**

Radio, television and Internet are called electronic media. They broadcast national and international news. They also serve as a forum for public debates and group discussions. They are a popular media which reach out even to illiterate people. Even in remote villages people have transistors and radios.

Television is very popular and more effective because people can see pictures of all major events. In India many important events, such as the Republic Day Parade, election results and important rallies and demonstrations are covered live on various television channels. They are of great interest to the common people.

At present there has been a great improvement in sound and image quality of television programmes. Sitting in our drawing room, we can watch a cricket match being played thousands of kilometres away in some other continent. Television shows influence our attitudes,



Radio



Television

beliefs and values. They bring about an effective change in the way we look at things around us.

The advanced technology that is being used is very expensive. To raise funds, television programmers have to show advertisements about various products or events. For example, while watching cricket matches, we see the same advertisements time and again, between the two overs.

Television is greatly free from government control. The private television channels are owned by different companies. Quite often they give only partial information. They show too many advertisements to earn money. We cannot always expect these channels to give balanced news. However, at times balanced and impartial telecasts aroused popular movement for justice. Many closed judicial cases were reopened due to the pressure of public opinion.



Jessica Lal murder case

## DOCUMENTARIES

Documentary films highlight social problems like dowry, discrimination against girl child, life of street children and corruption in public life. They create great impact on the viewers and make them aware of the problems faced by poor and needy sections of society.

## CINEMA

Cinema is a very powerful medium which attracts millions of people. Cinema entertains people with story, music and dance. The motion pictures also highlight the evils of casteism, communalism, corruption and discrimination against women.

The computers, CDs, Internet and mobile phones also play an important role in the spread of information and ideas globally.

## POLITICAL PARTIES: THEIR ROLE IN THE FORMATION OF PUBLIC OPINION

The parties play an important role in the formation of public opinion. They organise public meetings, publish journals and organise rallies and demonstrations. Different parties have different policies regarding labour reforms, agriculture and industry. At the time of elections they throw up various



Meeting of a political party

issues before the public. The opposition parties highlight the failures of government and tell what they would do, if voted to power. In this way the parties inform and educate the citizens of a country.

## **GOVERNMENT AND INFORMATION**

Our Constitution has established a Democratic Republic. Democracy requires that citizens should have full information about what public authorities have done. This makes the government accountable to the people.

### **RIGHT TO INFORMATION**

The Right to Information Act was enacted in 2005. Every public authority is required to maintain its records, notings, documents, orders and circulars. The Act requires the setting up of a Central Information Commission as well as a State Information Commission. Moreover, every public authority will name one of its officers as Public Information Officer.

Any person who desires to obtain any information shall make a request in writing to the concerned officer. He may be required to pay such fee as has been prescribed for the same. The concerned officer is required to provide the information within 30 days of the receipt of the request. But no information would be given about a matter that affects the security or other vital interests of the state.

The Right to Information Act aims at making the working of the government transparent, so that corruption can be rooted out. It would check the abuse of power by the government.

### **POPULAR STRUGGLE**

The Right to Information was the result of popular movement over a long period of time. The Supreme Court put great emphasis on this right. Many non-government organisations (NGOs) stressed the importance of the Right to Information. Mention should be made of at least a few organisations that had to struggle for this right.

- (a) Rajasthan Mazdoor Shakti Sangathan was formed in 1990. It worked for bringing about land reforms. It also saw that workers were given at least minimum wages. When workers engaged in public works were not paid the minimum wages, this organisation took up their cause. It wanted to examine the 'pay rolls' of workers. The government agencies denied this information on the ground that it went against the 'Official Secrets Act'. After a lot of pressure the Rajasthan government had to yield. It was found that lot of money was used by corrupt officers for the purpose for which it was not intended. The Rajasthan Government, therefore, passed the Rajasthan Right to Information Act in 2000.

- (b) National Campaign for Right to Information was started in 1996. Social activists and broad-minded citizens demanded Right to Information to curb corruption among persons in positions of authority and power.
- (c) Public hearings (*jan sunwais*) also became powerful means for people to express their grievances.
- (d) *Parivartan*, a Delhi-based NGO also worked hard to secure information from public authorities.

The people's struggle gained strength and in 2005 the Right to Information Act was enacted. For this the Official Secrets Act had to be changed.

## ADVERTISING

Advertising is an important method of mass communication. When a sponsor pays for the presentation and promotion of goods, service or ideas, it is called advertising.

Various means of communication are used for advertising. Newspapers, magazines and periodicals carry advertisements. Advertising agencies also advertise through pamphlets, leaflets, posters and hoardings on behalf of their clients. Electronic media like television and Internet are also used for advertising products and services.

Advertising can be classified into two broad categories:

1. Commercial advertising
2. Social advertising

## COMMERCIAL ADVERTISING

No business can survive without advertising. The objective of advertising is to sell something—a product or a service. The sale is possible only if the consumers know about the availability and features of the product. Advertisement attracts attention. It arouses desire among consumers to buy a particular product.

As a result of mass production and technological revolution, similar products with different brand names are available in the market. There is stiff competition between them. The manufacturers publicise their products through catchy advertisements. They try to depict their product as the best.

**Message Regarding a Product:** Advertising message is developed by using an appeal. A new product is given a 'brand name', which has something to do with our emotions, tradition or heritage. Parental love is widely used by advertisers of baby foods, toys,



Commercial advertising

etc. Sometimes the emotional appeal is so much linked to the product that it creates frustration among those who cannot afford it.

**Increased Purchasing Power:** Due to industrial growth and foreign investments, there has been a rise in income of families. We find a tendency to buy more and more goods. Today electronic goods and cars are easily available through bank loans. This has made it possible for middle class families to have these luxuries, which were otherwise beyond their purchasing power. Advertisers target different age groups with attractive slogans for their different products.

**Benefits to Producers and Businessmen:** Advertising helps both producers and consumers. It helps the producers in the following ways.

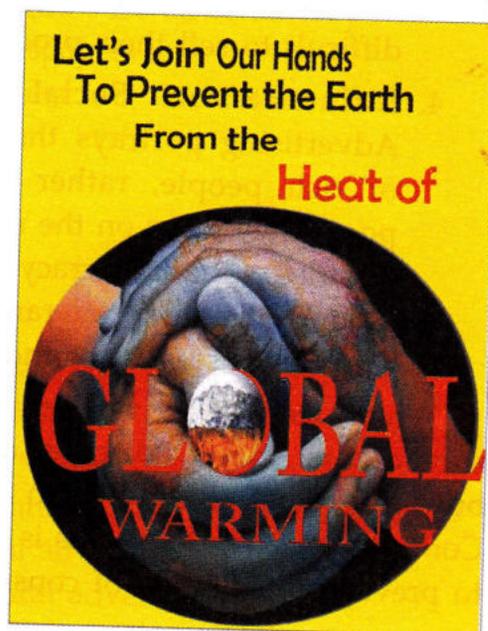
1. It creates demand for existing as well as new products and helps to increase sales.
2. When goods are made on a large scale, it results in lower costs of production.
3. It increases profits by creating regular and greater demand for the goods they produce.

**Benefits to Consumers:** Advertising helps the consumers in the following ways.

1. Advertising provides knowledge to consumers about new products and their various uses.
2. It helps them to decide which products they should buy. In this way it reduces the time and effort involved in doing shopping.
3. Producers are forced to maintain quality to retain their customers. The buyers get quality goods due to competition among producers.

## **SOCIAL ADVERTISING**

When advertisers take up social responsibility and advertise for a social cause, it is called social advertising. It aims at creating awareness amongst people about a good cause. Some of the popular themes for social advertising are pulse polio, power conservation, protection of environment, awareness about AIDS, family planning, and discrimination against girl child. Advertisements like 'Do not Mix Driving and Drinking', 'Each One, Teach One' are some examples of social advertising. This kind of advertisement also promotes communal harmony, national unity, and consumer protection. People may also be encouraged to donate blood. They also provide food or clothing for those who suffer because of natural disasters, such as an earthquake.



Social advertising

## BASIC RULES AND CODE OF CONDUCT FOR ADVERTISING

1. Advertisements should be in conformity with the laws of the land. They should not incite people to crime or violence.
2. Advertisements must be truthful. They should give correct information about quality, price, weight, potency, etc., of the product. An advertisement should not conceal information that vitally affects human life. It should not make exaggerated or false claims.
3. The advertisement should not attack others' products.
4. An advertisement should not be obscene and immoral.
5. Advertisements should not hurt the cultural and religious sentiments of the people.
6. Advertisements should not show children playing with matchboxes or using sharp knives or guns.

## NEGATIVE EFFECTS OF ADVERTISING

1. **Brand Monopoly:** Advertising creates brand preferences. We judge people by the 'brands' they use. A 'brand name' is associated with quality, style, fashion and status. Branded cosmetics are more expensive and considered superior to ordinary cosmetics. Advertising creates brand monopoly and restricts free competition.
2. **Consumerism or Wasteful Consumption:** Advertising persuades people to buy products which they do not need. It multiplies the needs of people. People are encouraged to buy even those products which are harmful to their health. Cold drinks have harmful effects on children's health.
3. **Large Firms Kill New and Small Concerns:** Large firms spend huge money on advertising. Small producers making sweets, *papads*, pickles, etc., find it difficult to sell their products.
4. **Influence on Social Values:** Advertising portrays the lifestyle of rich people, rather than the poor. They focus on the needs and luxuries of the aristocracy or people having a high social rank, rather than the masses or common people.

When we see advertisements, we should first think, discuss and then buy only those things which we need. Control over advertisements is necessary to prevent exploitation of consumers.



Brand product

## Summary of the Lesson

- Democracy is a government based on public opinion.
- Media is a term used to denote the various means of mass communication. It can be classified into print media and electronic media. Newspapers, journals and books fall under the category of print media. Radio, television and Internet are examples of electronic media.
- It is necessary that newspapers, television, etc., should give news without distorting them. They should also be free from government control.
- Books, magazines, documentaries, films and political parties form and mould public opinion.
- An alert and intelligent public opinion implies that people will not tolerate such governmental policies which go against public welfare.
- The Right to Information Act was enacted in 2005 under the pressure of popular movement. It allows people to have any information from government or a Public Authority. It checks the abuse of power by government officials.
- When a sponsor pays for the presentation and promotion of goods, services or ideas it is called advertising. It is beneficial both to producers and consumers.
- There are two types of advertising—commercial advertising and social advertising.
- While advertising, some basic rules to be followed are: (a) Advertisement should conform to the laws of the land. (b) It should give correct information about quality, price, etc., of the product.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Which among these is usually referred to as 'lighthouse of Democracy':  
(a) Books and magazines  
(b) Newspapers  
(c) Radio and television  
(d) Cinema
2. Television is very popular because:  
(a) people can see pictures of all major events.  
(b) it covers election results.  
(c) it covers sports events.  
(d) it covers various programmes.
3. The Right to Information Act would make the working of the government:  
(a) very difficult.  
(b) transparent.  
(c) more dishonest.  
(d) impractical.
4. Those advertisements which promote family planning fall into the category of  
(a) commercial advertisements.  
(b) social advertisements.  
(c) political advertisements.  
(d) cultural advertisements.

## II. Write true or false.

1. The Right to Information Act was enacted in 2005.
2. Television influences our attitude, beliefs and values.
3. The motion pictures may highlight the evils of corruption and casteism.
4. Social advertising aims at creating demand for a particular product.
5. Popular movement was responsible to pass the Right to Information Act.

## III. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. What is meant by media?
2. Name any two things that the print media include.
3. Name two things that are included in the electronic media.
4. Mention any two ways in which the newspapers could formulate and mould public opinion.

## IV. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the role of books in a rousing public consciousness?
2. Mention the role of any two organisations that fought for the enactment of the Right to Information Act.
3. Mention how advertising benefits the producers.
4. Mention any four basic rules of advertising.

## V. Projects and Activities

1. Newspapers are called the 'lighthouse of Democracy'. Prepare a project displaying a few prominent news published in any of the newspapers. The news should highlight the problems faced by the people.
2. With the help of your teachers or parents select any important issue or incident that took place recently. Write a report on the media coverage of the incident. You can use articles published in newspapers or magazines and show how visual media highlighted the issue and compelled the government to take effective steps to bring law and order under its control.
3. Working in Groups: Create an advertisement for a product of your choice. Choose any medium.
  - (a) For Print Media: Make it on a chart paper (for a newspaper or a magazine)
  - (b) For Visual Media (television): Make it on computer. Remember to add a catchy slogan for advertising your product.

## VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Right to Information Act was passed in October 2005. It has given people the Right to Information. Ask your teachers or parents about the procedure to get information from some public authority.

## HOTS: THINK BEYOND

What is the Unique Selling Proposition (USP) of a product? Why is it highlighted?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 3–4)

### I. Group Discussion

Discuss with your classmates about the means you can adopt to bring about community awareness in case of dengue outbreak in your neighbourhood.

### II. Interview

Conduct a group interview of the Member of Legislative Assembly (MLA) and ask him/her the steps she/he had taken for the welfare of the constituency. Also discuss with her/him the problems of your area that needed to be solved.

### III. Poster Making

Divide the class into groups and assign each group one of the social issues such as water conservation, garbage disposal, saving electricity, forestation and deforestation, etc. Ask each group to make a poster on the assigned topic that would help to increase community awareness.

### IV. Report Writing

Suppose you are a journalist of a reputed daily newspaper of India. You have been assigned to prepare a newspaper coverage of Anna Hazare's fast for the Lokpal Bill. You have a photographer with you for taking photographs of this event. Prepare the report.





## TEST PAPER

(Based on Chapters 1-4)

Total Marks: 50

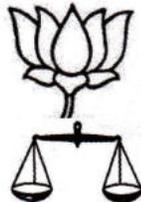
Time: 2 Hours

### I. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1 × 8 = 8

- In India the ..... makes law for us.  
(a) Parliament (b) Supreme Court (c) government (d) people
- Democracy means the rule of the .....  
(a) king. (b) military.  
(c) common people. (d) None
- The French Revolution took place in .....  
(a) 1605. (b) 1789. (c) 1917. (d) 1947.
- People not less than the age of ..... have the right to vote.  
(a) 20 (b) 21 (c) 22 (d) 18
- ..... is the election symbol of the Shiv Sena.

(a) Lotus

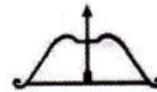


(c) Scales

(b) Ears of corn and sickle



(d) Bore and arrow



- Who appoints the judges of the State High Court?  
(a) Chief Justice (b) Prime Minister (c) President (d) Governor
- When was Right to Information Act enacted?  
(a) 2007 (b) 2005 (c) 2009 (d) 2010
- There is reservation of seats for the ..... in the Lok Sabha.  
(a) SCs (b) STs (c) SCs and STs (d) OBCs

### II. Fill in the blanks.

1 × 6 = 6

- In a democratic set-up everyone is ..... before the law.
- Democracy is derived from the Greek words .....
- An ..... represents a Parliamentary constituency.
- ..... is the election symbol of the Bahujan Samaj Party.
- The Governor holds office for a term of ..... years.
- In States the Money Bill can originate only in the .....

### III. Write true or false.

1 × 6 = 6

- The Vidhan Sabha is the Upper House of the State Legislature.
- India Union has 29 States and 7 Union Territories.

3. The Communist Party of India was formed in 1925.
4. Hitler was the ruler of Germany.
5. India is a secular state.
6. Mizoram and Goa have Assemblies with less than 60 members.

**IV. Short answers in about 30 words each.**

**2 × 5 = 10**

1. "Indian Constitution is Federal in Character." What does it mean?
2. What is Democracy?
3. Write a short note on Election Campaign.
4. Why is the Legislative Council called a permanent body?
5. Mention any two functions of the Election Commission in India.

**V. Long answers in about 60 words each.**

**4 × 5 = 20**

1. Who can be elected to the Legislative Assembly?
2. What are the powers and functions of a Chief Minister?
3. Write three main functions of a political party.
4. Mention any three reasons why elections are important.
5. What is the role of Opposition in a Democracy?

# 5

## Unpacking Gender

### New Words to Remember

**Gender inequality:** Discrimination against girls.

**Stereotyping:** A fixed prior idea or image of certain people.

**Patriarchal family:** Families in which men have all or most of the power and importance.

**Sex ratio:** Number of females per thousand males.

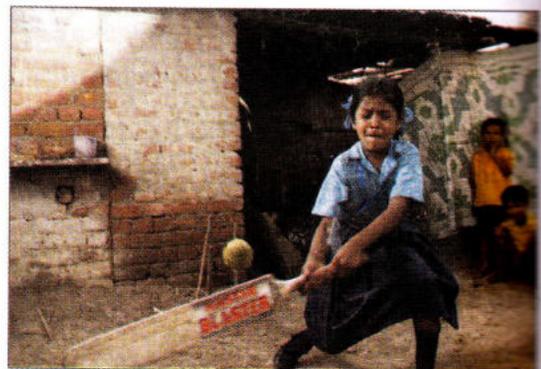
**Dowry:** Money, jewellery and goods which a woman gets as gift from her parents at the time of her marriage.

There are a number of inequalities in our country. The most important of these is the gender bias and gender inequality. When there is unjust discrimination against girls in different aspects of life, we call it gender inequality. Gender inequality is not because of biological differences between a boy and a girl. It is a social issue.

For ages, women were treated subordinate to men at home, in school and society at large. They were denied equal opportunities in education and employment. They did not have any share in decision making in the family. Before marriage, they were dependent on their father. After marriage, they were dependent on their husband for their sustenance. In old age, it was the son who gave them protection.

### WHAT IS STEREOTYPING

When we form a fixed idea or image of certain people, we are stereotyping them. The family or society prescribes what type of behaviour is acceptable from girls and boys. For example, in childhood the girls are given dolls to play with but boys are given toy cars or planes. The girls are encouraged to play indoor games whereas boys play outdoor games. Most of the Indians think that girls are meant only



A girl playing

for housekeeping jobs. The girls are trained to take care of their brothers and sisters. They also help the elders in their domestic tasks. By forming such an image of all girls, we are stereotyping them. If we ask a boy to cook or do sweeping, he will feel ashamed in doing these jobs. The reason is that in our society only girls or women are supposed to do such jobs. In foreign countries men and women are equally involved in domestic work. There is no gender bias.



Boys playing

## DISCRIMINATION AT HOME

There is a practice of treating girls less fairly than boys in matters of nutrition and health care. The birth of a male child is an occasion of joy; while the birth of a girl child is not celebrated.

The girls are usually not allowed to assert themselves. The parents insist that the girls should always adjust themselves to the wishes of other members of the family. They constantly remind her that after her marriage, she will have to live in her husband's family. A male child is encouraged to be assertive.



A woman cooking

At home, the woman is a homemaker. She cooks, takes care of children and looks after old and sick at home. In rural areas, women have to do a lot of domestic work which includes fetching water from well, cooking for the family, looking after cattle, washing and cleaning—all this work involves a lot of physical labour. These tasks are time-consuming and tiresome. Yet the work of both a woman and a man is valued differently. Perhaps the household tasks seem to be too small. Women do not have their own identity. They do not have much of power and importance.



Rural women

## **INVISIBLE WORK OF WOMEN**

Various tasks have to be done by women as duty or as part of a regular routine. Such pieces of work are invisible or remain hidden. These tasks include taking care of the child, washing clothes, cleaning and preparing food. Boys are never as keen on cooking as girls are.

## **DISCRIMINATION IN EDUCATION**

We find discrimination against girls in the field of education also, particularly among the lower classes of the society. The girls are sent to ordinary nearby schools whereas boys go to study in English medium schools. Many textbooks also carry gender bias. For example, they show girls as nurses and boys as pilots. Many girls, particularly in rural areas, are not able to even complete their schooling. Most villages have only primary schools; the secondary schools are located only in nearby towns. At many places these schools also do not have required number of teachers. Many villagers discourage girls from going to nearby towns for education due to old conservative ideas. Transport facilities are also not good. So it is difficult for girls to complete their school education. That is why, dropout rate in schools among girls is very high.

## **DISCRIMINATION IN JOBS**

Many parents do not encourage their daughters to take up jobs that were thought to be meant only for males. Earlier the girls could not become a pilot, an IAS officer or an astronaut. Neither could they serve in the army. In their places of work also, they were discriminated against. The women were paid lesser wages as compared to men for the same amount of work. Harassment of women at work places is common.

## **FACTORS RESPONSIBLE FOR GENDER INEQUALITY**

There are a number of causes that keep alive gender inequality. They are:

1. In a patriarchal society women had a very low status, both at home and outside.
2. The women have not been economically independent.
3. Illiteracy and social stigmas also result in gender inequality.

## **INDICATORS OF GENDER INEQUALITY**

There are many indicators of gender inequality. They are as follows:

1. There has been tremendous decline in the sex ratio. Sex ratio is the number of females per thousand of males. In 2011 there were 943 females per thousand males. Low sex ratio is due to neglect of girl child, high female mortality and female infanticide.

2. The literacy rate for women is lower than that of men. This gap is much wider in rural areas when compared to towns and cities.
3. The work participation of women is also quite low.
4. The number of women representatives in the Parliament and State Legislative Assemblies has been quite unsatisfactory.
5. Even today there are many crimes against women which include eve-teasing, dowry deaths and domestic violence.
6. The maternal mortality rate is very high in our country in comparison to other countries of the world.

### **SOCIAL DISABILITIES AND OLD BELIEFS**

Women have been subjected to various social disabilities for a long time.

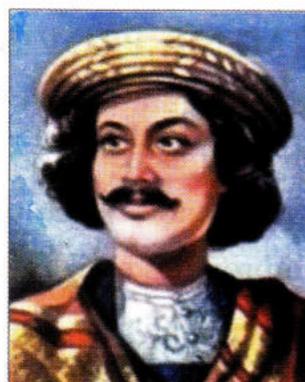
1. **Female Infanticide:** Female infanticide is the practice of killing a girl child soon after her birth. This shows that a girl child is denied the right to live. Even today sometimes a girl child is abandoned by the parents.
2. **Sati System:** The sati system was a social custom in which a widow was forced to die on the funeral pyre of her dead husband. Raja Rammohan Roy worked hard to remove this evil. It was abolished in 1829. But such things are happening even now.
3. **Dowry System:** Dowry is the money or jewellery brought by a bride for the man whom she marries. Parents used to give many gifts to their daughters of their own free will. But in course of time dowry became compulsory. Due to demand of dowry, many girls remain unmarried. We feel very sad to hear about dowry-related killings or suicides. Demanding or giving of dowry is an offence.
4. **Child Marriage:** In India the institution of child marriage still persists. As a result, in cases of premature death of the husband, the girl leads her whole life as a widow. Moreover, it is too risky for the mother, who herself is a child, to give birth to children. Child marriage is an offence.



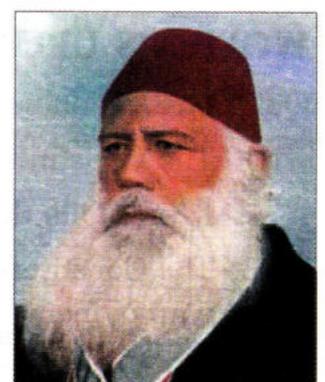
Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar



Dayanand Saraswati



Raja Rammohan Roy



Sir Syed Ahmed Khan

5. **Remarriage of Widows:** If young widows were not employed, they had to depend on others to survive. They should be encouraged to remarry.
6. **No Share in Family Property:** Earlier women had no share in the family property. But now the Hindu Succession Act grants women the right to property.
7. **No Equal Pay for Equal Work:** The women were paid lesser wages as compared to men. This was wrong.
8. **Violence Against Women:** Women have been frequently subjected to violence at home. It affects them physically and mentally. It shakes their confidence. It amounts to the denial of basic human rights to them.

The social and religious reformers of the nineteenth century worked a lot to improve the condition of women. Raja Rammohan Roy worked hard to abolish the Sati system. Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar took steps to educate women. He also wanted a law to be enacted for the remarriage of widows. He was against child marriage. Mahatma Jyotiba Phule, Dayanand Saraswati, Pandita Rama Bai and others opposed child marriage and encouraged female education. Sir Syed Ahmed Khan raised voice against polygamy, i.e., the custom of having more than one wife and the *purdah* system.

As a result of the work of these reformers, the following changes took place.

- (a) *Sati* was declared an offence in 1829.
- (b) Female infanticide was made illegal.
- (c) Widow Remarriage Act was passed in 1856.
- (d) By the Sharda Act of 1929, the marriageable age for the girls was raised to 14 and for the boys to 18 years.
- (e) Schools were set up by different reform organisations for female education.

Mahatma Gandhi, one of the greatest reformers of the twentieth century, encouraged women to participate in the freedom movement. Sarojini Naidu, Madam Cama, Annie Besant and others participated actively in the freedom movement. They promoted the cause of *swadeshi* and dissuaded people from buying liquors and foreign goods.

## **WOMEN'S UPLIFTMENT: PROVISIONS OF THE CONSTITUTION**

Our Constitution seeks to secure to all citizens: Justice, Liberty and Equality.

1. The Constitution ensures equality before the law.
2. It prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, creed and sex.
3. The Constitution provides equality of Opportunity in matters of education and employment.
4. The Directive Principles of State Policy ensure the following.
  - (a) Equal pay for equal work for both men and women.

(b) Just and humane conditions of work.

(c) Women should not enter vocations unsuited to their age or strength.

5. The Fundamental Duties prescribe that any practice derogatory to or damaging the dignity of women should be rejected.

Woman empowerment denotes encouraging woman to establish her identity and raise her status in society. With education and awareness, India has a large number of women achievers in various fields, such as our late Prime Minister Indira Gandhi, Magasaysay Award winner Kiran Bedi, Bharat Ratna M S Subbulakshmi, Booker Prize winner Arundhati Roy, athlete P T Usha, social activist Medha Patkar and so on.



Indira Gandhi



Arundhati Roy



Kiran Bedi



Medha Patkar



M S Subbulakshmi



P T Usha

The year 2001 was declared as Women's Empowerment Year by Indian Government. March 8 is celebrated as International Women's Day.

The National Commission for Women was established in 1990 to safeguard the rights of women.

### **LAWS MEANT FOR THE WELFARE OF WOMEN**

1. The Panchayati Raj and Nagarpalika Acts provide that at least one-third of the seats must be reserved for women.
2. The factory owners must provide a creche in case more than 30 women were employed in a factory.
3. The Equal Remuneration Act, 1976 entitles women to get the same pay as men for jobs of similar nature.
4. Child Marriage Restraint Act (Amendment) 1978 declared the marriage of a girl below the age of 18 as illegal.
5. Some special laws for the protection of the interests of women are the Dowry Prohibition Act, the Sati Prevention Act, and Protection from Domestic Violence Act.

'Self help is the best help'. Every individual woman must help herself to get equal status in society. She should be educated. In order to promote girl's education some State Governments are trying to provide financial incentives to poor families. The women organisations should create awareness about the need for gender justice.

## Summary of the Lesson

- Gender bias and gender inequality are important forms of inequality in our society. Gender inequality denotes unjust discrimination against girls.
- Most Indians think that girls are meant only for housekeeping jobs. By forming such an image of all girls we are stereotyping them.
- There is discrimination against women at home, in school and at work places.
- At work places women are paid lower wages as compared to men for jobs of similar nature.
- Some of the indicators of gender inequality are: (a) decline in sex ratio, (b) low literacy rate among women, (c) low work participation of women, and (d) crimes against women.
- The social reformers like Raja Rammohan Roy, Dayanand Saraswati, Sir Syed Ahmed Khan and Pandita Rama Bai fought against social evils like sati, child marriage and the purdah system. They encouraged women's education.
- Our Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion, caste and sex. A number of laws have been enacted to raise the status of women in society, e.g. Equal Remuneration Act, 1976, Child Marriage Restraint Act, 1978, Dowry Prohibition Act and Protection from Domestic Violence Act.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Gender bias or gender inequality means
  - (a) biological differences between a boy and a girl.
  - (b) differences of race.
  - (c) unjust discrimination against girls.
  - (d) someone of the male gender.
2. International Women's Day is celebrated on:
  - (a) 1 January
  - (b) 8 February
  - (c) 8 March
  - (d) 1 April
3. At least how many seats were reserved for women under the Panchayati Raj and Nagarpalika Acts?
  - (a) One-third of the seats
  - (b) One-fourth of the seats
  - (c) Half of the seats
  - (d) No reservation of seats
4. Name the legal body set up for the protection of women's rights in India.
  - (a) Women's Right Brigade
  - (b) Women's Rights Association of India
  - (c) National Commission for Women
  - (d) The Womanhood Act

### II. Write true or false.

1. The work of a woman and a man is valued equally.
2. In a patriarchal society women held a very high status.
3. In 2011 the sex ratio was 943 females per thousand males.
4. Giving and taking of dowry is an offence in India.

### III. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. What is stereotyping?
2. Give two examples to show that there is discrimination against women in India.
3. What is meant by female infanticide?
4. What was the Sati system? Who worked hard to remove this evil?

### IV. Match the columns.

Column A	Column B
1. P T Usha	(a) Social activist
2. Sarojini Naidu	(b) Athlete
3. Arundhati Roy	(c) Emphasis on women's education
4. Medha Patkar	(d) Raised voice against polygamy and purdah system among Muslim women.
5. Dayanand Saraswati	(e) Winner of Booker Prize
6. Sir Syed Ahmed Khan	(f) Freedom fighter

### V. Answer the following questions.

1. What is meant by invisible work of women?
2. Mention any three disabilities women have been subjected to in the past.
3. Mention any three constitutional provisions concerned with the upliftment of women in India.
4. Mention any four laws that were enacted to bring about development and welfare of women in India.

### VI. Projects and Activities

1. Collect any four pictures of prominent women achievers in different walks of life and paste them in your scrapbook. Write two or three sentences describing the achievements of each of them.
2. Napoleon Bonaparte had said, "Give me 60 educated mothers, I will give you a beautiful nation." Referring to the statement, write a report on the importance of women's education in society.
3. Design a poster with a catchy slogan highlighting the decreasing sex ratio in our country and the importance of equality among men and women in our society.
4. **Group Discussion:** Divide the class into groups of five each. Organise a group discussion on those fields of activity where women needed to be placed at par with men. The participants should also give suggestions about how we could do the same.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

Suppose you are a boy and your parents make discrimination against your sister; what advice will you give to your parents?

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Why Women's Empowerment is considered essential to society's overall progress?

# 6

## Markets Around Us

### New Words to Remember

**Market:** A place where buyers and sellers are engaged in buying and selling of products for a price.

**Consumer:** A person who buys products or services for a price and use it.

**Producer:** A person who produces a product for profit.

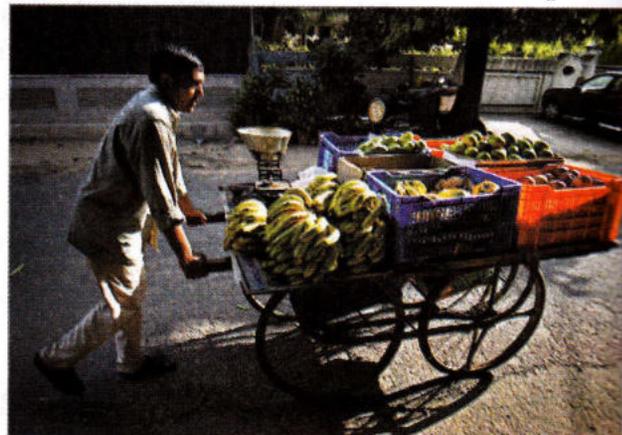
**Intermediaries:** Mediators who act as a link between two groups or persons in a transaction.

**Wholesaler:** A person who buys from the primary producer or a manufacturer in bulk and sells it to retailers for resale.

**Retailers:** Persons who buy the goods from a wholesaler and sell it to consumers for their use.

### WHY DO WE NEED A MARKET?

Man lives in society for the satisfaction of his various needs. We cannot produce all the things we need for our day-to-day life. We buy rice, pulses, tea, sugar, etc., from retail shops near our homes. Vegetable and fruit vendors come to the streets and we buy from them. Medicines are very vital for prevention and cure of diseases. These are available at medical shops in markets which are generally open for longer hours than other shops. The reason is that we may need medicines at any time. In case of emergency, we can buy them from shops which are close to or inside the hospitals that are open throughout the day and night. Like this, there are hundreds of other things we buy for money. We not only buy goods but also services. A tailor stitches our clothes and we pay for his services. A cobbler mends and repairs our shoes for money. A farmer carries grains from the village to the market for sale. For all these things, markets are very important.



A fruit vendor

A market is a place where sellers and buyers meet for the purpose of sale and purchase of a product or service for money. A producer is a person who produces a product or a service for sale to earn profit. A consumer is anyone who pays a price for a commodity or service and uses it.



A market

There are a number of factors that influence the access of people to the market.

1. **Availability of Goods and Services:** The availability of goods and services is a major factor that attracts consumers to the market. We need bread, jam, sugar, clothes, medicines, magazines, books, cosmetics, dry cleaning facilities, tailoring facilities, etc., in our daily lives. We buy them from the market. If all these goods and services are not available in a market, it will not attract the consumers. A consumer is more interested in fulfilling all his needs at one place.
2. **Proximity:** Proximity is a vital factor which attracts a buyer. If a market is located at a far-off place, usually buyers avoid it and try to look for markets which are close to their residences. This enables them to buy goods at a short notice easily. We must understand that in a competitive world, people have less time for personal needs.
3. **Quality of Products:** The consumer always demands a good quality product or service for price paid by him. We buy the goods from a shop. If the quality is bad, we do not buy from that shop again. If the quality of a product or service is good, we visit those shops again and again. There should be no compromise with quality. That is why grocers, for example, clean *dals*, rice and spices; weigh and pack them to sell to the customers.
4. **Price:** The price of goods should be reasonable. Before buying, we usually do some market survey and look for shops which give quality products at reasonable price. We always have a tendency to avoid a shop, where high prices are charged for products from consumers.
5. **Credit:** Credit means loan. There are consumers, who purchase groceries in cash. But middle class families often provide a list of their requirements to shopkeepers who supply these goods at home and payment for the bill is made in the first week of the next month. It is definitely a facility that attracts more buyers. Here the buyer does not have to pay for the product immediately. He gets time and is able to find out his total expenditure on groceries for the month. The grocer is also benefited because the customers are now bound to

come to him. However, there is a tendency on the part of the buyer to buy more goods than he needs when things are bought on credit.

6. **Income Level:** The income level also affects people's access to the market. A retailer should know the income level of a consumer for whom he sells a product or offers a service. A *saree* can be bought for ₹ 400 according to the material it is made of. A *saree* can also be bought for ₹ 8000. Branded products are expensive. Middle income group generally cannot afford them. So the retailers cater for a particular income group of consumers. In order to cater for all income groups, they have to keep goods of all kinds, both cheap and expensive.

## TYPES OF MARKETS

There are many types of markets which cater to our needs.

### I. THE RETAIL MARKETS

A retailer is a person who buys goods from a wholesaler and sells them to buyers for their use. He is the last link in the distribution of goods. The retailers can be of two types.

1. Itinerant Retailers who may be both
  - (a) Hawkers or street vendors
  - (b) Fixed shop retailers
2. Large Scale Retailers.



Retail shops

#### 1. Itinerant Retailers

- (a) **Hawkers or Street Vendors:** A hawker or a street vendor has no fixed locality for sale. He takes his goods on his cart, or cycle or motor van from place to place. Sometimes he may spread his goods on a footpath and sell them to passers-by. He may also display and sell his goods at fairs and exhibitions.

- (b) **Fixed Shop Retailers:** The fixed shop retailers sell their goods by opening their shops at a fixed place. There are three main categories of fixed shop retailers. They are:



Street hawkers

(i) **Special Shops:** The special shops include speciality shops which may deal in a particular product, e.g. a chemist shop. The owner of this shop sells only medicines. Some other examples are shops selling readymade garments or leather goods.

(ii) **General Shops:** The general shops sell all products needed for day-to-day use. They have permanent local customers.

(iii) **Stalls:** The stalls are made of wood and are set at a place chosen very carefully to draw customers. They purchase their goods from wholesalers as well as local suppliers. Teastall and panstall—just to mention a few examples—are sprinkled all over the city.

## 2. Large-Scale Retailers

(i) **Departmental Stores:** A departmental store is a large shop which is divided into a lot of different sections. It sells many different kinds of goods. Each section contains one special product. The different sections are centrally controlled and managed. The idea is to supply all goods needed by consumers at one place. Departmental stores also provide other facilities to the consumers such as restaurants.



A departmental store

(ii) **Shopping Malls:** The shopping malls are developing very fast in metropolitan cities. They are usually established by the owners of the building. They have shops selling various products. They also have entertainment facilities for elderly people and children. They have excellent arrangement for parking of vehicles. They draw huge crowd, but things are very expensive at such places.



A shopping mall

(iii) **Chain or Multiple Shops:** Under chain or multiple shops, similar shops in large numbers are established by the same managements at various places. They deal in same kind of goods. A popular example may be Bata shoe stores.

## II. WHOLESALE MARKETS

The wholesale market is a place from where all retailers buy products.

1. A wholesaler buys goods directly in large quantities from primary producers or manufacturers. This is because retailers demand goods in huge quantities from him.

2. He deals in one type of product such as fruits, grains, cloth, etc.

3. He often has godowns or warehouses to store these goods.

4. Sometimes he may grade the goods, pack them separately and sell them to retailers as his own products.

5. Generally he keeps his margin of profit low. He believes in earning more profits by increasing his turnover, that is the value of goods that he has sold during a particular period of time.

6. He provides information and advisory service to manufacturers and retailers who buy from him.

7. He is a very important link in the distribution of goods.



Wholesale market

### HOW DOES THE WHOLESALE MARKET OPERATE?

Let us, for example, see how paddy reaches rice mills.

(i) The farmers put in a lot of efforts to grow crops. They spend lot of money in buying fertilizers, pesticides, etc. They engage hired labour and harvest paddy crop when it has grown. They store the grains. Most of the farmers are subsistence farmers. They consume most part of their produce. If they are left with any surplus, they sell it locally in the weekly *bazaar* and earn some profit.

(ii) The farmers may also sell their produce to moneylenders from whom they borrow money to buy seeds and fertilizers. The moneylenders sell it to persons operating in a *mandi* or wholesale market.

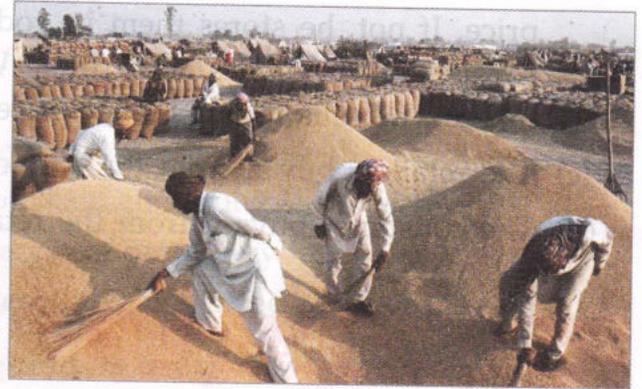
(iii) The big farmers directly bring their produce to the *mandis*. These loads of grains are displayed in lots by *arhatiyas*, who are commission agents. They get their commission from the buyers.



A farmer ploughing paddy field



Farmers planting paddy



A grain market

(iv) The Agricultural Produce Marketing Committee also makes arrangements for the auction of paddy or other grains. The interested buyers participate in the auction. After checking the variety of grain, the auctioneer begins the auction, quoting a price. As the price rises, some bidders withdraw. This process continues till the last bidder is left and the money is paid according to the price quoted. In this way, all grains are sold.

**Rice Mills:** Most of the bidders are commission agents for one or more rice mills. They store grains in godowns till they are transported to rice mills. In the rice mills the paddy is threshed, sorted out according to quality and then packed. The rice mills then sell it under their own brand name.



View of fully grown Paddy field

**Intermediaries:** Many a time the farmers sell their produce through intermediaries. The farmers try to sell their product through minimum number of commission agents. More the number of commission agents, the lesser is the profit to the farmer.

**Information Technology Cooperation (ITC):** The ITC Ltd. has established *e-Chaupals* in villages through whom the farmers can have information about market prices of grains, vegetables, etc. The *e-Chaupals* make the farmers aware of market trends so that they are not cheated by intermediaries. The ITC Ltd. has a number of agro-based units.

### **CHAIN OF ACTIVITIES AT A WHOLESALE MARKET**

The following is the chain of activities at a wholesale market.

- (a) The farmer brings grains, vegetables or fruits to the wholesale market.
- (b) The wholesaler may sell the product immediately to retailers, if he gets a good

price. If not, he stores them in godowns or cold storage (in case the product consists of vegetables and fruits). When there is a demand of product in the market, he sells it at a higher price.

- (c) The retailers buy it from the wholesalers.
- (d) The consumer buys it from the retailers.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Man lives in society for the satisfaction of his various needs. We need various goods daily. We buy some of the goods from local hawkers or vendors. For other requirements, we go to the market.
- Market is a place where sellers and buyers meet for the purpose of sale and purchase of a product or service for money. A producer is a person who produces a product or service for sale to earn profit. The consumer is a person who buys these products and services for money and uses them.
- Some of the factors which influence the access of people to the market are: (a) availability of goods and services, (b) proximity, (c) quality of products, (d) price, (e) credit facilities, and (f) income level of consumers.
- There are two types of markets: the retail market and wholesale market. The retail markets can be of two types (a) Itinerant retailers including hawkers, vendors and fixed shop retailers and (b) large-scale retailers.
- The retailers buy the products from the wholesalers and sell them to consumers for their use. They are the last link in the distribution of goods.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Speciality shops deal in
  - (a) all products needed for day-to-day use.
  - (b) many different kinds of goods.
  - (c) a particular product.
  - (d) precious stones such as diamonds.
2. The wholesale market is a place from where
  - (a) retailers buy products.
  - (b) consumers buy products.
  - (c) farmers buy the fish.
  - (d) we get medicines.
3. Shopping malls are developing in
  - (a) small towns.
  - (b) metropolitan or large cities.
  - (c) district headquarters.
  - (d) hilly areas.

## II. Write true or false.

1. We have a tendency to buy goods from a shop where high prices are charged for the products.
2. Departmental store is not centrally controlled and managed.
3. The Bata shoe stores are examples of chain and multiple shops.
4. Generally a wholesaler keeps his margin of profit very high.
5. More the number of commission agents, the higher the profit of the farmer.

## III. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. What is a market?
2. Mention any two factors that influence the access of people to the market?
3. Name any two types of market?
4. Who is a wholesaler?
5. Give examples of itinerant retailers.

## IV. Match the columns.

### Column A

1. Bread, jam, sugar
2. Credit
3. Branded products
4. Itinerant retailers
5. Stalls

### Column B

- (a) Usually made of wood
- (b) Needed in our daily life
- (c) Loan
- (d) Usually expensive
- (e) Hawkers and vendors

## V. Answer the following questions.

1. Why do we need a market?
2. Credit facility attracts buyers and also benefits the grocer. Why is that?
3. Mention any four functions of a wholesaler.
4. What is a departmental store? How does it function?
5. Mention the chain of activities at a wholesale market.

## VI. Projects and Activities

Visit a wholesale fruit market or a vegetable market. Write a few sentences narrating the things that you saw in the market.

## VALUE-BASED QUESTION

When you go to a grocery or a chemist shop, what are the things you should check before buying a product?

## HOTS: THINK BEYOND

Farmers provide us food but in some parts of our country they had to commit suicide. Why is that?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapters 5–6)

### I. Presentation

Prepare a PowerPoint presentation on 'Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan' introduced by the government. Include the following points to make your presentation informative and interesting.

- When was it introduced?
- The logo of the programme
- The objective of the programme

### II. Collage

Collect pictures and newspaper clippings showing gender inequality prevalent in most parts of our country. Make a collage from these pictures and suggest a catchy slogan so that it may create awareness in the community.

### III. Role Play

Conduct a role play in your classroom where students will play the roles of farmers, wholesalers, intermediaries and retailers. Show the journey of food from farmers to our kitchen. Show how important the farmers are for our survival.

### IV. Interview

Ask your teacher or parents to take you to a nearby farm to meet an Indian farmer. Conduct an interview to know the problems an Indian farmer faces. Ask the following questions.

- Irrigation facilities he has
- Implements used by him
- Bank loan, if any
- Quality of seeds
- Return from the crops
- Problems he faces



### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

# 7

## The Journey of a Shirt: From the Farmer's Field to your wardrobe

### New Words to Remember

**Ginning Mill:** A factory where seeds are removed from cotton bolls.

**Export Trade:** It means the sale and sending of raw materials or finished products to another country.

**Price of Goods:** Prices depend on interaction between the forces of demand and supply of particular goods.

**Profit:** Profit is an amount of money that is gained in business or trade when the cost of making something is less than the amount that it is sold for.

This Chapter deals with the journey of a shirt from the farmer's field to the cupboard in which you hang your clothes. Everyday we use shirts, irrespective of the fact whether we are young or old, boy or a girl. Infact the story begins with the production of cotton that passes through numerous hands before it takes the shape of a shirt. The shirt, in a way, is a universal cloth, available in the market for ₹ 200 as well as a price as high as ₹ 2,000 or even more.

### COTTON-GROWING STATES OF INDIA

Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Maharashtra and a few other states have many cotton-growing regions.

Besides these Punjab, Haryana and Telangana are a few other cotton growing states. Maharashtra's Vidarbh region produces cotton in immense quantities. During the months of October and November we find the markets of Wardha, Yavatmal and Chandrapur flooded with cotton. Baburao grows cotton on a small piece of land in a village known Kelagaon of the district Chandrapur. He starts picking cotton when the cotton bolls are ripe.

### THE CHANDRAPUR COTTON MARKET

After having collected the cotton, Baburao and his son Gitay take their goods to the local trader Anandram. In a way, they are bound to do so, because they had

borrowed ₹ 2,000 from the trader to buy seeds, fertilisers and pesticides when the sowing season began. They even signed a promissory note, *i.e.*, a written promise to pay the specified sum of money to the trader by a particular date. The rate of interest on such loans is usually very high. After weight of the load, the trader paid Baburao ₹ 2,500.

**Baburao:** Mahajan! ₹ 2,500 only. Are you not buying my cotton very much cheaper? Look at the quality of the cotton. Its initial cleansing alone cost me ₹ 500.

**Trader Anandram:** You people are very innocent. Have you forgotten I advanced a loan of ₹ 2,000 to you. Its interest alone should not be less than ₹ 1,000. Weighing cotton involved some additional cost which I have waived. The market value of your goods is not more than ₹ 5,500. I deducted ₹ 3,000 from the same and the remaining sum of ₹ 2,500 is being paid to you.

The farmer and his whole family had worked very hard for atleast four months. And look at the return for the money invested and efforts they had put in. That is how the poor farmers are being exploited by the local traders. They have to keep their mouth shut because they depend on the trader for loans not only during the sowing season, but also to meet other requirements, such as treatment of illness, family rituals and children's fees, etc.

### **YAVATMAL'S CLOTH MARKET**

The handlooms and powerlooms consist of a very large sector of India's textile industry. The weaving industry has shown enormous growth since late 1950s. The traders in the cloth market get the seeds removed from cotton bolls. It is the ginning mill which performs this job. The cotton is pressed into bales, which are then sent to the spinning mill for spinning the cotton into threads or yarns.



The merchants handover the yarns to the weavers who weave cloth. Most weavers in India are using handlooms for this purpose. Weaving cloth means "the way in which threads are arranged in different patterns and forms." Cotton cloth now-a-days is pitted against synthetic or polyester fabric. The reason is that the synthetic cloth is more durable. Its durability is three to four times greater. Moreover, the maintenance cost in terms of washing and ironing also gets reduced.

The merchant assigns work to the weavers in quantities he needs. This depends on the orders he himself received for cloth from the clothmill. The weavers get the yarn from the merchant and prepare the cloth as per the merchant's instructions. Here starts the same kind of exploitation as the farmer Baburao was subjected to. Weavers also have to depend on the cloth merchants for loans not only to purchase a new handloom, but also to meet other requirements, such as their children's marriages and the treatment of illness, etc. Since weavers are in debt, they have to accept the

rate at which the cloth is to be weaved. On the whole, however, the system suits weavers also for three reasons.

**First**, the weavers do not have to invest any amount of money in buying the yarn.

**Second**, they are not bothered about the sale of the cloth they made. They make the cloth as per the merchant's instructions. They get the yarn from the merchant and handover the cloth to him.

**Third**, the merchants undoubtedly exploit the weavers, but they also provide what weavers need to keep them in working condition. They make sure that the weavers do not come to unreasonable harm.

**This arrangement between the merchant and the weaver came to be known as the Putting-out System.** It meant that the merchants provided the basic material, *i.e.*, the yarn and received the finished goods, *i.e.*, the cloth. In weaving industry it was the common practice all over India.



Weaver's Handloom

### **READY-MADE GARMENTS' EXPORT INDUSTRY IN MUMBAI AND ADJOINING TOWNS**

The Yavatmal's merchants supply the cloth to readymade garments' export factories in Mumbai and adjoining towns. As we have already seen the textile industry is now India's major export industry. More than 15 percent of the total value of India's exports arise in this industry. Most of our exports go to the United States, European countries and a few Asian countries, such as Kuwait, Iran and Saudi Arabia. People are now-a-days demanding high quality shirts that cost as high as ₹ 4,000 to 5,000 each.

Exporters have to face a tough competition in this field. Our main competitors in the field of textiles export trade are South Korea, Taiwan and Hongkong.

Faced with such a competition, the garment factories tend to reduce their costs. For this they employ children and women workers at very low wages. These workers are assigned jobs such as fixing buttons, ironing, wrapping and packing the shirts. Many of these workers have a temporary assignment, so that they may be replaced by others ready to accept lower wages.



A Few High Quality Shirts

No doubt, the factories are providing gainful employment to many, but some employers are very harsh. Neither they pay proper wages to their workers, nor do they treat them with human kindness. There is no provision of paid holidays. In other words, temporary workers, are not paid for that period of time during which they stay away from work because they are sick or have some other urgency.

### Weavers Co-operative Societies

A co-operative society is a voluntary association of individuals for the achievement of the common good. The Co-operative Movement in India emerged for the purpose of providing agricultural credit. We had many agricultural credit societies at the village level. There were also established co-operative banks at the district level. Co-operative Credit Societies and Co-operative Banks were successful in breaking money lenders' control over the agricultural class. But there is lack of cooperative societies for the poor weavers.

Cooperative Banks should provide loans to weavers at cheap interest rates. In that case weavers will not depend on merchants for the supply of yarn. They themselves will buy yarn and supply cloth to those garment factories which quote the best rates for their product. The Tamil Nadu Government provides uniforms to school-going children free of cost. The Government buys cloth for school uniforms from Weavers Co-operative Societies.

## BIG BUSINESS PERSONS

Big business persons own shopping malls and departmental stores. They sell mainly branded products made by reputed manufacturers. The manufacturers advertise their products. The owners of departmental stores also spend a lot on advertisements so as to attract people to their stores. The big business persons sell the shirts on at least double the price they paid to the Mumbai garment supplying factory. This can be best shown by the following diagram.

### Profit on the Sale of a Shirt

- Purchased the shirt at the rate of ₹ 500 each.
- Advertisement cost for shirt and the showroom comes to ₹ 100 per shirt.
- Expenses on display in the Showroom come to ₹ 200 each shirt.
- Other charges come to ₹ 200 per shirt.
- The costs involved per shirt come to ₹ 1000.
- Rate at which each shirt sold is ₹ 2,000.



Shirts Displayed in the Front Window

## MARKET INEQUALITY

In this Chapter we explained the chain of markets connecting the farmer who produced cotton to the person who bought the shirt. The question is: Who are the big gainers in this whole process and who have to suffer the most?

### PEOPLE WHO WORK HARD BUT ARE LIVING IN EXTREME POVERTY

People suffering poverty and injustice fall into the following categories:

1. **Poverty-stricken Peasants:** The peasants who grow cotton and basic foodstuffs are found to be living in extreme poverty. Because of their dependence on traders and their needs for something or the other, they are always in debt. In this Chapter you saw how Baburao experienced misfortune and great sorrow for the simple reason that he had to borrow a very little sum of money at a very high interest rate.
2. **Landless Workers:** They are the persons who do not own any land and have to work on another's land for wages. Their wages are miserably low. Moreover, they find only seasonal employment. Agricultural labourers belong to an unorganised sector, that is hardly covered by any regulations as regards the minimum wages.
3. **The Weavers:** The weavers have to depend on merchants for yarn. Their low productivity is mainly due to the poor quality of the handlooms, that cannot be modernised without sufficient government aid.
4. **Workers at the Garment Export Factories:** We have already referred to the kind of life the poor workers have. Do we know how miserable they looked? They feel helpless and insecure because of high-handedness of their employers.

### MAXIMUM GAINS GO TO THE GARMENT EXPORTERS AND BIG BUSINESS PERSONS

The maximum gains, in this chain of markets, go to the rich and powerful *i.e.*, the garment exporters and the big business persons. We saw that the costs involved per shirt came to ₹ 1,000, but the rate at which the big businessman sold the shirt was ₹ 2,000 or even more. Because of their occupational and personal needs, the poor farmers, the weavers and the factory workers are being exploited at every step. What is needed is a strong cooperative movement to provide cheap credit to farmers and weavers and also an open market for their products.

## Summary of the Lesson

- Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Maharashtra and a few other States have many cotton-growing regions.
- **The Chandrapur Cotton Market:** The farmer Baburao had a very poor return for the money invested and efforts he and his family had put in.
- **Yavatmal's Cloth Market:** The merchants handover the yarns to the weavers who weave cloth on their handlooms.
- **Ready-made Garments' Export Industry in Mumbai and Adjoining Towns:** The textile industry is now India's major export industry. To reduce their costs the garment factories employ children and women workers at very low wages.
- **Big Business persons:** They own shopping malls and departmental stores. They sell the shirts at double the price they paid to garment supplying factory.
- **Market Inequality:** The question is who are the big gainers in this chain of markets and who have to suffer the most? People suffering poverty and injustice fall into the four main categories, the farmers, the landless workers, the weavers and workers at the Garment Export factories. The maximum gains to the rich and powerful, *i.e.*, the garment exporters and the big business persons.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. Whom shall we refer to as the Consumer?
  - (a) Farmer who grows cotton
  - (b) Merchant who hands over yarn to the weavers
  - (c) Readymade Garment Exporter
  - (d) One who buys the shirt
2. Whom shall we call the Landless Worker?
  - (a) Who grows the cotton
  - (b) Who works on another's land for wages
  - (c) Who fixes button on the shirt
  - (d) Dustman who dusts the Window at the showroom
3. Who among these is the rich and biggest business person?
  - (a) One who buys the cotton from the farmer
  - (b) One who is a garment exporter
  - (c) One who hands over yarn to the weavers
  - (d) One who owns a small retail shop

4. Who is the most pitiable person in the business of buying and selling clothes?
  - (a) One who buys the cotton
  - (b) The Weaver
  - (c) The merchant who gives yarn to the weavers
  - (d) The garment exporter

**II. Give short answers to the following questions.**

1. What made Baburao sell the cotton to the trader instead of selling it at the Yavatmal's Cloth Market?
2. Why do most people now-a-days prefer synthetic cloth to the cotton cloth?
3. Why are the Indian weavers mostly in debt?
4. Our garments are mostly exported to which countries?

**III. Answer the following questions.**

1. Why weavers have no other option but to accept the price that merchants pay for making the cloth?
2. Why do the garment factories employ mostly women and children as workers in their factories? How badly treated they are?
3. How Weavers Cooperatives may bring benefits to the weavers?
4. Not every one gains equally in the business of buying and selling clothes. What is the lot of poor farmers and landless workers who depend on the rich for various things?
5. Why the arrangement between the merchant and the weavers came to be known as the Putting-out System?

**VALUE-BASED QUESTION**

How can farmers be benefited, if Cooperative Banks provided loans to them on cheap interest rate?

# 8

## Struggle for Equality

### New Words to Remember

**Cooperative:** A business which is jointly owned by people.

**Dam:** Walls built in order to make a lake behind these walls.

**Discrimination:** The practice of treating one person or group of people less fairly than other people or groups.

**Racial Segregation:** The practice of officially keeping apart people of different racial groups.

In Chapter 5, you read about gender bias and gender inequality. We told you that there was unjust discrimination against girls and women in different walks of life: (a) discrimination at home, (b) discrimination about education, and (c) discrimination in jobs. Such discrimination is not restricted to just any one field of activity or to any one country. No part of the world is free from social and economic inequalities. Due to old traditions, poverty, illiteracy and lack of resources, millions of persons are doomed to unhappiness. They are discriminated on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them.

### PROVISIONS OF THE CONSTITUTION

Our Constitution seeks to secure to all citizens: Justice, Liberty and Equality. The Constitution ensures equality before the law. It prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste or sex. The Constitution provides equality of opportunity in matters of education and employment.

The Directive Principles of State Policy ensure: (a) equal pay for equal work for both men and women, (b) just and humane conditions of work and (c) a social order in which justice shall spread through all institutions of the national life. The Directive Principles declare that the State shall end inequalities in status, facilities and opportunities not only amongst individuals but also amongst groups of people residing in different areas or engaged in different jobs.

The Government of India constituted a National Human Rights Commission in 1993. Earlier the National Commission for Women was established to safeguard the rights of women.

## REALITY OF THE SITUATION

The reality of the situation is that even after some 70 years of the working of the Constitution, the desired goal of social justice has not been achieved.

## POLITICAL EQUALITY

All citizens have the right to vote. They also have the right to get elected to political offices. **But political equality is meaningless without economic equality.** If most of the people are poor, a few rich persons will be able to tilt the election results in their favour. Supposing you choose to contest an election to some political office and you have a small money bag, what would you do then? Naturally you are in an electoral trouble.

## LEGAL EQUALITY

'Equality before law' is a principle held dear in all civilized societies. But everyone knows that because of the high court fees and excessive fees charged by lawyers, the poor have no access to the courts. Resourceful persons are in a position to engage highly competent lawyers, while the poor cannot. How can the rich and the poor then be considered equal before law?

## SOCIO-ECONOMIC EQUALITY

The Constitution has abolished slavery, *begar* (forced labour) and other forms of exploitation. But so long as socio-economic inequalities and poverty exist, *begar*, child labour and exploitation cannot be stopped. Even now millions of people are deprived of equal opportunities on grounds of religion, caste and sex. In a *Sheikh* or an *Ansari*-dominated locality, a Hindu Brahmin would find it difficult to have a residential flat on rent. Similarly, a Brahmin or a *thakur* landlord could be unwilling to lease his property to someone called Hasan, only because of his religion.

India has the largest concentration of tribal people (*Adivasis*). But the primitive tribal groups continued to live in isolated areas. They are still in food-gathering stage or practise primitive agriculture. The minorities are still in the midst of confusion, which to a great extent slowed their forward movement. Many of the *dalit* and *adivasi* children are forced to leave schools before they have finished their studies.

## STRUGGLE FOR EQUALITY

In all parts of the world persons with strong determination waged campaigns against injustice or oppression.

## AMERICAN CIVIL RIGHTS MOVEMENT

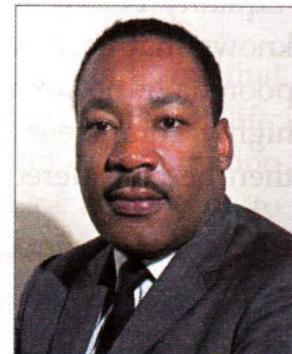
Martin Luther King, Jr. rose to prominence in the 1950s as the leader of the American Civil Rights Movement. Rosa Parks, a Black lady, was arrested for refusing to give up her seat on a bus to a White man on 1 December 1955. Such an injustice made Martin Luther King, Jr. to act in defence of the Blacks. He seemed to be inspired by India's non-violent struggle for Independence under Mahatma Gandhi's leadership. For 381 days he led the bus boycott movement at Montgomery in the State of Alabama, USA. This set into motion the American Supreme Court which gave a decision that the policy of racial discrimination in city's buses was unconstitutional. His campaign, with its emphasis on non-violence made him a national figure.



Rosa Parks fought racism

Rosa Parks is known today as the 'Mother of the Civil Rights Movement' in America. On 1 December 1955 she was arrested for refusing to give up her bus seat to a White man. This set in motion a 381-day bus boycott movement at Montgomery in State of Alabama, USA.

The response of the White extremists to Martin Luther King, Jr.'s peaceful demonstrations created law and order problem in many towns of USA. Martin Luther King, Jr was imprisoned with some 3,000 supporters. In August 1963, he led a massive civil rights demonstration in Washington, D.C. This was the largest political demonstration the nation had ever seen. "There will be neither rest nor tranquility (peace) in America until the Negro is granted his citizenship rights," he warned. The Movement led by him and others resulted in the passage of two new laws of unparalleled importance. **The Civil Rights Act of 1964 and the Voting Rights Act of 1965 at last established firmly the legal equality of African-Americans.**



Martin Luther King, Jr.  
(1929-68)

The 14th Amendment to the US Constitution said, "No State shall deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the law." (July 1968). But for nearly a century many States had managed to escape the provisions of the American Constitution. The Civil Rights Movement contributed immensely to free African Americans.

## RACIAL SEGREGATION IN SOUTH AFRICA

The Blacks in South Africa had been subjected to serious inequalities in all fields of life — political, economic and social. There were separate townships, buses, schools and churches for the use of the Blacks. Nelson Mandela led the African National Congress in its struggle against racial segregation. In 1961 the African National Congress was declared an illegal organisation. Their leader Nelson Mandela was jailed. His trial lasted for about

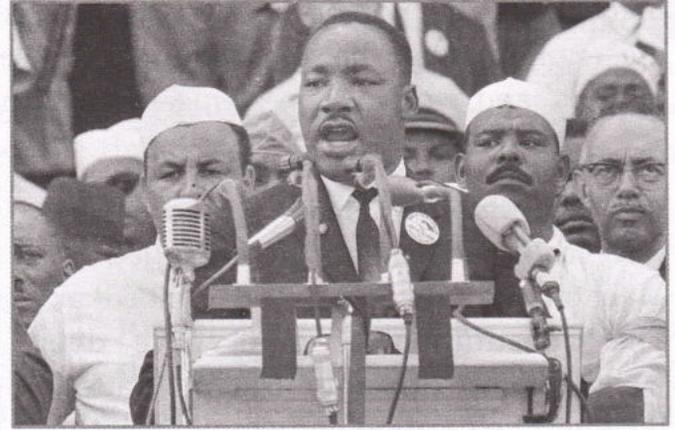


Nelson Mandela



Martin Luther King, Jr. and his wife during their visit to India

In 1959 Martin Luther King and his wife Coretta undertook a historic tour of India. They came in search of the roots of the Non-Violent Movement for Indian Independence, led by Mahatma Gandhi.



Martin Luther King, Jr., makes his "I have a dream" speech in 1963

Martin Luther said, "I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the colour of their skin but by the content of their character." His speech in 1963 was the finest ever delivered by an American.

two years. He was sentenced to life imprisonment. Worldwide protests against his long detention led to Mandela's unconditional release in 1990. The African National Congress had a massive victory in the country's first multiracial elections in 1994. On May 10, 1994 Nelson Mandela was sworn in as South Africa's first Black President, the Chief Executive of the Republic. He retired in June 1999. Nelson Mandela had not been keeping well during the last few years of his life. He finally breathed his last on December 5, 2013.

## STRUGGLE FOR EQUALITY IN INDIA

Our society is divided into innumerable castes and subcastes. In India the institution of untouchability also came into being which broke our society into hateful divisions. Women also have been subjected to various social disabilities for a long time.

**New Awakening in nineteenth Century:** The nineteenth century saw a series of religious and social reform movements led by Raja Rammohan Roy, Swami Dayananda and Swami Vivekananda. All these reformers condemned untouchability and the rigidities of the caste system. They also believed that "the upliftment of women must come first and then only can any good come about for the country." The oppressed class people themselves founded new associations and societies for liberation of the poor and the downtrodden sections of the Indian society. Jyotiba Phule was the founder of the *Satya Shadhak Samaj*. Since his ancestors supplied flowers to the Peshwas in Poona, their family came to be known as Phule. He believed that the girls of all castes were like the *Shudras* because customs such as polygamy and child marriage had made their lives miserable. The girls even of the so-called



Jyotiba Phule

high castes did not have access to free education. There was no aspect of social life—upliftment of the so-called untouchables, women education, adult education and farmers' and workers' problems—that did not engage his attention.

**The Dalit Movements:** During the pre-independence period there were *dalit* movements in India led by Mahatma Gandhi and Dr. B R Ambedkar. The Constitution of India gave due weightage to SCs and STs in matters relating to education and employment in government offices. Seats were reserved for them in the Lok Sabha and also in the State Assemblies. These provisions of the Constitution enabled a large number of *dalits* to struggle against oppression. Thus, emerged a new generation of *dalit* leaders who set up an organisation called *Dalit Panther* in 1972. The *dalit* writers, Namdev Dhasal and others, had by now produced an impressive volume of *dalit* literature. Dr. B R Ambedkar remained an 'inspirational figure' for them.



Dalits and Adivasis demonstrating against poverty and social discrimination

Kanshi Ram mobilised *dalits* under the banner of two organisations: The Backward and Minority Communities Employees Federation (BAMCEF) and Dalit Soshit Samaj Sangharash Smiti. In 1984 Kanshi Ram founded the Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP).

## TAWA MATSYA SANGH

The dams do bring many benefits. The small and large dams provided water to the drought-prone areas and electricity for heating and lighting and for machines in houses and factories. At the same time, when dams are built, thousands of hectares of land and forests, villages and colonies get drowned in the water. Those adversely affected are mostly the tribals and the farmers. They are displaced from their hearth and homes.

This displacement of the farmers and the tribals received considerable media attention in India in recent times. Here we would go into the details of the rights and achievements of the Tawa Matsya Sangh since its formation in 1996.

## THE TAWA DAM

The construction of the Tawa Dam on the Tawa river, a tributary of the Narmada, began in 1958. This project, the third largest in the Narmada Valley, was completed in 1978. More than 30 villages were submerged in the dam waters. People who lived there were either cultivators or collectors of forest produce. They also caught

fish in order to supplement their income or diet or both. Government efforts to rehabilitate those who lost their homes and livelihood were unsuccessful. Only some 3,000 people from the villages of Madhya Pradesh could be resettled in Gujarat. Most of the displaced persons settled around the dam reservoir and took to fishing for survival.

### **THE FISHING RIGHTS**

None of these cultivators or the tribals was formally given the fishing rights. In other words, their rights were never officially declared. Therefore, the state officials sometimes caught them on the charge that they were illegally catching fish. In 1994 the government gave the rights of catching fish in the Tawa reservoir to some private contractors. The villagers and tribals were threatened not to do fishing in the Tawa reservoir. The contractors engaged some violent criminals who even knifed and robbed the villagers. The local people, primarily Gonds and Korkus, realised that there was need for greater unity among them. They united and formed an organisation to protect their rights. This organisation was called **Kisan Adivasi Sangathan**.

The Kisan Adivasi Sangathan waged a fullscale anti-government campaign. They demanded the legal right to fish in the reservoir. They staged rallies and even enforced road-blockade (*chakka jam*) to prevent people and goods reaching from one place to another. The government appointed a Committee to control the situation. The Committee's recommendation was that fishing rights be granted to persons displaced by the Tawa Dam in order to provide proper means of livelihood to them. The Madhya Pradesh government accepted the recommendations of the Committee and granted fishing rights to persons displaced by the dam. In 1996 a five-year lease agreement was signed by the two parties. The government gave exclusive fishing rights to cooperatives of displaced fishermen. The Federation of these Cooperatives came to be known as the Tawa Matsya Sangh. On 2 January 1997 these fishermen from more than 30 villages celebrated the New Year and their victory with the 'fish-catch' and with music and dancing.

### **ACHIEVEMENTS OF THE TAWA MATSYA SANGH**

The Tawa Matsya Sangh presents an example of an excellent cooperative enterprise. Their main decision-making body is the Committee of Thirteen Elected Directors who are all displaced local tribals. Their decisions are enforced by a three-people body who have proficiency in book-keeping, accountancy and business management. Their managerial skills have brought maximum economic benefits to the people of these villages.

1. The cooperatives buy the fish-catch from the fishermen at a fair price.
2. The cooperatives store fish on ice and sell their stock in the markets from where they could get maximum return for the fish sold. The main markets where they sell the fish are Itarsi, Bhopal and Howrah.

3. The Tawa Matsya Sangh (TMS) has also started fish-seed production in some villages.
4. The TMS does not allow any fishing during the breeding season (during the months of July and August). Every fishing household gets at least ₹ 1,000 a month during this period.
5. The TMS also lends money to fishermen for the purchase of new nets.

The TMS has thus shown the way how cooperatives can bring real benefits to the rural poor. The Madhya Pradesh government should reward the TMS and encourage such experiments.

## CONSTITUTION OF INDIA ASSURES DIGNITY OF INDIVIDUAL AND UNITY OF NATION

The democratic system as outlined in the Constitution secures dignity of the individual. Democracy can become a reality only when all of us, especially the poor, the women and the disadvantaged sections of the society are involved in the process of development. We should give moral support to Tawa fishermen as they have had to struggle for their rights. They showed us the importance of human dignity. Such experiments would help to equalize society. They would play a major part in equalizing the distribution of nation's wealth and resources. The Tawa villagers, marching in demonstrations and processions, never forgot to carry a copy of the Constitution of India with them. Our Constitution established a democratic polity and promised to secure to all its citizens Justice, Liberty and Equality of Status and Opportunity.

### Summary of the Lesson

- Our Constitution seeks to secure to all citizens: Justice, Liberty and Equality.
- Reality of the situation is that political or legal equality is meaningless without economic equality.
- Martin Luther King, Jr. rose to prominence in the 1950s as the leader of the American Civil Rights Movement.
- In 1994 Nelson Mandela was sworn in as South Africa's first Black President.
- Jyotiba Phule was the founder of the *Satya Shodhak Samaj*. Kanshi Ram mobilised the Dalits. In 1984, Kanshi Ram founded the Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP).
- The Adivasis demanded a legal right to fish in the Tawa reservoir. In 1996 the Madhya Pradesh Government gave fishing rights to Cooperatives of displaced fishermen.

## EXERCISES

### I. Multiple Choice Questions: Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. When was the National Human Right Commission constituted?  
(a) 1994                      (b) 1995                      (c) 1993                      (d) 1996
2. Who had inspired Martin Luther King, Jr.?  
(a) Nelson Mandela                      (b) Mahatma Gandhi  
(c) Pt. Nehru                      (d) George Washington
3. Who was the first Black President of South Africa?  
(a) Nelson Mandela                      (b) Martin Luther King, Jr.  
(c) Dr. Mugabe                      (d) None of these
4. When was *Dalit Panther*, an organisation for the dalits, formed?  
(a) 1974                      (b) 1973                      (c) 1972                      (d) 1970

### II. Give short answers to the following questions.

1. Who established the Satya Shodhak Samaj?
2. Kanshi Ram mobilised dalits under the banner of two organisations. Name these organisations.
3. The Kisan Adivasi Sangathan in Tawa was fighting for an important issue. What had they been demanding?
4. What came to be known as the Tawa Matsya Sangh?
5. The Tawa Matsya Sangh presents an example of an excellent cooperative enterprise. Mention any two achievements of this organisation.

### III. Answer the following questions.

1. People have the Right to Vote. Do you agree with the view that political equality is meaningless without economic equality?
2. 'Equality before law' is a principle held dear in all civilized societies. Can the rich and the poor be really considered equal before law?
3. Name the leader of the American Civil Rights Movement in the 1950s. Name the two laws which established firmly the legal equality of African-Americans in the 1960s.

### IV. Projects and Activities

Make a PowerPoint presentation on the Dalit Movements in India.

### VALUE-BASED QUESTION

If you come across any discrimination on the basis of caste, creed or religion in your class, what steps should you take to fight such discrimination?

### HOTS: THINK BEYOND

'Equality before Law' is a principle held dear in all civilised societies but we have not been able to eradicate the evil of Inequality. Why is that?



## PROJECT WORK

(Based on Chapter 8)

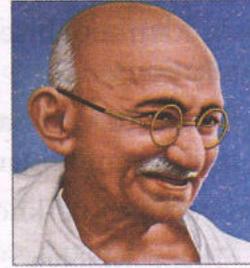
### I. Project Work

Prepare a project report on the American Civil Rights Movement. Describe the condition of the Blacks in America and the role of Martin Luther King, Jr. in the movement against injustice.

### II. Presentation

Make a PowerPoint presentation on the life of Nelson Mandela describing his struggle against Apartheid, his long imprisonment and how he made South Africa free from the curse of racism.

### III. Picture Description



Look at the above pictures and highlight the struggle, sacrifices and achievements of these great people.

### IV. Role Play

Develop a script on the life and struggle of Rosa Parks. Enact the play in your classroom highlighting the discrimination she faced while travelling in a bus.



## TEST PAPER

(Based on Chapters 5–8)

Total Marks: 50

Time: 2 Hours

### I. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1 × 8 = 8

- When is International Women's Day celebrated?  
(a) 17 March (b) 24 April (c) 8 March (d) 8 April
- Marriage of a girl below the age of ..... is illegal.  
(a) 14 (b) 18 (c) 21 (d) 16
- In Panchayati Raj institutions at least ..... of the seats are reserved for women,  
(a) one-third (b) two-thirds (c) half (d) three-fourths
- Gender roles are ..... assigned.  
(a) politically (b) culturally (c) economically (d) socially
- When did Martin Luther King, Jr. rise to prominence in America?  
(a) 1960s (b) 1940s (c) 1950s (d) 1970s
- Who is called the 'Mother of Civil Rights Movement' in America?  
(a) Park Rosa (b) Rosa King (c) Rosa Parks (d) Pamella Parks
- Who was the founder of Satya Shodhak Samaj?  
(a) Vivekanand (b) Mahatma Gandhi  
(c) Jyotiba Phule (d) Dr B R Ambedkar
- When did Nelson Mandela become the first Black President of South Africa?  
(a) 1994 (b) 1996 (c) 1998 (d) 1995

### II. Match the columns.

1 × 6 = 6

#### Column A

- M S Subbulakshmi
- Kanshi Ram
- P T Usha
- Medha Patkar
- Nelson Mandela
- Arundhati Roy

#### Column B

- Booker Prize
- Athlete
- Social activist
- Apartheid
- Dalit Leader
- Bharat Ratna

### III. Fill in the blanks.

1 × 6 = 6

- Dalit Panther* was set up in the year .....
- The construction of the Tawa Dam began in the year .....
- The Tawa river is a tributary of .....

4. Sati was declared an offence in .....
5. Kiran Bedi won the prestigious ..... award.
6. The Year ..... was declared as Women's Empowerment Year.

**IV. Short answers in about 30 words each.**

**2 × 5 = 10**

1. Why did Babu Rao sell the cotton to the trader instead of selling at the cotton market?
2. Who was Martin Luther King, Jr.?
3. Why was *Dalit Panther* set-up?
4. Why was African National Congress banned in 1961?
5. What is stereotyping?

**V. Long answers in about 60 words each.**

**4 × 5 = 20**

1. What are the various forms of gender inequality?
2. Discuss the different types of markets.
3. Write a short note on the American Civil Rights Movement.
4. What was the contribution of Jyotiba Phule to the new awakening in the nineteenth century?
5. Why do we need market?

## APPENDIX

### TRYST WITH DESTINY

"Tryst with Destiny" was a speech delivered by Jawaharlal Nehru on the eve of Independence. It is considered as one of the greatest speeches of the 20th century.

'Long years ago, we made a tryst with destiny, and now the time comes when we shall redeem our pledge, not wholly or in full measure, but very substantially. At the stroke of the midnight hour, when the world sleeps, India will awake to life and freedom. A moment comes, which comes but rarely in history, when we step out from the old to the new, when an age ends,

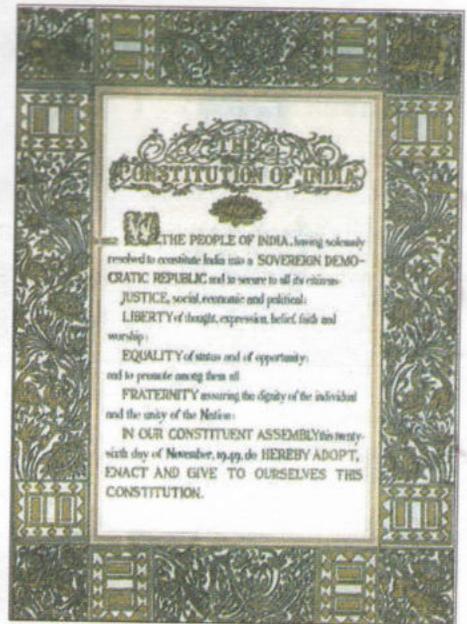
and when the soul of a nation, long suppressed, finds utterance. It is fitting that at this solemn moment we take the pledge of dedication to the service of India and her people and to the still larger cause of humanity...

That future is not one of ease or resting but of incessant striving so that we may fulfill the pledges we have so often taken and the one we shall take today. The service of India means the service of the millions who suffer. It means the ending of poverty and ignorance and disease and inequality of opportunity. The ambition of the greatest man of our generation has been to wipe every tear from every eye. That may be beyond us, but as long as there are tears and suffering, so long our work will not be over.

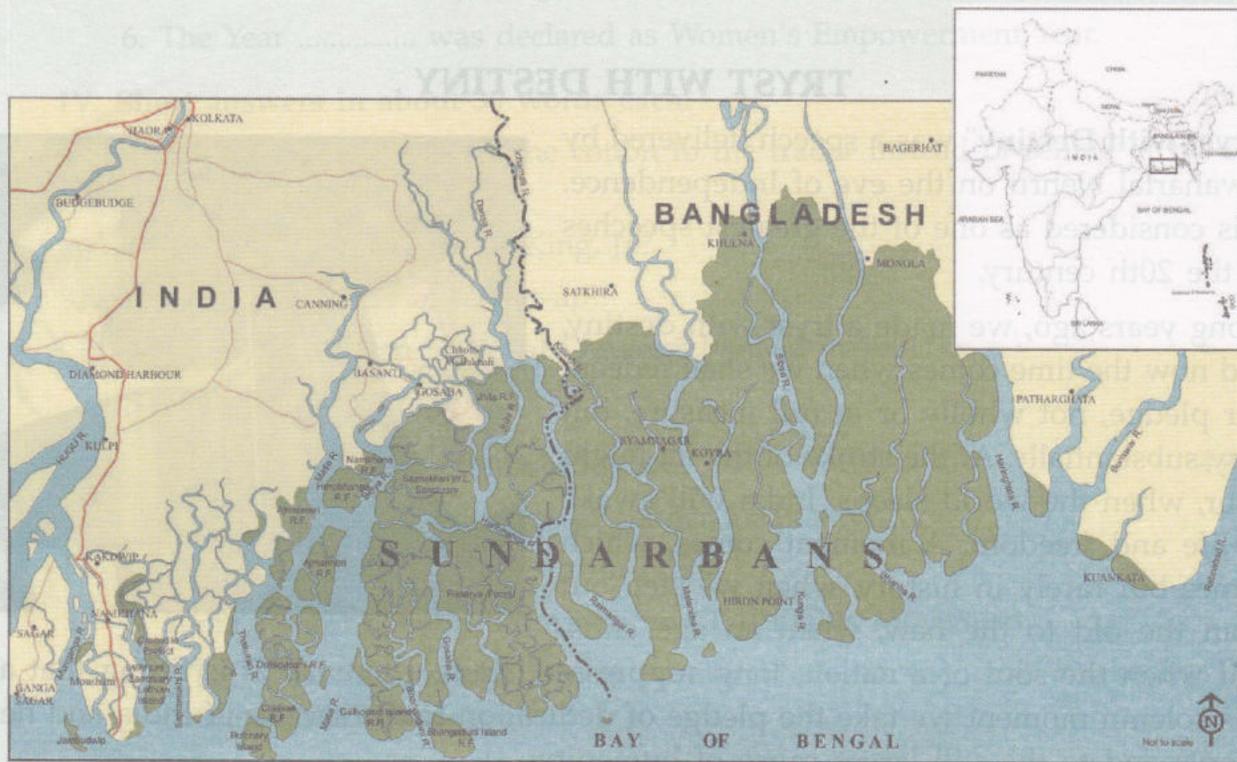
And so we have to labour and to work, and work hard, to give reality to our dreams. Those dreams are for India...

To the people of India, whose representatives we are, we make an appeal to join us with faith and confidence in this great adventure. This is no time for petty and destructive criticism, no time for ill-will or blaming others. We have to build the noble mansion of free India where all her children may dwell.'

*(Excerpts from Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru's famous speech—Tryst with Destiny)*



## LIFE IN SUNDARBANS



At the confluence of Ganges, Brahmaputra, and Meghna Rivers in the Bay of Bengal, lies the delta region of Sundarbans with its own archipelago of islands. The Sundarbans gets its name from the *Sundari* trees, a species of mangroves found there. Spanning from the Hooghly River in West Bengal to the Baleshwar River in Bangladesh, Sundarbans' mangrove forest covers an area of about 10,000 sq km and provides habitat to 453 faunal wildlife, including 290 birds, 120 fish, 42 mammals, 35 reptiles and 8 amphibian species. Home to the famous Royal Bengal tiger, it has about 180 tigers (106 in Bangladesh and 74 in India).





Over time inhabitants of Sundarbans have evolved a unique lifestyle typical to the region. Mainly engaged in occupations such as fishing, honey collecting, and farming, the inhabitants of this region have a symbiotic relationship with their surroundings.



Here are some interesting facts about Sundarbans:

- Sundarbans has the world's largest mangrove forest, shared between India and Bangladesh.
- The total area of Sundarbans consists of 102 islands, out of which 54 are inhabited by people and rest are covered by forests.
- The Sundarbans Tiger Reserve is known to have the largest number of tigers.
- The primary means of transport in Sundarbans is through water.
- There is a Widow Village in Sundarbans. It has been named so because members of many families in this village have been attacked by tigers.
- The Sundarbans mangrove forest was awarded as a "UNESCO World Heritage Site".

## DEFYING PATRIARCHY: WOMEN ACHIEVERS OF TODAY

Women of today defy the age old gender norms that restrict them to certain stereotypes. Shattering glass ceilings, in every field we find women excelling and reaching newer heights of success.

Let us know about a few such wonder-women who have proved their mettle in their areas of expertise:

**Anshu Jamsenpa:** An Indian mountaineer, Anshu Jamsenpa, is the first woman in the world to scale Mt. Everest twice in five days.



**Falguni Nayar:** Founder of Nykaa, a Mumbai-based multi-brand beauty retailer selling cosmetic and wellness products, Falguni Nayar has made herself counted in the leading entrepreneurs of the times in merely 7 years of Nykaa's inception. Business Today featured her in The Most Powerful Women in Business 2017. She has also won the 'Woman Ahead' award at the Economic Times Startup Awards 2017.

**Faye D'Souza:** An executive editor at Mirror Now, Faye D'Souza has slowly become the voice of reason of this country. Her fearless portrayal of the truth, sans sensationalisation, has changed the landscapes of Indian T.V journalism. Forever vocal about women rights, Faye D'Souza has always stood as an icon for the women of today.



**Nirmala Sitharaman:** India's first full-time woman Defence Minister, Nirmala Sitharaman, is a force to reckon with. From charting the course of the India-US Tri-service military exercise to raising issues like cyber-safety for women, she is a political figure who definitely means business.

**Rahibai Soma Popere:** An Expert in Agrobiodiversity and paddy cultivation, Rahibai Soma Popere is from the Kombhalne village of Ahemadnagar district of Maharashtra. She was included in BBC's Most Influential and Inspiring Women of 2018 for her expertise.



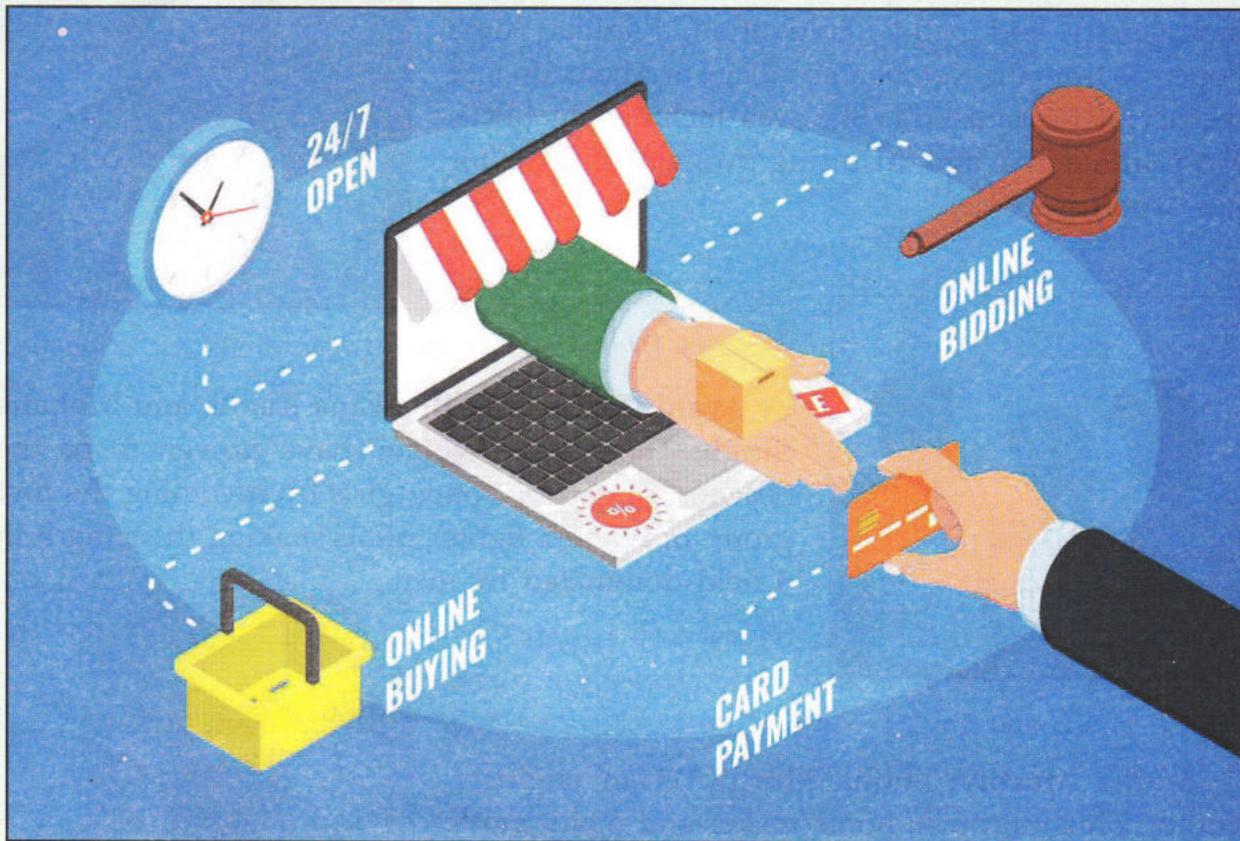
**Avani Chaturvedi, Bhawana Kanth, and Mohana Singh:** These three women have proven to be the beacon of light for young girls by becoming the first group of women fighter pilots making their mark in a field dominated by men.

**Sudha Murthy:** Sudha Murthy is an engineer, author, philanthropist, home maker and many more. She is the chairperson of the Infosys Foundation and is actively involved in social work across various fields such as education, women empowerment, poverty alleviation, healthcare, public hygiene, art and culture among others. A renowned author, she has sold over 1.5 million book copies and writes mainly in English and Kannada.



**Gita Gopinath:** An Indian-American economist, Gita Gopinath is the first woman and the second Indian to be appointed as the Chief Economist of the International Monetary Fund. She is a phenomenal leader and a perfect role model for the women of today.

## E-COMMERCE: THE VIRTUAL MARKET PLACE



E-commerce refers to the buying or selling of goods and services on the internet. It is interesting to note that the highest growing country for e-commerce is India followed by Saudi Arabia, Indonesia and Australia.

The emergence of the e-commerce industry has eased out the life of the people world over. Be it a working professional or a stay at home individual, everyone shops online. People today can actually shop from anywhere and everywhere. The online market space in the country is burgeoning in terms of offerings ranging from travel, movies, hotel reservations and books to the likes of matrimonial services, electronic gadgets, fashion accessories and even groceries. In this remarkable era of rapid digitisation facilitators like high speed internet, broadband, dongles, laptops, smartphones, tablets, the acceptance of the idea of virtual shopping has driven the e-commerce ecosystem.

### DO YOU KNOW?

Besides air, noise, water and soil pollution there is another type of pollution which is causing a major threat to the environment these days.

Yes, you heard that right!

It is e-pollution.

- Electronic pollution is the form of pollution that is caused by hoarding and disposing of unused or irreparable electronic items like mobile phones, television sets, computers, refrigerators, tape recorders, video players, etc.
- With the rapid advancement in technology, people tend to move to latest gadgets rather than sticking to their old ones. High demand leads to high supply which in turn leads to excessive wastage of products.
- Sometimes, people find it easier or convenient to switch to an upgraded technology merely because the cost of upgrading would be less than or equal to the cost of repairing or replacing a part of the old machine.
- Most of the discarded products are set into open fire, which then melts and releases harmful elements into the air. Carcinogens and neurotoxins when released into the air, create pollution and smog which is very harmful for our health.



## STEPS TO REDUCE E-WASTE

- Reusing and refurbishing certain parts of the electronic systems help in reducing e-pollution to a large extent.
- Another option is to dispose of e-waste safely so as to avoid the creation of pollution. Do not just trash them.
- Do not buy gadgets when not required.
- A few stores have buy-back options wherein you can purchase a new gadget and also get rid of your old equipment in exchange for gift cards, etc. Try to find such stores.
- Sell your electronic items as soon as you do not need them. Do not let them pile up.





## PRACTICE PAPER-I

(Based on Complete Syllabus)

Total Marks: 80

Time: 2 Hours

I. Choose the correct option to answer the following questions: (1 × 10)

- When does gender equality exist?
  - When females and males have equal money
  - When females and males have equal education
  - When females and males have equal opportunities
  - When females and males have equal jobs
- What does 'Din-i-Ilahi' mean?
  - Religion of one god
  - Religion of many gods
  - Religion of Muslims
  - Religion of Hindus
- Who wrote Akbarnama?
  - Amir Khusro
  - Abul Fazal
  - Rahim
  - Kabir
- What are the rocks made up of?
  - One or more metal
  - One or more deposits
  - One or more mineral
  - One or more stone
- Who said, "Democracy is a government of the people, for the people, by the people"?
  - Mahatma Gandhi
  - Jawaharlal Nehru
  - Indira Gandhi
  - Abraham Lincoln
- What are the modes of trade payment?
  - Cheque or cash
  - Draft or pay order
  - Only cash
  - Both (a) and (b)
- Which city in Bengal was the important trading center for cotton and silk goods?
  - Kolkata
  - Siliguri
  - Kalibari
  - Kasimbazar
- What does the term 'malnourished' mean?
  - Physically weak due to lack of balanced food
  - Mentally weak due to lack of food
  - Physically weak due to lack of exercise
  - Physically weak due to poverty

9. What is the hanging couch of Amazon basin called?  
 (a) Sofa (b) Maloca (c) Hammock (d) None of these
10. Who translated the Bhagavata Purana into Bengali?  
 (a) Maladhar Basu (b) Srikara (c) Visva Basu (d) Chaitanya

**II. State True or False.**

**(1 × 10)**

1. Tanjore was the capital of the Cholas.
2. Darasbari is the most famous monument of medieval Bengal.
3. Social Ratio is calculated by the number of females per thousand males in a society.
4. Ladakh is a cold desert in India.
5. Grasslands in the southern part of Africa are known as Prairies.
6. Economic democracy means opportunity for all.
7. Muhammad Bin Tughlaq issued coins of Brass.
8. Kolkata was an important port and the chief commercial city of Mughal India.
9. MLAs are directly elected by the people.
10. The equatorial forests of Amazon Basin are called Hammock.

**III. Fill in the blanks choosing the correct option.**

**(1 × 10)**

1. The region between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn is called ..... region.  
 (a) equatorial (b) tropical (c) subtropical (d) polar
2. Non-living components like sun, light, temperature, air, water comprise the ..... environment.  
 (a) biotic (b) physical (c) abiotic (d) human
3. Bara Imambara was built in ..... .  
 (a) Agra (b) Lucknow (c) Delhi (d) Lahore
4. Media is an ..... tool to explain flaws in the existing system.  
 (a) Optional (b) Musical (c) Experimental (d) Educational
5. Nomination papers are submitted to an officer called ..... .  
 (a) Presiding Officer (b) Returning Officer  
 (c) Election Commissioner (d) Polling officer
6. The water in the form of rivers, lakes, seas and oceans is collectively known as  
 (a) Lithosphere (b) Biosphere (c) Hydrosphere (d) Troposphere
7. .... rocks are also known as primary rocks.  
 (a) Sedimentary (b) Igneous  
 (c) Metamorphic (d) None of these

8. The name Gond is derived from Telugu word .....  
 (a) Novda (b) Gonda (c) Hunda (d) Konda
9. The first Sultan of Delhi sultanate was .....  
 (a) Babur (b) Muhammad Ghori  
 (c) Minhaj-us-Siraj (d) Qutubud-din Aibak
10. .... was the most powerful king of Gujara-Pratiharas.  
 (a) Mahendrapala (b) Bhoja  
 (c) Gopala (d) Dharmapala

**IV. Answer the following questions in 20-30 words.**

**(2 × 5)**

- Describe the life of the people living in the Sahara desert.
- Write the steps taken by Tipu Sultan to establish his kingdom.
- State the significance of the teachings of Kabir.
- Distinguish between Evergreen Forests and Deciduous Forests.
- Define the term Universal Adult Franchise.

**V. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words.**

**(4 × 5)**

- Explain the role of media in democracy.
- What was the social life of the Gonds?
- State the similarities between Bhakti and Sufi saints.
- Deciduous forests have economic significance. Justify.
- Write a brief note on Guru Nanak and his teachings.

**VI. Match the words written under column A with column B.**

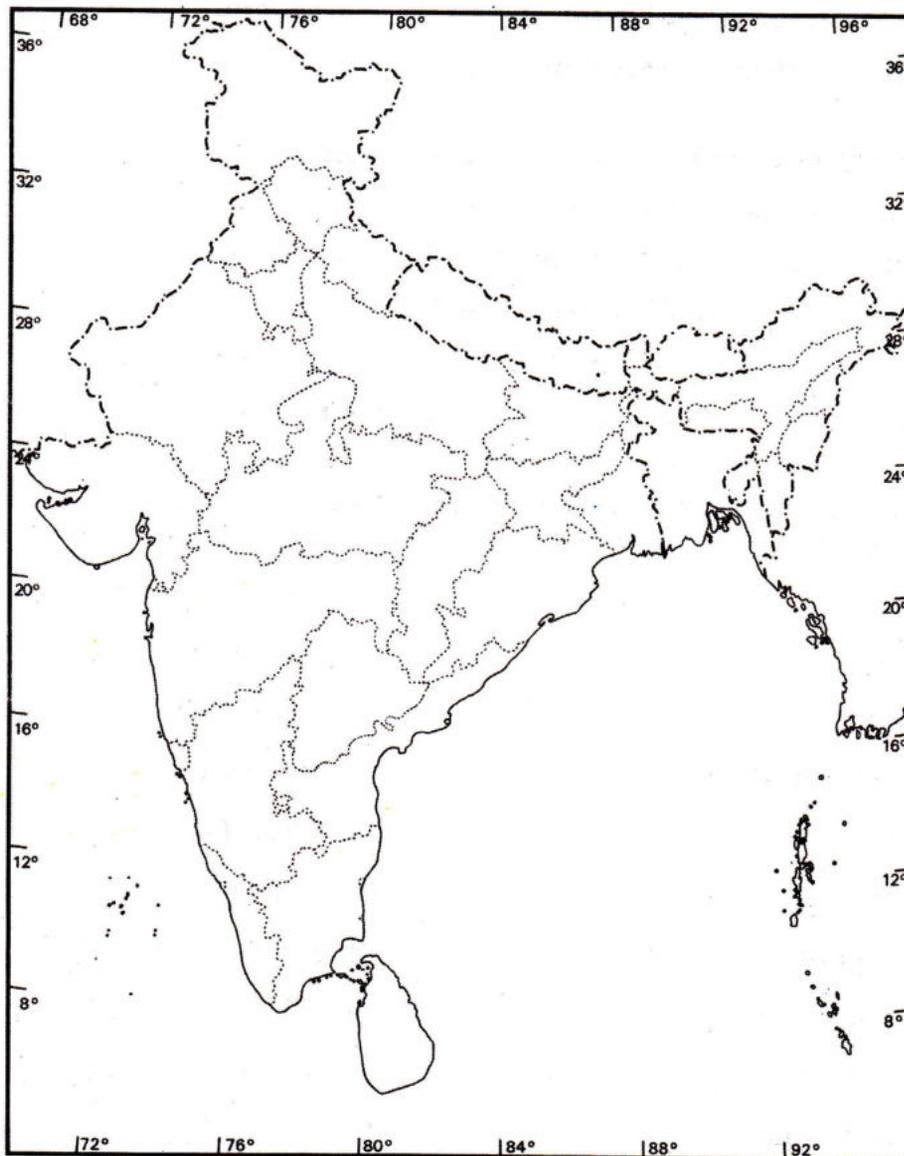
**(1 × 10)**

Column A	Column B
1. Nataraj	(a) Direct Telecast
2. Seismic	(b) Free from clouds
3. Satellite	(c) Elected
4. Cabinet Ministers	(d) Bronze Image
5. Akbar	(e) Urdu Poet
6. Equality	(f) Portfolios
7. Stratosphere	(g) Opportunity for all
8. Government	(h) Akbar's Court Historian
9. Abdul Fazl	(i) Earthquake wave
10. Mirza Ghalib	(j) 1556-1605

VII. On the given map of India, mark the following:

(1 × 10)

1. Shivaji's territories in AD 1680
2. Extent of the Chola Kingdom
3. Karakoram Range
4. City where Taj Mahal is located
5. Bhuj
6. Narmada Estuary
7. Region of the Gond tribe
8. Dal Lake
9. A pilgrimage centre of the Sikhs
10. Calcutta





## PRACTICE PAPER-II

(Based on Complete Syllabus)

Total Marks: 80

Time: 2 Hours

I. Choose the correct option to answer the following questions: (1 × 10)

- Where is the home of 'Royal Bengal Tiger'?  
(a) Corbet Park (b) Kaziranga National Park  
(c) Gir Forest (d) Sunderban Delta
- What is the study of earthquakes called?  
(a) Geography (b) Seismology (c) Meteorology (d) Psychology
- Which is the largest delta in the world?  
(a) Narmada Delta (b) Sunderban Delta  
(c) Himalayan Delta (d) American Delta
- What was Diwan-i-Khas?  
(a) Hall of religious audience (b) Hall of public audience  
(c) Hall of special audience (d) Hall of private audience
- The term 'Election Manifesto' means—  
(a) A machine used in election  
(b) A document containing policies of the party  
(c) An election officer  
(d) A paper presentation
- What does the term "Accountability" mean?  
(a) Freedom to act  
(b) To fulfill one's responsibility  
(c) Not favouring one side or the other  
(d) All of these
- Which is the smallest ocean on the earth's surface?  
(a) Pacific (b) Atlantic (c) Indian (d) Arctic
- Name the regional kingdoms which rose during late medieval period.  
(a) Palas, Afghans, Rajputs  
(b) Palas, Cholas, Rajputs  
(c) Tomars, Chawans, Utkala  
(d) Turks, Afghans, Mughals

9. Which was the first railway route in India?  
 (a) Mumbai - Thane (b) Delhi - Kolkata  
 (c) Bengaluru - Chennai (d) Delhi - Pune
10. Which tribe had established a strong kingdom?  
 (a) Banjaras (b) Gonds (c) Bhills (d) Ahoms

**II. State True or False.**

**(1 × 10)**

1. The Earth is a unique planet because of the Sun.
2. Opposition parties are important for the successful working of the democracy.
3. Sikander Lodi was the last Lodi ruler of the Delhi Sultanate.
4. The lower part of stratosphere is called ozonosphere.
5. Wave movements are the main cause for the occurrence of tides.
6. Retailers buy goods from the producers and sell them to customers.
7. Prices of the standard product are market with MRP.
8. The Sufi movement had its origins in South Asia.
9. Marble is not a metamorphic rock.
10. Kabir preached his message in the form of Dohas.

**III. Fill in the blanks choosing the correct option.**

**(1 × 10)**

1. Assam was known as ..... in early times.  
 (a) Kamarupa (b) Kancharis (c) Morans (d) Jung
2. All the three realms are responsible for the existence of .....  
 (a) Biosphere (b) Hydrosphere (c) Lithosphere (d) Atmosphere
3. A delta is a ..... piece of land with deposits formed near the mouth of the river.  
 (a) circular (b) square (c) rectangular (d) triangular
4. Timur was the ruler of Balkh in .....  
 (a) Central Pakistan (b) Central Afghanistan  
 (c) Central Iran (d) Central Asia
5. The period ..... the ancient and the modern periods of history is known as medieval period.  
 (a) Before (b) Between (c) After (d) during
6. Forests grow well in hot and ..... weather.  
 (a) dry (b) wet (c) natural (d) humid
7. The states which have legislative council along with the assemblies have ..... legislature.  
 (a) Unicameral (b) Bicameral (c) Tricameral (d) All of these

8. Advertising can involve sophisticated research and ..... campaigns.  
 (a) Mass media (b) Multimedia  
 (c) Print Media (d) Electronic Media
9. Konark is famous for ..... temple.  
 (a) Mahadev (b) Sun (c) Jagannatha (d) Parsvanatha
10. The Turks brought with them new musical instruments such as .....  
 (a) Sitar (b) Tabla (c) Harmonium (d) Sarangi

**IV. Answer the following questions in 20-30 words. (2 × 5)**

1. Mention some effects of ocean currents.
2. Kathak was one of the most popular classical dance form of India. Explain.
3. Distinguish between a wholesaler and retailer.
4. How does family and society influence gender roles in India?
5. State two main functions of the Village Sabha under the Cholas.

**V. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words. (4 × 5)**

1. Compare human activities in Amazon Basin and Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin.
2. Why did the Mughal Empire start declining after Aurangzeb?
3. What factors affect the choice of people to the different types of market?
4. Who was the first Indian to write in Persian? Elaborate the remarkable work done by him.
5. Why was Tipu Sultan called the 'Tiger of Mysore'?

**VI. Match the words written under column A with column B. (1 × 10)**

- | Column A             | Column B                       |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Idol worship      | (a) All Earth                  |
| 2. Mount Fujiyama    | (b) Rule by Force              |
| 3. USP               | (c) Variable Price             |
| 4. Guru Nanak Verses | (d) Monastery                  |
| 5. Alaska            | (e) National Capital Territory |
| 6. Pangea            | (f) Image worshipped as God    |
| 7. Flexible price    | (g) Volcanic mountain          |
| 8. Dictatorship      | (h) Adi Granth                 |
| 9. Hemis             | (i) Polar region               |
| 10 NCT               | (j) Unique Selling Proposition |



**VII. On the given map of India, mark the following: (1 × 10)**

1. Leh
2. Thar
3. River Indus
4. River Brahmaputra
5. Joy Falls
6. Surat
7. Mewar
8. Odisha
9. Allahabad
10. River Kaveri

